



Operator Manual

For printer model:

S84 **ex** / S86 **ex**



Copyrights

Any unauthorized reproduction of the contents of this document, in part or whole, is strictly prohibited.

Limitation of Liability

SATO Corporation and its subsidiaries in Japan, the U.S. and other countries make no representations or warranties of any kind regarding this material, including, but not limited to, implied warranties of merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose. SATO Corporation shall not be held responsible for errors contained herein or any omissions from this material or for any damages, whether direct, indirect, incidental or consequential, in connection with the furnishing, distribution, performance or use of this material.

Specifications and contents in this document are subject to change without notice.

Be sure to perform a virus check for the USB memory or SD card before connecting it to the printer. SATO Corporation shall not be held responsible for a malfunction of the printer caused by a virus infection through the USB memory or SD card.

Trademarks

SATO is a registered trademark of SATO Holdings Corporation and its subsidiaries in Japan, the U.S. and other countries.

Secure Digital (SD) Card is a registered trademark of the SD Card Association.

QR Code is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED.

Bluetooth is a trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc., U.S.A.

WPA™ and WPA2™ are registered trademarks of Wi-Fi Alliance.

SAP® is a registered trademark of SAP AG.

Oracle is a registered trademark of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates.

All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

Version: GBS-S84ex_S86ex-r06-20-03-17OM

© 2017 SATO Corporation. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Table of Contents	1
Before You Start	7
1 Parts Identification.....	15
1.1 Printer Orientation	15
1.2 Parts Identification of the Printer	16
1.2.1 Front View	16
1.2.2 Rear View	17
1.2.3 Internal View	18
1.3 Parts on the Operator Panel.....	19
1.3.1 Operator Panel	19
1.3.2 LED Indicator	20
2 Installing the Printer	21
2.1 Installation Precautions.....	21
2.2 Installation Space.....	22
2.2.1 Front View (S84-ex/S86-ex printer)	22
2.2.2 Rear View (S84-ex/S86-ex printer).....	23
2.2.3 Media Dispensed View (S84-ex printer)	23
2.2.4 Top View (S84-ex printer).....	24
2.2.5 Media Dispensed View (S86-ex printer)	25
2.2.6 Top View (S86-ex printer).....	26
2.3 Installing the Printer onto a Support Structure/Applicator	27
2.4 Checking the Bundled Accessories	28
2.5 Connecting the Interface Cable	29
2.5.1 Available Interfaces	29
2.5.2 Interface Connections.....	29
2.5.3 Interface Settings.....	30
2.5.4 Interface Combination	31
2.6 Connecting the Power Cord	32
2.7 Power On/Off the Printer	33
2.7.1 Power On the Printer	33
2.7.2 Power Off the Printer	33
2.8 Installing Optional Memory Storage.....	34
2.8.1 Installing the Optional SD Card	34
2.8.2 Removing the Optional SD Card	35
2.8.3 Installing the Optional USB Memory.....	35

3 Loading the Ribbon and Media.....	37
3.1 Checking the Ink Side of the Ribbon.....	37
3.2 Loading the Ribbon	38
3.3 Removing the Ribbon	41
3.4 Usable Media	42
3.4.1 Adjusting the Position of the Media Sensor	42
3.5 Loading Media	43
3.5.1 Loading Label with Dispenser	43
3.5.2 Loading Media without Using Dispenser	46
4 Operation and Configuration	47
4.1 Display and Operation	47
4.1.1 Normal Mode Display and Icons.....	47
4.1.2 Setting Mode Menu and Icons	51
4.1.3 Error Display and Icons	52
4.1.4 Setting Display.....	53
4.2 Operating Modes	55
4.2.1 Online Mode/Pause Mode/Offline Mode.....	58
4.2.2 Adjusting the Display Brightness	59
4.2.3 Adjusting the Buzzer Volume	59
4.2.4 Canceling the Print Job	60
4.2.5 Adjustment Mode.....	61
4.2.6 Work Shift Setting Mode	63
4.2.7 Simple Standalone Mode	65
4.2.8 Setting Mode Menu	69
4.2.9 User Mode	71
4.2.10 Interface Mode.....	76
4.2.11 Memory Mode.....	113
4.2.12 Service Mode.....	121
4.2.13 Advanced Mode.....	146
4.2.14 Hex Dump Mode.....	166
4.2.15 RFID User Mode.....	171
4.2.16 Information Mode.....	178
4.2.17 Test Print Mode	183
4.2.18 Default Setting Mode	186
4.2.19 Download Mode.....	189
4.2.20 Upload Mode	194
4.2.21 Hidden Setting Mode	196
4.2.22 Wireless LAN Certificate Download Mode.....	197
4.2.23 Site Survey Mode	199

4.3 Web Configuration	203
4.3.1 Information.....	203
4.3.2 External Signal Status	204
4.3.3 Sensor Level.....	205
4.3.4 Adjustment Mode.....	206
4.3.5 User Mode	207
4.3.6 Interface Mode.....	208
4.3.7 Interface Mode (SNMP).....	209
4.3.8 WLAN Setting	211
4.3.9 WLAN Certificate	213
4.3.10 Memory Mode.....	214
4.3.11 Service Mode.....	215
4.3.12 Advanced Mode.....	217
4.3.13 RFID Mode	220
4.3.14 Emulation Mode.....	221
4.3.15 Printer Configuration (Read).....	223
4.3.16 Printer Configuration (Write).....	224
4.3.17 System/Others	225
4.3.18 Test Print	226
4.3.19 Restart Printer	227
5 Emulation Mode	229
5.1 Emulation Module Loader	229
5.1.1 Loading the Emulation Module	230
5.1.2 Deleting the Emulation Module.....	232
5.1.3 Downloading the Emulation Module	234
5.1.4 Emulation Module Error	237
5.2 SZPL Emulation Mode	238
5.2.1 Auto Emulation Mode Switching Function	242
5.3 SDPL Emulation Mode	243
5.4 SIPL Emulation Mode	251
6 Cleaning and Performing Printer Adjustments	253
6.1 Maintenance	253
6.2 Maintenance of the Print Head and Platen Roller	254
6.2.1 Maintenance using the Cleaning Kit	254
6.2.2 Maintenance using the Cleaning Sheet.....	257
6.3 Adjusting the Base Reference Point	259
6.3.1 About the Base Reference Point	259
6.3.2 Adjusting the Print Position.....	260
6.3.3 Adjusting the Media Stop Position.....	261
6.3.4 More about the Media Stop Position	262
6.3.5 Limitation on Base Reference Point Adjustment	263

6.4 Adjusting the Print Quality	264
6.4.1 Adjustment of the Print Darkness	264
6.4.2 Adjusting the Print Speed	265
6.5 Adjusting the Media Sensors	267
6.5.1 Adjusting the Media Sensor Automatically	267
6.5.2 Adjusting the I-mark Sensor Level Manually	270
6.5.3 Adjusting the Gap Sensor Level Manually	273
6.5.4 Adjusting the Paper End Sensor	275
6.6 Adjusting the Head Pressure Balance	277
6.7 Adjusting the Head Position	279
6.7.1 Left - Right Pressure Balance Setting	279
6.7.2 Front - Rear Head Alignment.....	280
6.8 Adjusting the Ribbon Tension Balance	281
6.9 Adjusting the Media Feed Roller Balance.....	282
7 Troubleshooting.....	283
7.1 When an Error Message Occurs	283
7.1.1 More Information about Command Error	291
7.1.2 More Information about Head Check Function	292
7.2 When a Warning Message Occurs	293
7.3 When the LED Lights Red/Blue	295
7.4 Troubleshooting Table	296
7.4.1 No Power/Nothing on the Screen	296
7.4.2 Cannot Feed the Media	296
7.4.3 Can Feed the Media but Cannot Print	297
7.4.4 Bad Print Quality.....	298
7.4.5 Incorrect Print Position	299
7.5 Interface Troubleshooting.....	300
7.5.1 USB Interface	300
7.5.2 LAN Ethernet Interface	300
7.5.3 Bluetooth Interface (Optional).....	300
7.5.4 RS-232C Interface	301
7.5.5 IEEE1284 Interface	301
7.5.6 External Signal Interface (EXT).....	301
7.5.7 Wireless LAN Interface (Optional).....	302

8 Appendix	303
8.1 List of Initial Values	303
8.1.1 Normal Mode	303
8.1.2 User Mode	303
8.1.3 Interface Mode.....	304
8.1.4 Memory Mode.....	307
8.1.5 Advanced Mode.....	307
8.1.6 Hex Dump Mode.....	310
8.1.7 RFID User Mode.....	310
8.1.8 Test Print Mode	311
8.1.9 Default Setting Mode	311
8.1.10 Service Mode.....	312
8.1.11 Hidden Setting Mode	313
8.1.12 Work Shift Setting Mode.....	313
8.1.13 Simple Standalone Mode	314
8.1.14 Wireless LAN Setting.....	314
8.2 Media Sensor Positions and Media Stop Positions	318
8.3 About Legacy Command Support	320
8.3.1 Legacy Command Support.....	320
8.3.2 Compatible Mode - Print Head Width (only for S86-ex printer)	321
8.3.3 Print Head Width and Printable Area Range	323
8.4 LCD Power Saving Mode	325
8.5 Input/Output Signal of the External Signal	326
8.6 Notification Function	328
8.7 Replacing Consumable Parts	330
8.7.1 Replacing the Print Head.....	330
8.7.2 Replacing the Platen Roller	332
8.7.3 Replacing the Pressure Roller.....	334
8.7.4 Replacing the Media Feed Roller	336
8.7.5 Replacing the Fan Filter	337
8.8 Media Motion of the Printer Operation	338
8.8.1 Feed Motion.....	338
8.8.2 Paper End.....	338
8.8.3 Sensor Error	341
8.8.4 Ribbon Error	342
8.9 Print Speed and Media Size	343
8.10 Optional Ribbon Saver	344
8.10.1 Ribbon Saver Operation	344
8.10.2 Ribbon Saver Timing Charts	345
8.10.3 Ribbon Saver Operation and Ribbon Consumption	346
8.10.4 Ribbon Specification for the Ribbon Saver	349
8.10.5 Label Specification for the Ribbon Saver	349

8.11 Optional UHF RFID Configuration	350
8.11.1 Printing RFID Tag Errors	352
8.11.2 RFID Error and Reset Timing	355
8.11.3 External (EXT) Signal Interfaces when RFID Module is Enabled	358
8.11.4 RFID Printing Tips	359
8.12 Printer Specifications	360
8.12.1 Hardware	360
8.12.2 Ribbon and Media	362
8.12.3 Interface	363
8.12.4 Built-in Functions	364
8.12.5 Printer Languages	364
8.12.6 Fonts/Symbols/Barcodes	365
8.12.7 Options	367
8.12.8 Accessories	367
8.12.9 Standards	367
8.13 Interface Specifications	368
8.13.1 USB Interface	369
8.13.2 LAN Ethernet Interface	370
8.13.3 RS-232C Interface	372
8.13.4 IEEE1284 Interface	374
8.13.5 External Signal Interface (EXT)	376
8.13.6 Bluetooth Interface	388
8.13.7 Wireless LAN Interface	389

Before You Start

Thank you for purchasing this SATO S84-ex/S86-ex print engine (hereafter referred to as “the printer”). This manual supplies basic information on how to operate the printer. Read the manual carefully to understand each function before operation.

Features of the Product

This SATO S84-ex/S86-ex print engine is a high-performance, automated print/apply labeling system with a user-friendly design and equipped with versatile functions. This print engine has a durable design for non-stop operation.

The main features of the printer are as follows:

- Equipped with a two-color backlight LCD and a two-color status LED for improved monitoring of the printer status.
- Durable design for harsh environment.
- High-speed throughput printing with maximum 16 ips print speed and adjustable backfeed speed control.
- Print head can be replaced easily without using extra tools.
- New designed sensor cover with nonstick surface that can be easily removed and cleaned without any tools.
- Easily upload/download data to/from an SD card or USB memory, or by using the SATO All In One Tool application.
- Supports remote printer setting through the SATO All In One Tool application or a web browser.
- Supports a multi-language display menu and printing of Asian fonts.
- Supports emulations in standard firmware.
- Supports various communication interfaces.
- Supports SNTP protocol.

Safety Precautions

This section describes how to safely operate the printer. Be sure to read and understand all instructions carefully before you install and use the printer.

Pictographic Symbols

This operator manual and printer labels use a variety of pictographic symbols. These symbols show the safe and correct operation of the printer and how to prevent injury to others and property damage. The symbol explanations are as follows.

 Warning	The Warning symbol indicates that you can cause death or serious injury if you do not follow the instruction or procedure.

 Caution	The Caution symbol indicates that you can cause injury or property damage if you do not follow the instruction or procedure.

Example Pictographs



The △ pictograph means “Caution is required”. The pictograph includes a specified warning symbol (for example, the left symbol shows electric shock).



The ⊘ pictograph means “Must not be done”. The pictograph includes a specified prohibited symbol (for example, the left symbol means “Disassembly prohibited”).



The ● pictograph means “Must be done”. The pictograph includes a specified mandate action symbol (for example, the left symbol means “Disconnect the power plug from the outlet”).

 Warning	
Do not set on an unstable area  - Do not set on an unstable area, such as a wobbly table or slanted area or an area subject to strong vibration. If the printer falls off or topples over, it could injure someone. Do not place containers full of water or other liquid on the printer    - Do not place flower vases, cups, or other containers holding liquids, such as water or chemicals, or small metal objects near the printer. If they are spilled and get inside the printer, immediately turn off the power switch, unplug the power cord from the outlet, and contact your SATO reseller or technical support center. Using the printer in this condition could cause a fire or electric shock.	Do not put objects inside the printer    - Do not insert or drop in metal or burnable objects inside the printer's openings (cable outlets, etc.). If foreign objects do get inside the printer, immediately turn off the power switch, unplug the power cord from the outlet, and contact your SATO reseller or technical support center. Using the printer in this condition could cause a fire or electric shock. Do not use other than the specified voltage   - Do not use other than the specified voltage. Doing so could result in fire or electric shock.

⚠ Warning

Always ground the connections



- Always connect the printer's ground wire to a ground. Not grounding the ground wire could result in electric shock.



Handling the power cord



- Do not damage, break, or modify the power cord. Also, do not place heavy objects on the power cord, heat it, or pull it because doing so could damage the power cord and cause a fire or electric shock.



- If the power cord becomes damaged (core is exposed, wires broken, etc.), contact your SATO reseller or technical support center. Using the power cord in this condition could cause a fire or electric shock.
- Do not modify, excessively bend, twist, or pull the power cord. Using the power cord in such a condition could cause a fire or electric shock.

When the printer has been dropped or broken



- If the printer is dropped or broken, immediately turn off the power switch, unplug the power cord from the outlet, and contact your SATO reseller or technical support center. Using the printer in this condition could cause a fire or electric shock.



Do not use the printer when something is abnormal about it.



- Continuing to use the printer in the event something is abnormal about it, such as smoke or unusual smells coming from it, could result in fire or electric shock. Immediately turn off the power switch, unplug the power cord from the outlet, and contact your SATO reseller or technical support center for repairs. It is dangerous for the customer to try to repair it, so absolutely do not attempt repairs on your own.



Do not disassemble the printer



- Do not disassemble or modify the printer. Doing so could result in fire or electric shock. Ask your SATO reseller or technical support center to conduct internal inspections, adjustments, and repairs.



Do not operate with wet hands



- Do not operate the power switch or unplug the AC adapter with wet hands. Doing so increases the risk of electric shock.



Using the head cleaning fluid



- Use of flame or heat around the head cleaning fluid is prohibited. Absolutely do not heat it or subject it to flames.
- Keep the fluid out of reach of children to prevent them from accidentally drinking it. If a child accidentally drinks the fluid, immediately consult with a physician.



Print head



- The print head is hot after printing. Be careful not to get burned when replacing media or cleaning immediately after printing.
- Touching the edge of the print head with bare hands could result in injury. Be careful not to become injured when replacing media or cleaning.
- The customer should not replace the print head. Doing so could result in injury, burns or electric shock.



Do not use in hazardous locations



- The printer is not explosion proof certified.
- Do not use in a potentially explosive environment or atmosphere.

⚠ Caution

Do not place in areas of high humidity



- Do not place the printer in areas with high humidity or where condensation forms. If condensation forms, immediately turn off the power switch and do not use the printer until it dries. Using the printer while condensation is on it could result in electric shock.

Carrying the printer



- When moving the printer, always unplug the power cord from the outlet and check to make sure all external wires are disconnected before moving it. Moving the printer with the wires still connected could damage the cords or connecting wires and result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Do not carry the printer with media loaded in it. The media could fall out and cause an injury.
- When setting the printer on the floor or a stand, make sure not to get your fingers or hands pinched under the printer feet.

Power supply



- If your hands are wet, do not operate the power switch, connect the power cord or disconnect the power cord. Doing so could cause an electric shock.

Power cord



- Keep the power cord away from hot devices. Placing the power cord near hot devices could cause the cord's covering to melt and cause a fire or electric shock.
- When disconnecting the power cord from the outlet, be sure to hold the plug. Pulling the cord could expose or break the wires and cause a fire or electric shock.
- The power cord set that comes with the printer is designed especially for this printer. Do not use it with any other electrical devices.

Top cover



- Be careful not to get your fingers pinched when opening or closing the top cover. Also be careful that the top cover does not slip off and drop.

Loading media



- When loading media roll, be careful not to get your fingers pinched between the media roll and the supply unit.

When not using the printer for a long time



- When not using the printer for a long time, unplug the power cord from the outlet to maintain safety.

During maintenance and cleaning



- When maintaining and cleaning the printer, unplug the power cord from the outlet to maintain safety.

Precautions for Installation and Handling

Printer operation can be affected by the printer environment.

Refer to the following instructions for installation and handling of the S84-ex/S86-ex printer.

Select a Safe Location

Place the printer on a surface that is flat and level.

If the surface is not flat and level, this may cause bad print quality. This may also cause a malfunction and decrease the life span of the printer.

Do not place the printer on a location that produces vibration.

Giving serious vibration or shock to the printer may cause a malfunction and shorten the life span of the printer.

Keep the printer out of high temperature and humidity.

Avoid locations subject to extreme or fast changes in temperature or humidity.

Do not place the printer in a location subject to water or oil.

Do not place the printer in a location where it will be exposed to water or oil. Water or oil entering inside the printer may cause a fire, electric shock or malfunction.

Avoid dust.

Dust build up may result in bad print quality.

Keep out of direct sunlight.

This printer has a built-in optical sensor. Exposure to direct sunlight will make the sensor less responsive and may cause the media to be sensed incorrectly. Close the top cover when printing.

Power Supply

This printer requires an AC power supply.

Be sure to connect the printer to an AC power supply.

Connect the power cord to a grounded power outlet.

Make sure that the printer is connected to a grounded power outlet.

Supply a stable source of electricity to the printer.

When using the printer, do not share its power outlet with other electrical devices that could cause power fluctuations and performance issues with your printer.

Regulatory Approval

FCC Warning

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy, and if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

FCC Statement for Optional Wireless LAN

This device complies with RF radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment.

The antenna used for this transmitter must be installed to provide a separation distance of at least 20 cm from all people and must not be collocated or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

Bluetooth/Wireless Communication

Compliance Statement

This product has been certified for compliance with the relevant radio interference regulations of your country or region. To make sure continued compliance, do not:

- Disassemble or modify this product.
- Remove the certificate label (serial number seal) affixed to this product.

Use of this product near microwave and/or other wireless LAN equipment, or where static electricity or radio interference is present, may shorten the communication distance, or even disable communication.

Industry Canada (IC) Statement for Bluetooth

This device complies with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s).

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- This device may not cause interference.
- This device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

This equipment complies with IC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment and meets RSS-102 of the IC radio frequency (RF) Exposure rules. This equipment should be installed and operated keeping the radiator at least 20 cm or more away from person's body (excluding extremities: hands, wrists, feet and ankles).

Le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Industrie Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes :

- L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage.
- L'utilisateur de l'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

Cet équipement est conforme aux limites d'exposition aux rayonnements énoncées pour un environnement non contrôlé et respecte les règles d'exposition aux fréquences radioélectriques (RF) CNR-102 de l'IC. Cet équipement doit être installé et utilisé en gardant une distance de 20 cm ou plus entre le dispositif rayonnant et le corps (à l'exception des extrémités : mains, poignets, pieds et chevilles).

Disposal of Old Electrical & Electronic Equipment (Applicable in the European Union and other European countries with separate collection systems)



A product marked with this symbol on itself or on its packaging shall not be treated as household waste. Instead it shall be handed over to an appropriate collection point for the recycling of electrical and electronic equipment in accordance with local regulations. Inappropriate waste handling of this product may cause detrimental consequences for the environment and damage to human health. The recycling of materials will help to conserve natural resources and contribute to your community. For more detailed information on recycling of this product, contact your local municipal organization, your household waste disposal service or the dealer where you purchased the product.

EN55022 Warning

This is a class A product.

In a domestic environment, this product may cause radio interference, in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.

EN55022 Warnung

Warnung! Dies ist eine Einrichtung der Klasse A.

Diese Einrichtung kann im Wohnbereich Funkstörungen verursachen. In diesem Fall kann vom Betreiber verlangt werden, angemessene Maßnahmen durchzuführen.

Das Gerät ist nicht für die Benutzung im unmittelbaren Gesichtsfeld am Bildschirmarbeitsplatz vorgesehen. Um störende Reflexionen am Bildschirmarbeitsplatz zu vermeiden, darf dieses Produkt nicht im unmittelbaren Gesichtsfeld platziert werden.

机器名称: 条码打印机

部件名称	有毒有害物质或元素					
	铅 (Pb)	汞 (Hg)	镉 (Cd)	六价铬 (Cr6+)	多溴联苯 (PBB)	多溴二 苯醚 (PBDE)
印刷电路板	×	○	○	○	○	○
电源, 交流转换器 电池	×	○	○	○	○	○
热敏头, 液晶显示屏	×	○	○	○	○	○
电动机, 切纸机	×	○	○	○	○	○
树脂 (ABS, PC等)	×	○	○	○	○	○
金属 (铁, 非铁金属)	×	○	○	○	○	○
电缆等	○	○	○	○	○	×
包装材料 (纸盒等)	○	○	○	○	○	○

本表格依据SJ/T 11364的规定编制。

○：表示该有毒有害物质在该部件所有均质材料中的含量均在GB/T 26572 “电子信息产品中有毒有害物质的限量要求” 的标准规定以下。

×

环保使用期限



本标志中的年数，是根据2006年2月28日公布的“电子信息产品污染防治管理办法”和SJ/T11364“产品污染防治标识要求”，适用于在中华人民共和国（除台湾、香港和澳门外）生产或进口的电子信息产品的“环保使用期限”。在遵守使用说明书中记载的有关本产品安全和使用上的注意事项，且没有其他法律和规定的免责事由的情况下，在从生产日开始的上述年限内，产品的有毒，有害物质或元素不会发生外泄或突变，使用该产品不会对环境造成严重污染或对使用者人身，财产造成严重损害。

注1): “环保使用期限”不是安全使用期限。尤其不同于基于电气性能安全，电磁安全等因素而被限定的使用期限。产品在经适当使用后予以废弃时，希望依照有关电子信息产品的回收和再利用的法律与规定进行处理。

注2): 本标志中的年数为“环保使用期限”，不是产品的质量保证期限。对于同一包装内包含电池，充电器等附属品的产品，产品和附属品的环保使用期限可能不同。

1

Parts Identification

1.1 Printer Orientation

This printer has two types of orientation as below. The media feed direction varies depending on the type of orientation.



Media feed direction

Americas: Standard/Right Hand
Europe/Asia: Left Hand



Media feed direction

Americas: Opposite/Left Hand
Europe/Asia: Right Hand

Note

The pictures in this manual show the S84-ex (Americas: Standard/Right Hand, Europe: Left Hand) printer, unless otherwise stated.

When using the right hand (Americas: Opposite/Left Hand, Europe: Right Hand) model, the picture on the right shows a symmetrical opposite view of your printer.

When using the S86-ex printer, the dimension of the media compartment is larger.

1.2 Parts Identification of the Printer

1.2.1 Front View



① **Operator panel**

② **LCD**

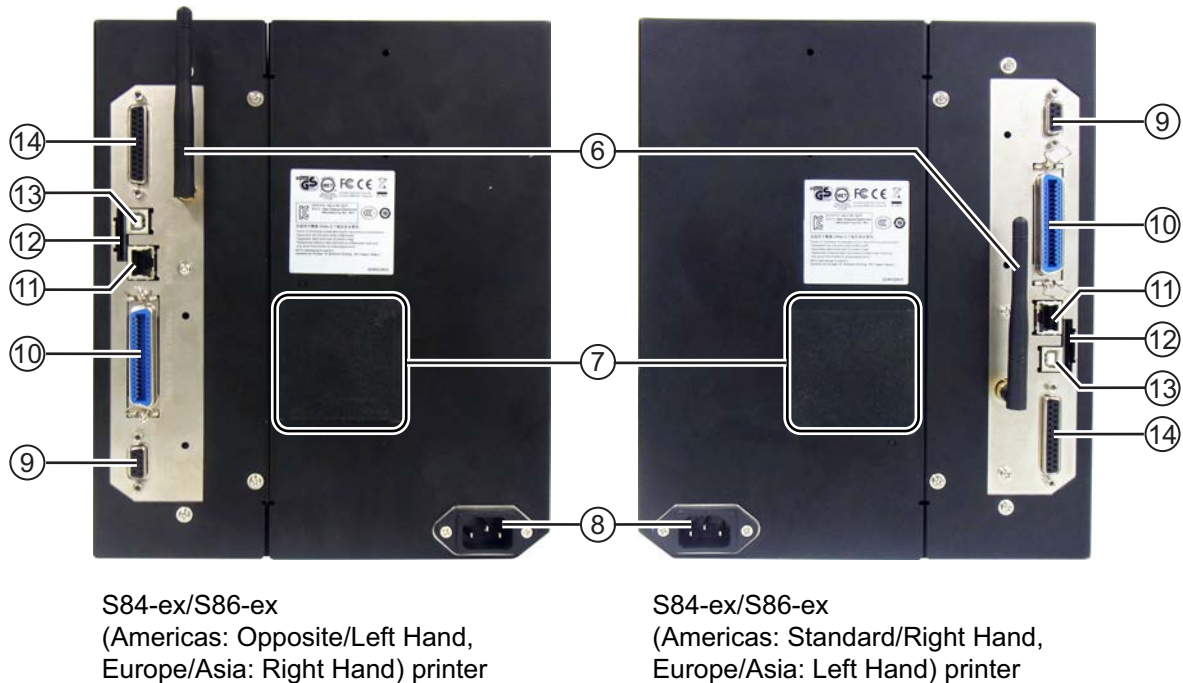
③ **Top cover**

④ **Power (I/O) switch**

Press this switch to power on (I) or power off (O) the printer.

⑤ **Media discharge outlet**

1.2.2 Rear View



- ⑥ Wireless LAN (optional) antenna**
To install the optional wireless LAN antenna.

- ⑦ Fan filter**
To prevent dust from entering the printer.

- ⑧ AC input terminal**
Supplies power to the printer through the inserted power cord.
Before connecting, make sure that the AC voltage of your region is in the range of AC 100 to 240 V, 50 to 60 Hz.

- ⑨ RS-232C connector**
To connect the printer to the host computer using the RS-232C serial interface.

- ⑩ IEEE1284 connector**
To connect the printer to the host computer using the IEEE1284 interface.

- ⑪ LAN connector**
To connect the printer to the host computer using the LAN interface.

- ⑫ SD CARD slot**
To install an SD card for additional memory.

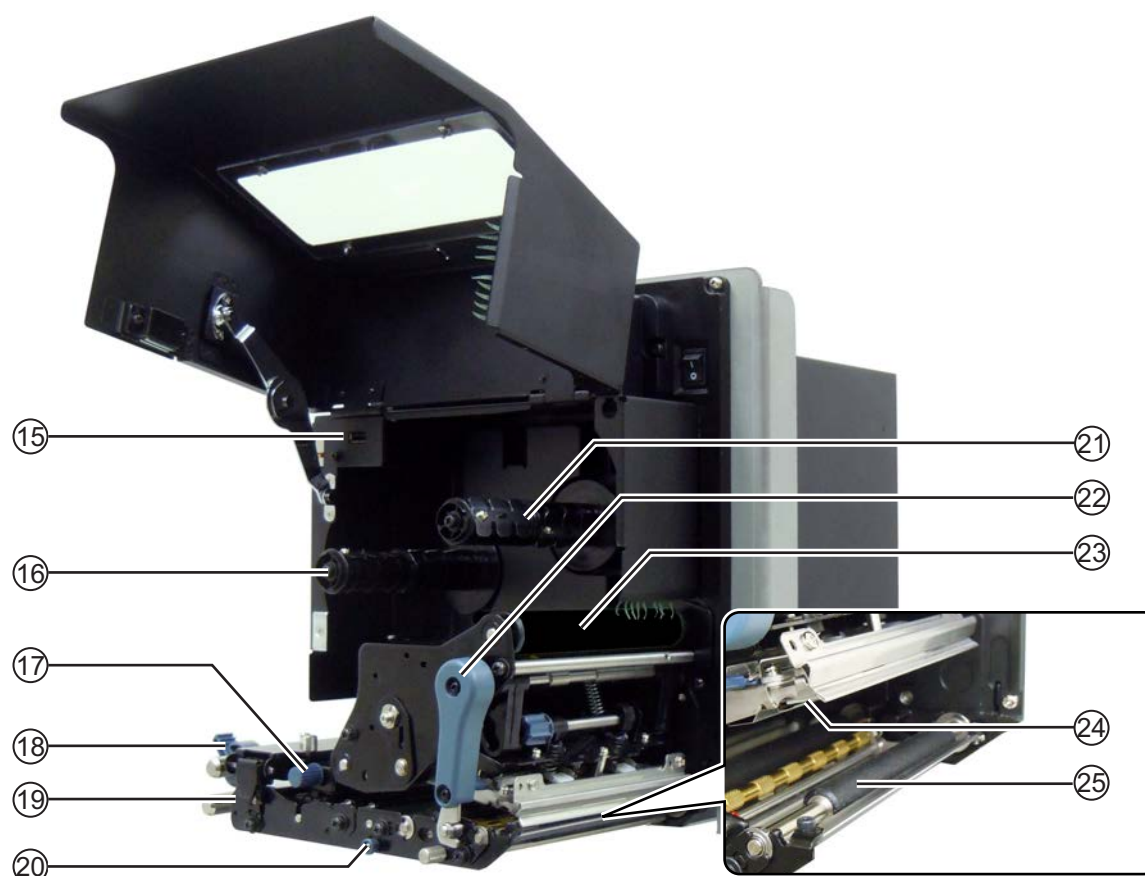
⚠ CAUTION

Be sure to perform a virus check for the SD card before connecting it to the printer. SATO Corporation shall not be held responsible for a malfunction of the printer caused by a virus infection through the SD card.

- ⑬ USB connector (Type B)**
To connect the printer to the host computer using the USB interface.

- ⑭ EXT connector (External signal interface)**
Interface connector for external signals.
Connect the optional applicator to this terminal.

1.2.3 Internal View



- ⑮ USB connector (Type A)**
For connecting to optional USB memory.

⚠ CAUTION

Be sure to perform a virus check for the USB memory before connecting it to the printer. SATO Corporation shall not be held responsible for a malfunction of the printer caused by a virus infection through the USB memory.

- ⑯ Ribbon supply spindle**
- ⑰ Media sensor adjustment knob**
Used to adjust the position of the media sensor.
- ⑱ Media guide**

- ⑲ Feed lock latch**
Used to open the feed roller and media sensor assembly.
- ⑳ Pressure roller release tab**
Used to release the pressure plate.
- ㉑ Ribbon rewind spindle**
- ㉒ Head lock lever**
Used to release the print head assembly.
- ㉓ Ribbon roller**
- ㉔ Print head (Consumables)**
The part to print on the media. Perform regular maintenance.
- ㉕ Platen roller (Consumables)**

1.3 Parts on the Operator Panel

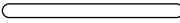
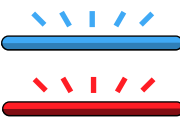
1.3.1 Operator Panel



Note: Remove the protective sheet from the operator panel before use.

① ▶ LINE button Toggle between online/offline mode. ② LCD ③ 📄 FEED button Feed a piece of media when the printer is in offline mode. ④ LED indicator ⑤ ↶ FUNCTION button Operates the set function when the printer is in normal mode. Returns to the setting mode menu from the setting screens. ⑥ ↵ ENTER button Enter the setting mode menu when the printer is in offline mode. Confirm the selected item or setting value when the printer is in setting mode.	⑦ ✕ CANCEL button Go to the CANCEL PRINT JOB screen when the printer is in offline mode. Returns to the previous setting screen when the printer is in setting mode. ⑧ ◀/▶/▲/▼ Arrow buttons Navigate the selection or set numbers in the screen menu. Press the ▲ button to adjust the buzzer volume when the printer is in normal mode. Press the ▲ and ▼ buttons for one second to enter the adjustment mode when the printer is in normal mode.

1.3.2 LED Indicator

LED Indicator	Color	Description
	Blue	Power on or online mode
	(Light off)	Power off or offline mode
	Red	Printer error (For example, when a machine error is detected)
 Flashes at intervals of two seconds.	Red	Printer error (For example, when the ribbon runs out)
 Alternately flashes blue and red.	Blue and red	Printer error (For example, when a communication error has occurred)

2

Installing the Printer

2.1 Installation Precautions

Install this printer in a location as follows:

- A location that is horizontal and stable.
When you install the printer onto a support structure/applicator, the complete assembly must be sturdy and stable.
Attach the support structure firmly to the floor or on production machinery.
- A location that has sufficient space for operating the printer.
Install the printer so that the media dispenser side is within the designated distance and height relative to the applicator.
Install the media supply dispensers with an operational distance to the printer's input side.

Do not install this printer in a location as follows. Doing so could cause the printer to malfunction.

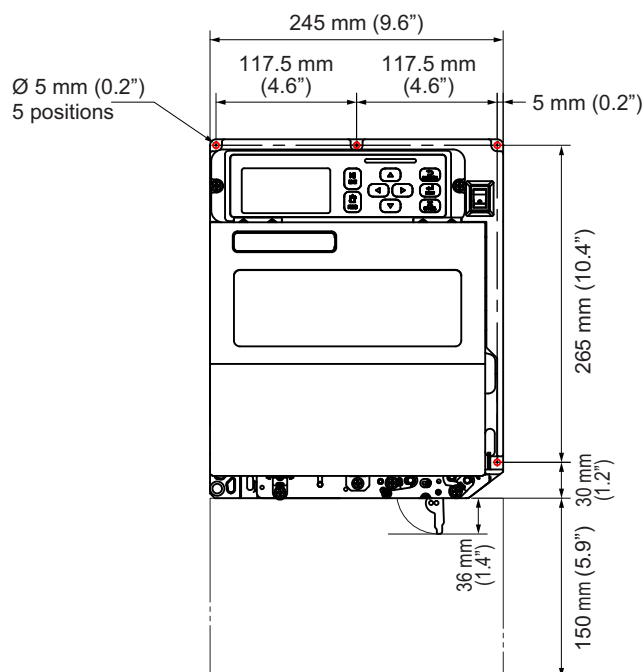
- A location that is subject to vibration.
- A location with high temperature and humidity.
- A dusty location.
- A location exposed to direct sunlight.
- A location with a lot of electrical noise.
- A location with a large fluctuation in power.

2.2 Installation Space

Make sure that there is sufficient space around the printer so that the top cover can be fully opened when operating or cleaning the printer, or replacing consumables. And make sure that there is sufficient space on the rear side of the printer so that the rear housing cover can be fully opened during maintenance.

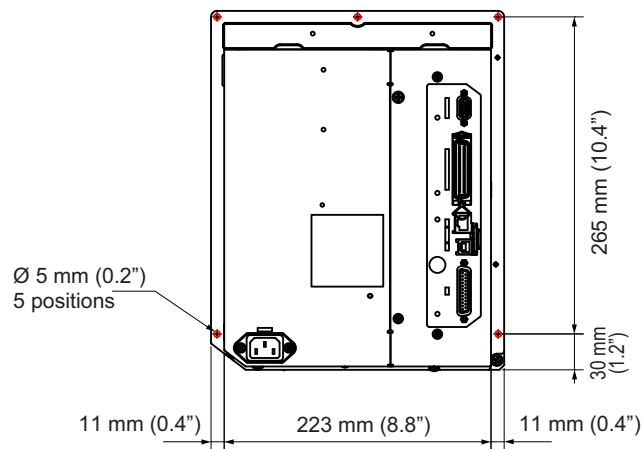
The illustrations in this section show the printer from different angles, providing dimensions and spatial requirements.

2.2.1 Front View (S84-ex/S86-ex printer)



Americas: Standard/Right Hand
Europe/Asia: Left Hand

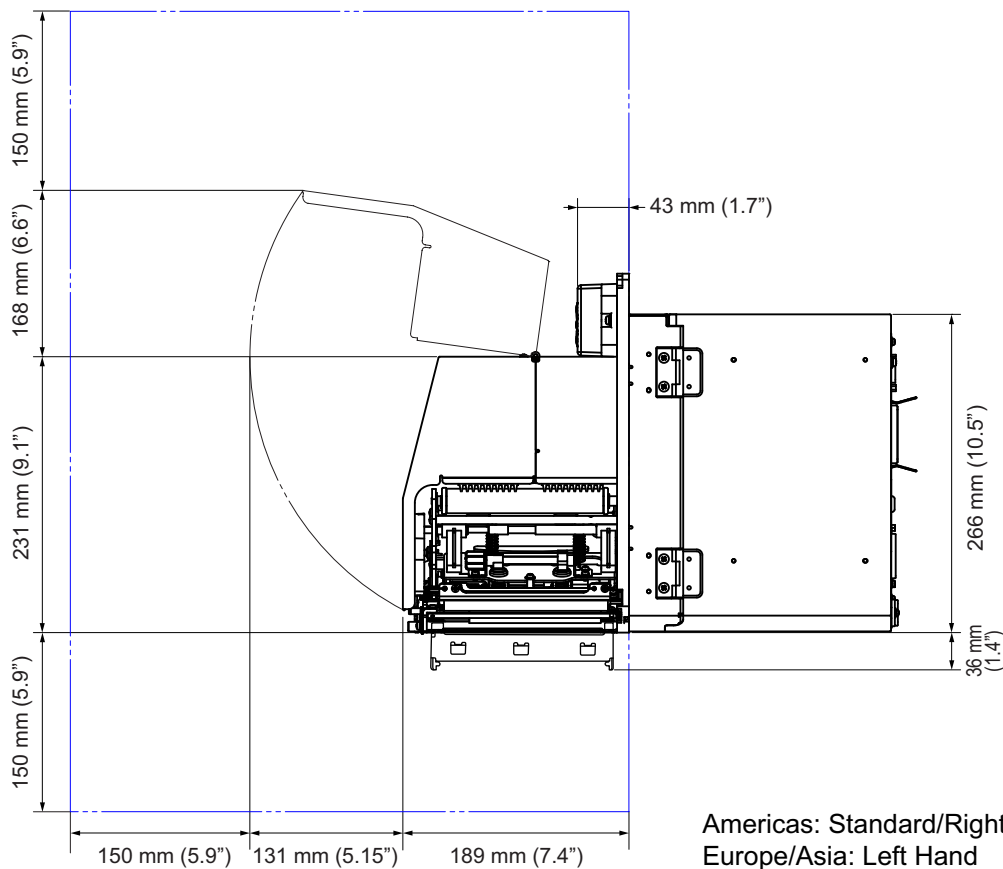
2.2.2 Rear View (S84-ex/S86-ex printer)



○ indicates five positions of bores for installing the printer to a support structure.

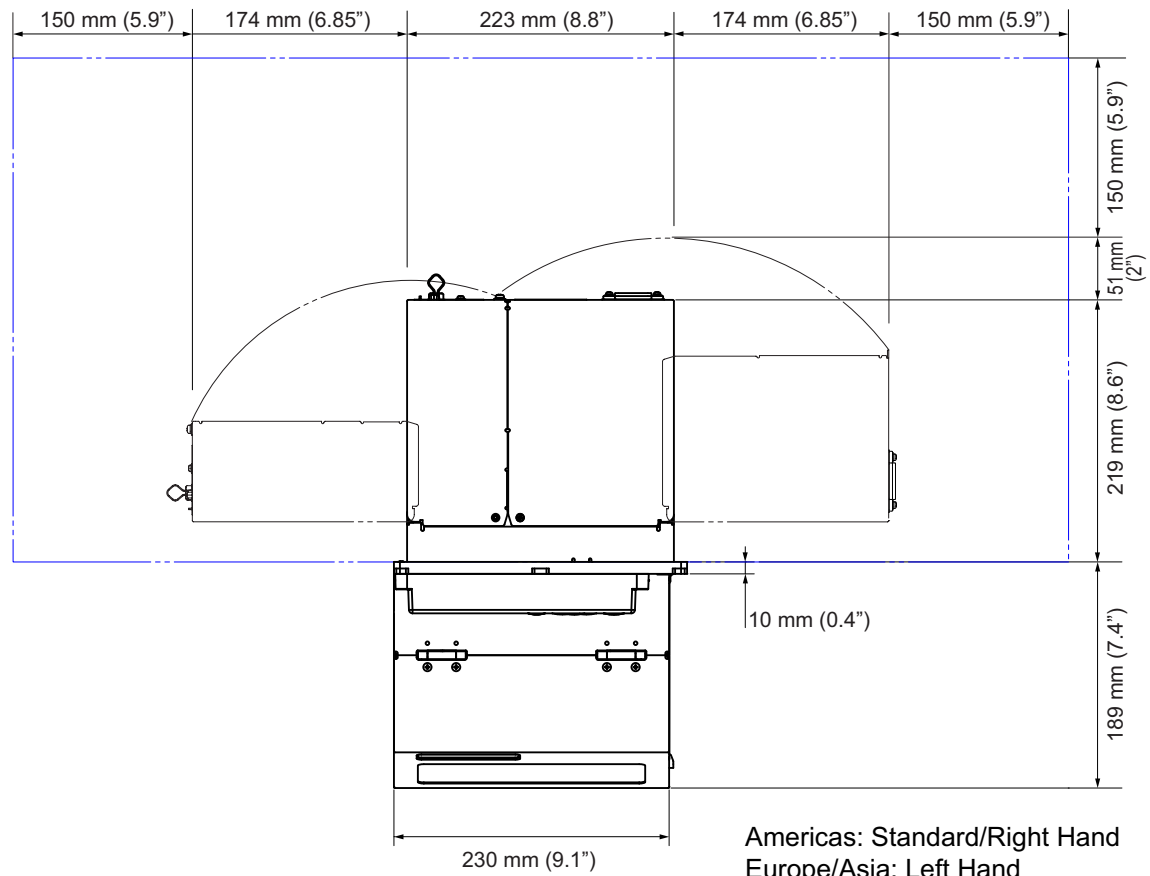
Americas: Standard/Right Hand
Europe/Asia: Left Hand

2.2.3 Media Dispensed View (S84-ex printer)

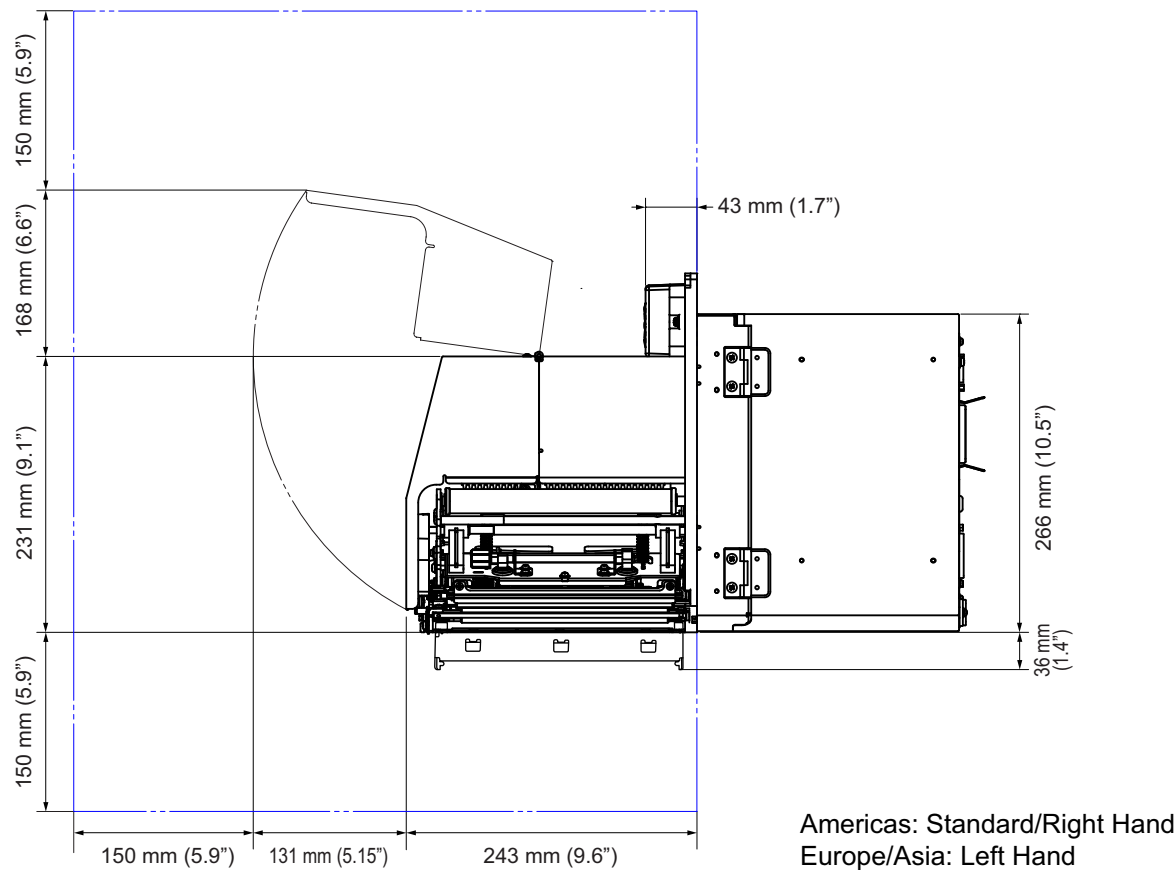


Americas: Standard/Right Hand
Europe/Asia: Left Hand

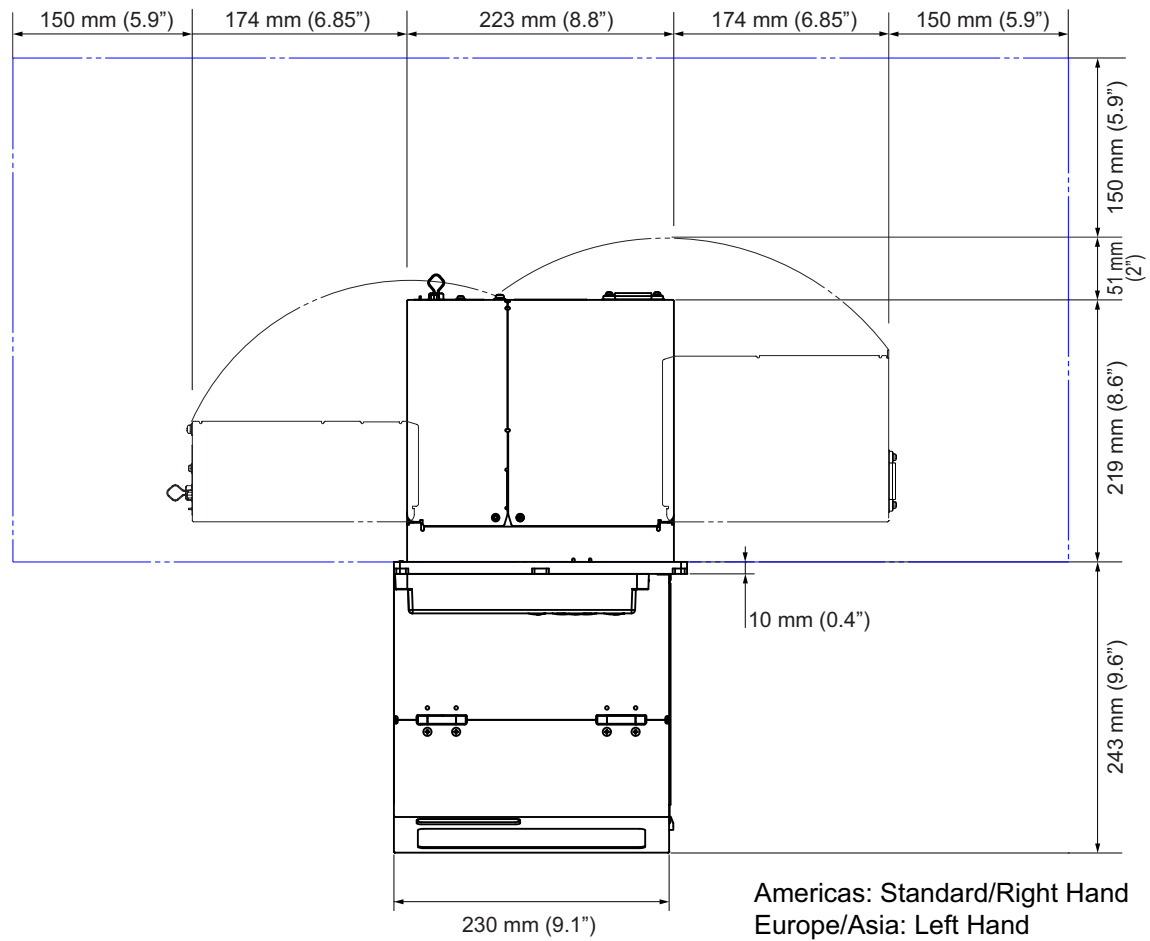
2.2.4 Top View (S84-ex printer)



2.2.5 Media Dispensed View (S86-ex printer)



2.2.6 Top View (S86-ex printer)



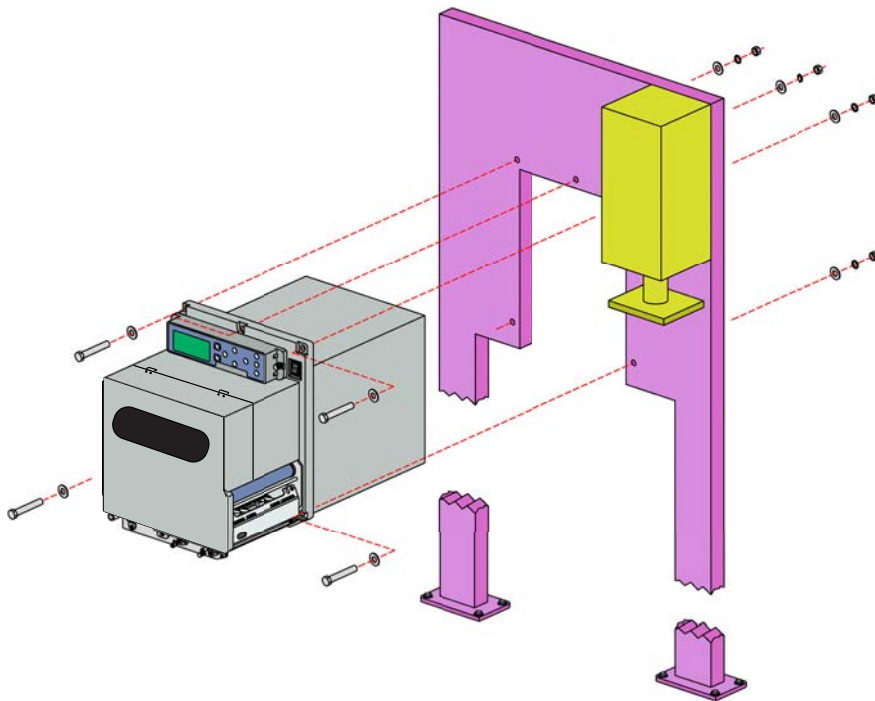
2.3 Installing the Printer onto a Support Structure/Applicator

This printer must be installed onto a support structure/applicator for correct operation. The printer has five bores on the center frame for installing to a support structure. Attach five bolts to the five bores on the center frame to install the printer onto the support structure.

WARNING

Make sure that you use the designated bolts that can accommodate the weight of the printer. If you do not install the printer correctly, it could fall out of the support structure. This may cause injury.

The picture below shows the installation of the printer onto the support structure.



Note

This picture is for an instructional display purpose only and is not to be interpreted as a precise example.

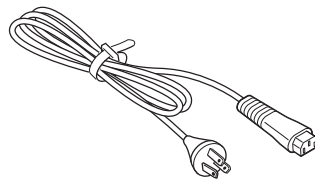
2.4 Checking the Bundled Accessories

After unpacking the printer, make sure that you have all the bundled accessories. If there are missing items, contact the SATO reseller where you purchased the printer.

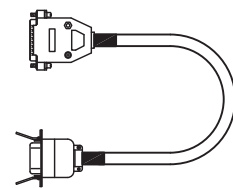
User documents
(Quick guide, Warranty, etc.)



AC power cord*



14-pin conversion cable



Ribbon core



* The shape of power plug varies depending on the region in which it was purchased.

Note

Keep the packaging box and cushioning material after installing the printer. You can pack the printer with this packaging box for shipment when requesting for repairs.

2.5 Connecting the Interface Cable

The connection of the interface cable is explained as follows:

2.5.1 Available Interfaces

This printer supports the following interfaces.

Furthermore, a printer connected with multiple interface cables can continue to operate when receiving data.

*You cannot receive data from more than one interface at a time.

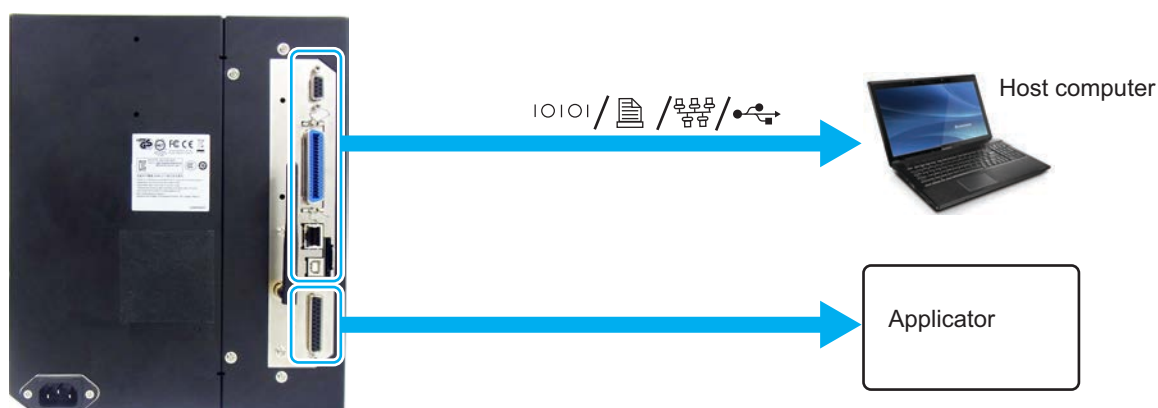
*You cannot use the USB interface if you have installed the optional wireless LAN.

- USB
- LAN
- RS-232C
- IEEE1284
- Bluetooth
- Wireless LAN (WLAN)
- External signal (EXT)

Note

The wireless LAN interface and Bluetooth interface are optional.

2.5.2 Interface Connections



- 1** Make sure that the printer, host computer and applicator are powered off.
Set the power switch of the printer to the “O” position.

- 2** Connect the printer to a host computer with one or more of the available interface connections.

Use a cable that is compatible with the standard of the interface board as stated in [Section 8.13 Interface Specifications](#). Check the orientation of the connector before you make the connection.

- 3 Connect the applicator cable from the **EXT** connector of the printer to the applicator.
Use a cable that is compatible with the standard of the interface board as stated in [Section 8.13 Interface Specifications](#). Check the orientation of the connector before you make the connection.

CAUTION

Do not connect or disconnect the interface cables (or use a switch box) with power supplied to either the printer or computer. This action may cause damage to the interface circuitry in the printer or computer. The warranty does not cover such damages.

2.5.3 Interface Settings

You can set the various interface settings of the printer through the interface mode menu. For details, refer to [Section 4.2.10 Interface Mode](#).

In interface mode, you need to configure both the data port and sub port. An overview of each port is shown below.

Data port

When the interface is set to the data port, it can receive various SBPL commands and receive print data from the host computer.

Data port selection: USB, LAN, RS-232C, IEEE1284, Bluetooth, WLAN (Wireless LAN)

The optional Bluetooth and optional wireless LAN are available if you have installed them.

* You cannot select the interface that has already been set for the SUB PORT.

Sub port

This port is for monitoring the printer status.

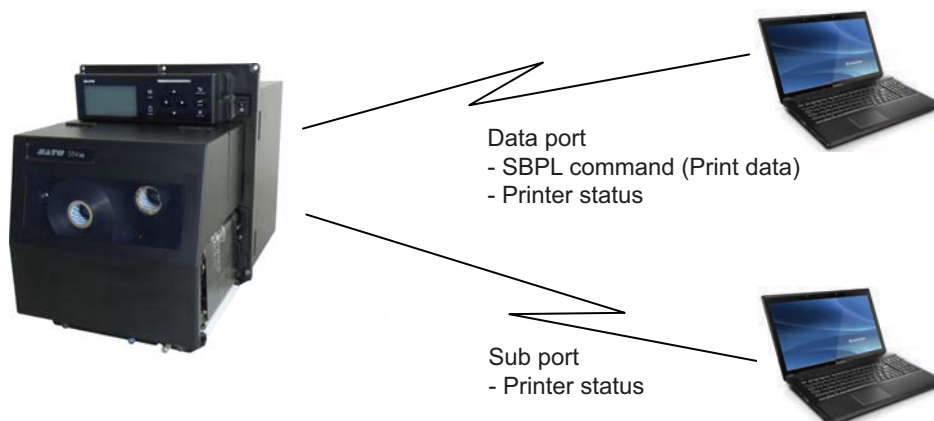
Sub port selection: NONE, USB, LAN, RS-232C, IEEE1284, Bluetooth, WLAN (Wireless LAN)

The optional Bluetooth and optional wireless LAN are available if you have installed them.

* You cannot select the interface that has already been set for the DATA PORT.

Note

The main port and sub port cannot simultaneously use the same interface.



2.5.4 Interface Combination

The interface combinations that can be used for the data port and sub port are as follows.

		Data Port					
		USB	LAN	RS-232C	IEEE1284	Bluetooth	WLAN
Sub Port	USB	x	o	o	o	o	x
	LAN	o	x	o	o	o	o
	RS-232C	o	o	x	o	o	o
	IEEE1284	o	o	o	x	o	o
	Bluetooth	o	o	o	o	x	o
	WLAN	x	o	o	o	o	x
	NONE	o	o	o	o	o	o

[o: configurable, x: not configurable]

Note

- The optional Bluetooth and optional wireless LAN are available if you have installed them.
- Do not select the same interface for the data port and sub port.
- If you have installed the optional wireless LAN, you cannot use the USB interface. The optional wireless LAN is connected to the printer through the USB.
- The sub port cannot be used if you have set ENABLE in the INTERFACE AUTO SELECT screen.
- When WLAN is configured for the data port or sub port, but the printer is powered on without the wireless LAN adapter, the configured interface setting is changed from WLAN to USB. When USB is configured as the data port or sub port, but the wireless LAN adapter is connected, the configured interface setting is changed from USB to WLAN.

2.6 Connecting the Power Cord

WARNING

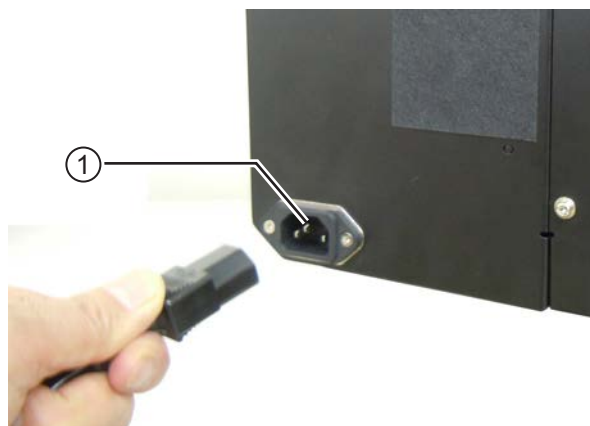
- Do not touch the power switch, connect or disconnect the power cord while your hands are wet. Doing so could cause an electric shock.
 - Always connect the ground wire to a ground terminal. Electric shock could occur if you do not.
-

Note

- The attached power cord is designed exclusively for this printer.
 - Do not use the attached power cord with other devices.
-

1 Connect the power cord to the **AC input terminal** ① at the rear of the printer.

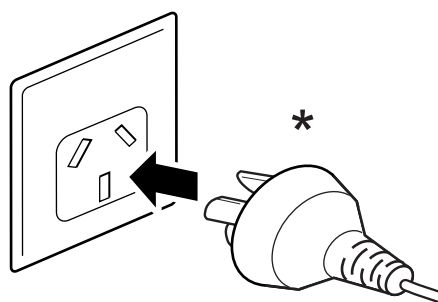
Take note of the orientation of the connector.
Secure the printer with one hand, and insert the connector tightly.



2 Insert the power plug into an AC outlet.

Make sure that the AC voltage of your region is in the range of AC 100-240 V, 50-60 Hz. If your local voltage is not in the stated range, contact your SATO reseller or technical support center.

*The shape of the power plug varies depending on the region in which it was purchased.



Note

This product is also designed for IT power distribution system with phase-to-phase voltage 230 V.

2.7 Power On/Off the Printer

WARNING

Do not touch the power switch, connect or disconnect the power cord while your hands are wet. Doing so could cause an electric shock.

CAUTION

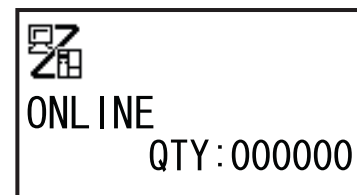
Do not power off the printer during operation, such as when printing or updating. Doing so could cause a malfunction of the printer.

2.7.1 Power On the Printer

- 1 Press the power switch on the operator panel to “I” position.



- 2 **ONLINE** shows on the screen and the LED lights blue.



2.7.2 Power Off the Printer

- 1 Make sure that the printer is in offline mode before you power off.
If **ONLINE** shows on the screen, press the  **LINE** button to change to offline mode.



- 2 Press the power switch on the operator panel to “O” position.



2.8 Installing Optional Memory Storage

The optional SD card or USB memory can be used for uploading and downloading data (print format, graphics, extended characters) registered in the printer and printer firmware.

Contact your SATO reseller or service center for the recommended SD card or USB memory.

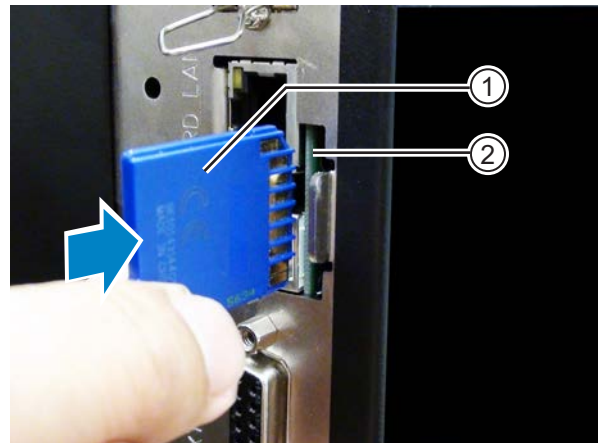
CAUTION

Be sure to perform a virus check for the USB memory or SD card before connecting it to the printer. SATO Corporation shall not be held responsible for a malfunction of the printer caused by a virus infection through the USB memory or SD card.

2.8.1 Installing the Optional SD Card

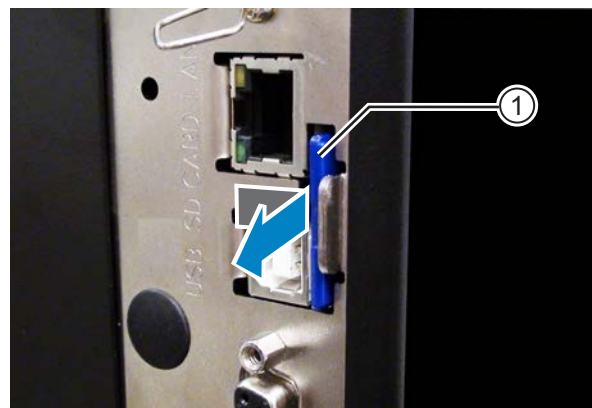
You can install an optional SD card into the SD card slot located on the rear of the printer. When using the SD card for the first time, format the SD card in the memory card mode. Refer to [Section 4.2.11 Memory Mode](#) for details.

- 1** Power off the printer.
- 2** Insert the optional **SD card** ① into the **SD card slot** ② with the orientation the same as shown in the picture.
Contact your SATO reseller for the recommended SD card.
- 3** To seat the **SD card** in the **SD card slot**, push it in until it makes a slight clicking sound and is almost completely inside the printer.
When seated and ready to operate, only a very small portion protrudes, approximately 3.18 mm (0.125").



2.8.2 Removing the Optional SD Card

- 1 Power off the printer.
- 2 Press the card edge slightly to release the SD card from the SD card slot. The SD card slot will immediately release the **SD card** ①.



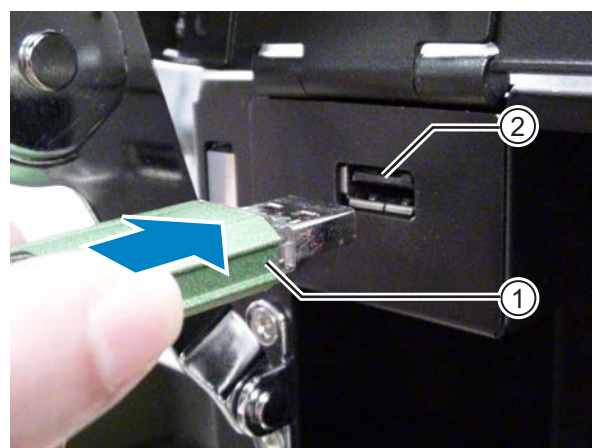
CAUTION

Do not remove the SD card while the printer is accessing the data in the SD card. Doing so may result in data corruption.

2.8.3 Installing the Optional USB Memory

When using the USB memory for the first time, format the USB memory in the memory card mode. Refer to [Section 4.2.11 Memory Mode](#) for details.

- 1 Power off the printer.
- 2 Open the **top cover**.
- 3 Insert the optional **USB memory** ① into the **USB connector** (Series A plug, 2.0 High-speed) ② on the front of the printer.
Contact your SATO reseller for the recommended USB memory.
- 4 Close the **top cover**.



To remove the USB memory from the printer

Power off the printer before removing the USB memory.

CAUTION

Do not remove the USB memory while the printer is accessing the data in the USB memory. Doing so may result in data corruption.

This page is intentionally left blank.

3

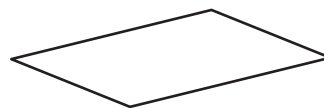
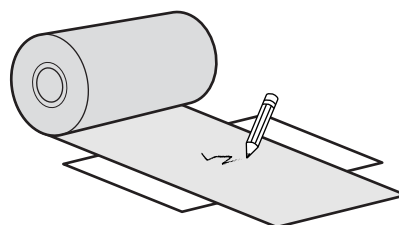
Loading the Ribbon and Media

This printer supports two types of print methods, namely thermal transfer and direct thermal. Thermal transfer is a print method that transfers the ink of the ribbon to the media. Direct thermal is a print method that creates the image on direct thermal media. Ribbon is not necessary if you are using direct thermal media.

3.1 Checking the Ink Side of the Ribbon

There are two wind directions for the ribbon. Face-out means the ink is on the outer side and Face-in means the ink is on the inner side. This printer supports both wind directions. You can examine the ink side of the ribbon using the following procedure:

- 1** Place the outer side of the ribbon onto the media (touching).
- 2** Scratch the inner side of the ribbon with your fingernail or a pointed object.
- 3** If there is a mark on the media, the ink is coated on the outer side of the ribbon.



The ink is coated on the inner side. (Face-in ribbon)



The ink is coated on the outer side. (Face-out ribbon)

3.2 Loading the Ribbon

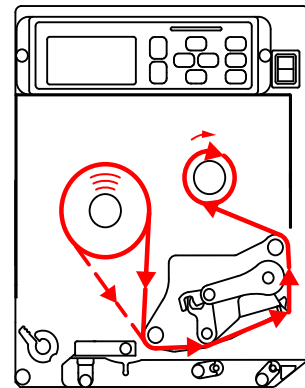
Use genuine media and ribbons for the printer, for optimum print quality.

CAUTION

- The print head and its surroundings are hot after printing. Be careful not to touch it, to avoid being burned.
- Touching the edge of the print head with your bare hand could cause injury.

The routing path of the ribbon is shown in the right picture.

-  Face-in ribbon
-  Face-out ribbon



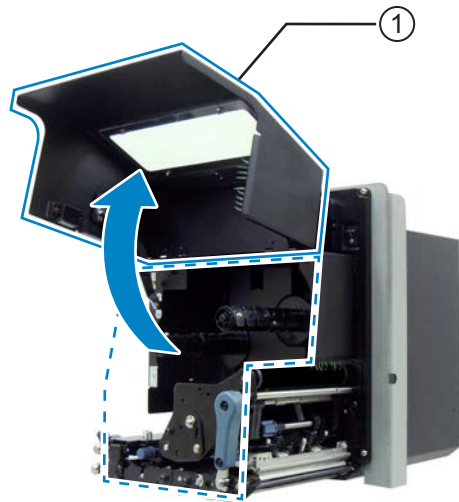
Note

You can also refer to the sticker located on the inner side of the top cover.

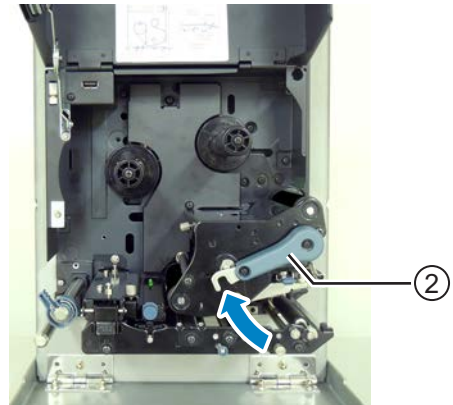
1 Open the **top cover** ①.

CAUTION

Open the top cover fully to prevent accidental drop of the cover.

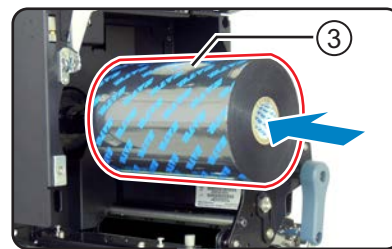


- 2** Turn the **head lock lever** ② clockwise to unlock the print head.



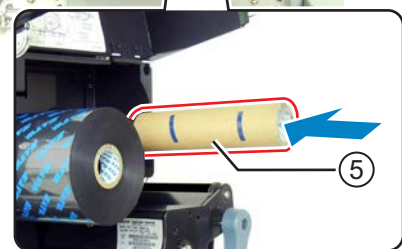
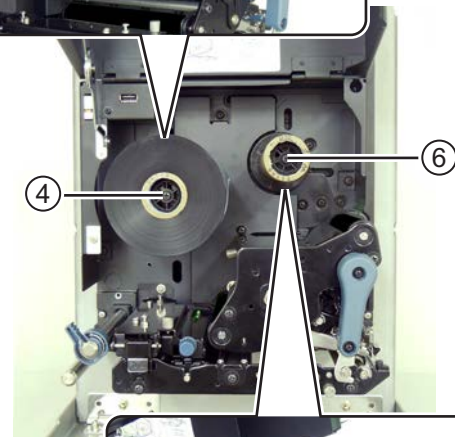
- 3** Load the **ribbon** ③ onto the **ribbon supply spindle** ④.

While taking note of the wind direction, insert the ribbon all the way in.
Make sure that the ink side of the ribbon is facing down when passing it below the print head.



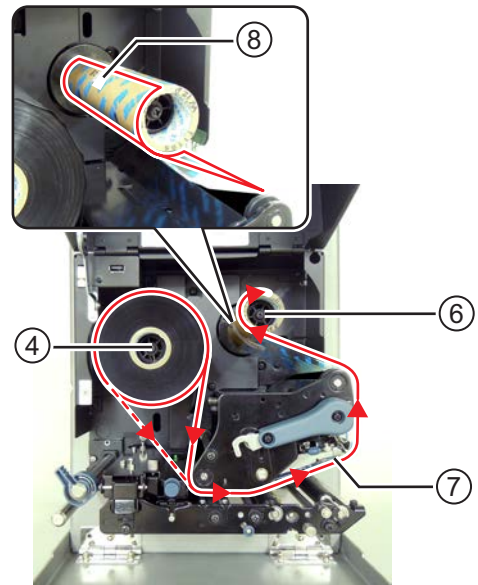
- 4** Load an **empty ribbon core** ⑤ onto the **ribbon rewind spindle** ⑥.

Insert the core all the way in.

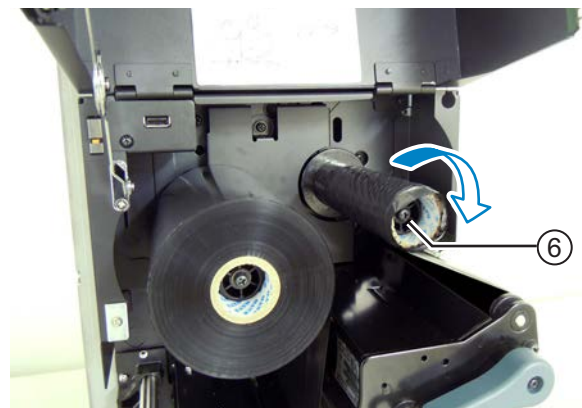


5 From the **ribbon supply spindle** ④, pass the ribbon below the **print head** ⑦ and to the **ribbon rewind spindle** ⑥.

6 Wind the ribbon clockwise around the **empty ribbon core** ⑤ on the **ribbon rewind spindle** ⑥. Attach the free end of the ribbon to the core with adhesive tape ⑧.

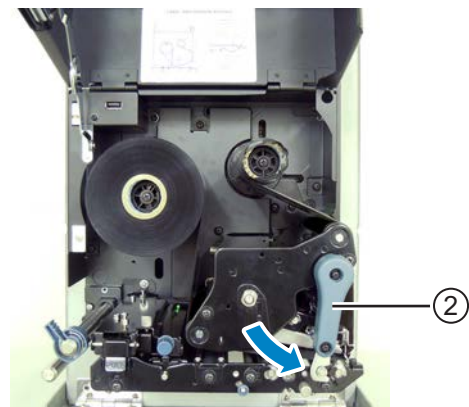


7 Turn the **ribbon rewind spindle** ⑥ clockwise for several rounds, to wind the ribbon.



8 If the media is already loaded, turn the **head lock lever** ② counterclockwise to lock the print head.
If the media is not loaded, continue with [Section 3.5 Loading Media](#).

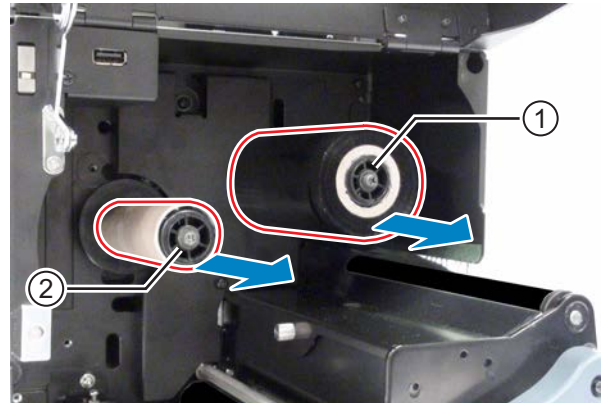
9 Close the **top cover**.



3.3 Removing the Ribbon

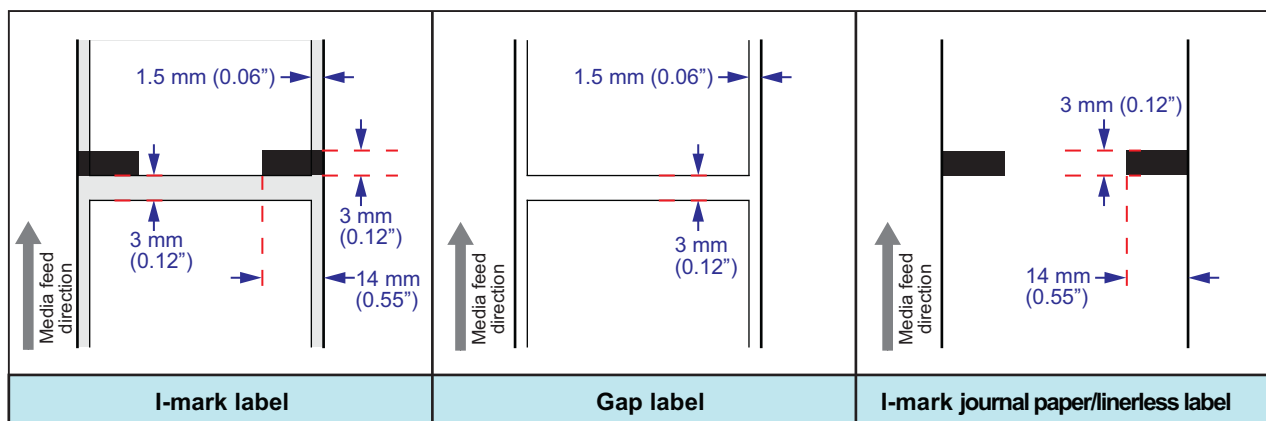
- 1** Open the **top cover**.
- 2** Turn the **head lock lever** clockwise to unlock the print head.
- 3** Pull to remove the used ribbon from the **ribbon rewind spindle** ①.
- 4** Pull to remove the empty core from the **ribbon supply spindle** ②.

You can use this empty core again when you load a new ribbon roll. Load this empty core onto the ribbon rewind spindle.



3.4 Usable Media

This printer can print on two types of media; media roll and fan-fold media. The printer uses media sensors to detect I-marks or Gaps on the media in order to precisely print the content.



3.4.1 Adjusting the Position of the Media Sensor

Non-standard media are media with printing on the reverse side, or media with special shapes. When using non-standard media, make sure that the media sensor position is aligned with the I-mark or gap of the media.

The I-mark sensor of the printer has a fixed position of 5 mm (0.2") measured from the printer's center frame.

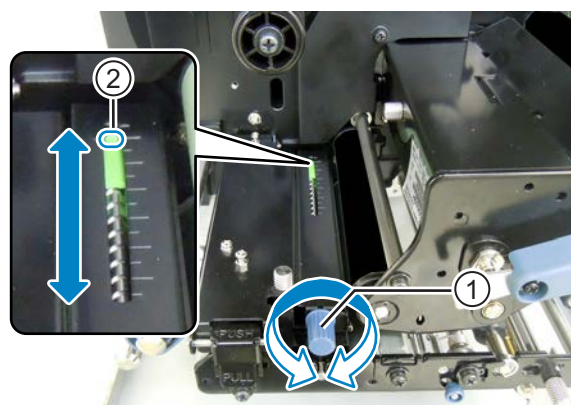
The position of the gap sensor is adjustable. You can adjust the gap sensor position in the following range.

S84-ex printer: 5 mm to 66 mm (0.2" to 2.6") measured from the printer's center frame.

S86-ex printer: 5 mm to 81 mm (0.2" to 3.2") measured from the printer's center frame.

- 1 Open the **top cover**.
- 2 Turn the **media sensor adjustment knob**
 - ① clockwise or counterclockwise to adjust the gap sensor position.

The green indicator ② on top of the media sensor assembly shows the position of the gap sensor.



3.5 Loading Media

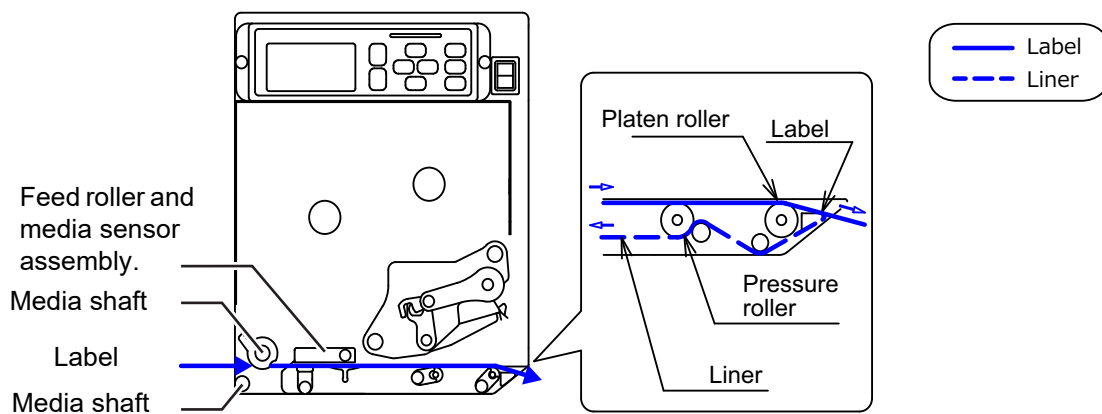
Use genuine media and ribbons for the printer, for optimum print quality.

CAUTION

- The print head and its surroundings are hot after printing. Be careful not to touch it, to avoid being burned.
- Touching the edge of the print head with your bare hand could cause injury.

3.5.1 Loading Label with Dispenser

This section describes the procedure to dispense the label and eject the liner out of the printer. The routing path of the label is shown below. When loading the media, make sure that the print side is facing up.

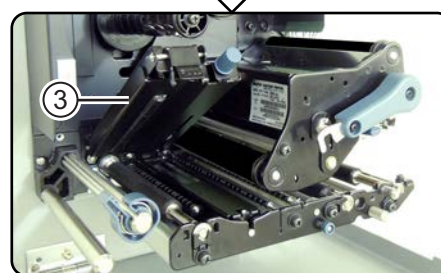
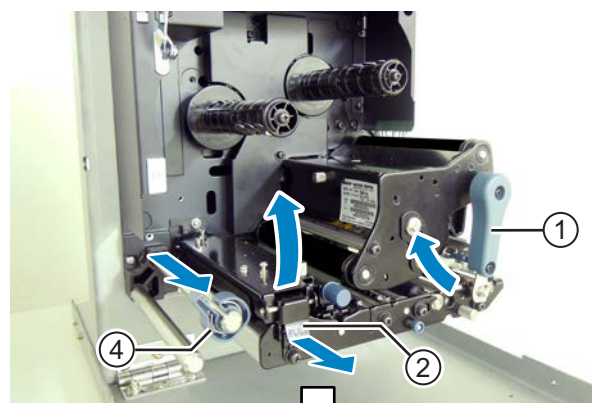


1 Open the **top cover**.

CAUTION

Open the top cover fully to prevent accidental drop of the cover.

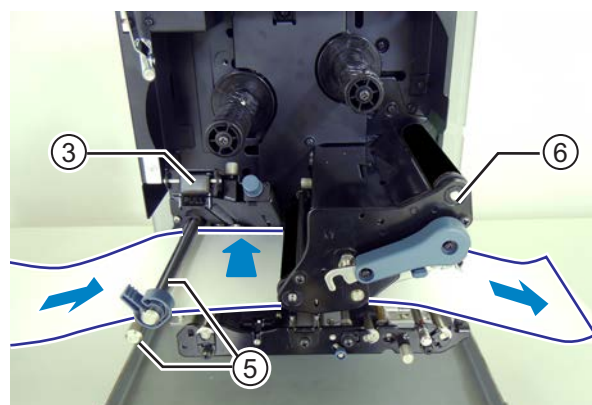
- 2** Turn the **head lock lever** ① clockwise to unlock the print head.
- 3** Pull the **feed lock latch** ② to unlock the **feed roller and media sensor assembly** ③.
The feed roller and media sensor assembly will flip open.
- 4** Pull the **media guide** ④ away from the printer.



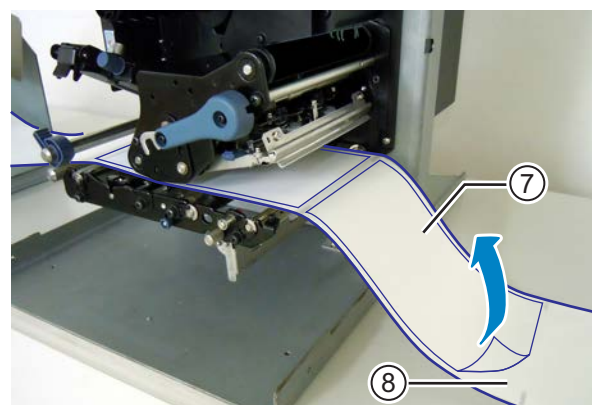
- 5** Pass the media between the **media shaft** ⑤, below the **feed roller and media sensor assembly** ③, and the **print head assembly** ⑥ and extend it out the discharge outlet.

Make sure that the end of the media extends out the discharge outlet.

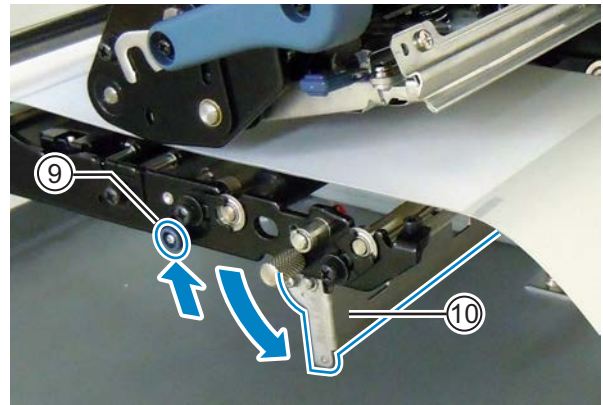
- 6** Push the media until the innermost edge of the media lightly touches the printer center frame.



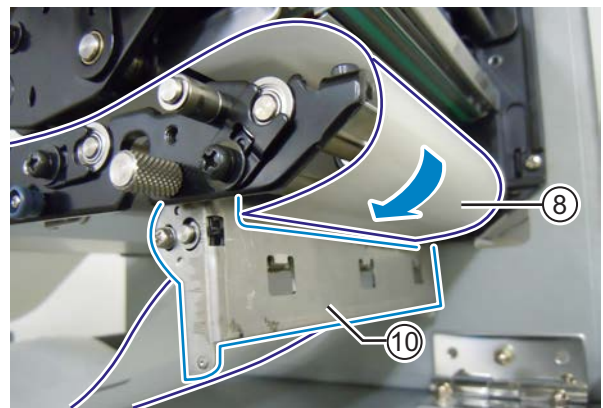
- 7** Pull the label out from the discharge outlet. Remove about 30 cm (11.8") of **labels** ⑦ from the **liner** ⑧.



- 8** Push the **pressure roller release tab** ⑨ up to release the **pressure roller plate** ⑩.



- 9** Pass the **liner** ⑧ through the gap of the **pressure roller plate** ⑩.



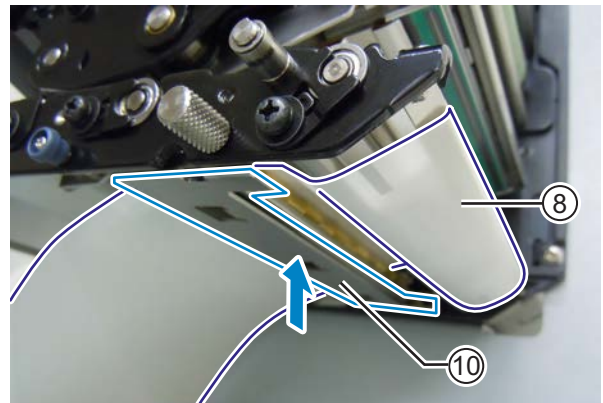
- 10** Push the center of the **pressure roller plate** ⑩ to latch it in place.

- 11** Turn the **head lock lever** counterclockwise to lock the print head.

- 12** Close the **top cover**.

- 13** After loading the media and ribbon, perform a test print to make sure that the media is loaded correctly.

Refer to the [Section 4.2.17 Test Print Mode](#) for details on how to perform a test print.



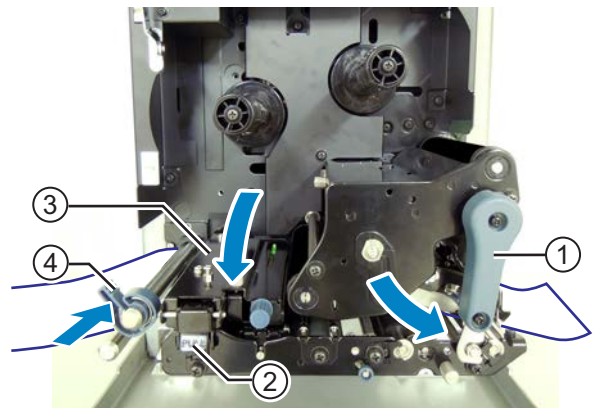
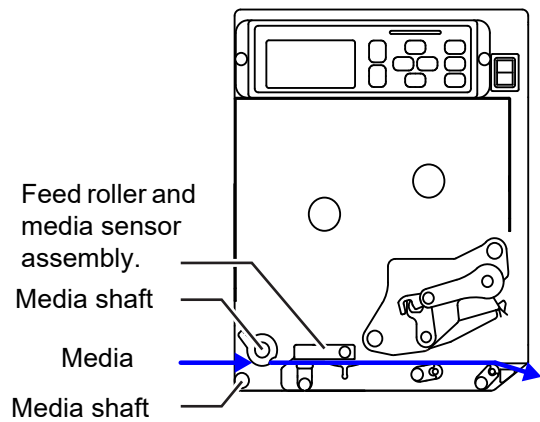
CAUTION

When closing the top cover, be careful not to pinch your fingers.

3.5.2 Loading Media without Using Dispenser

This section describes the procedure to just load the media without using the dispenser. The routing path of the media is shown in the right picture. When loading the media, make sure that the print side is facing up.

- 1** Refer to steps 1 through 6 of [Section 3.5.1 Loading Label with Dispenser](#) to load the media.
- 2** Turn the **head lock lever** ① counterclockwise to lock the print head.
- 3** Press the **feed roller and media sensor assembly** ③ down until the **feed lock latch** ② is locked.
- 4** Push the **media guide** ④ lightly against the outermost edge of the media.
- 5** Close the **top cover**.
- 6** After loading the media and ribbon, perform a test print to make sure that the media is loaded correctly.
Refer to the [Section 4.2.17 Test Print Mode](#) for details on how to perform a test print.



CAUTION

When closing the top cover, be careful not to pinch your fingers.

4

Operation and Configuration

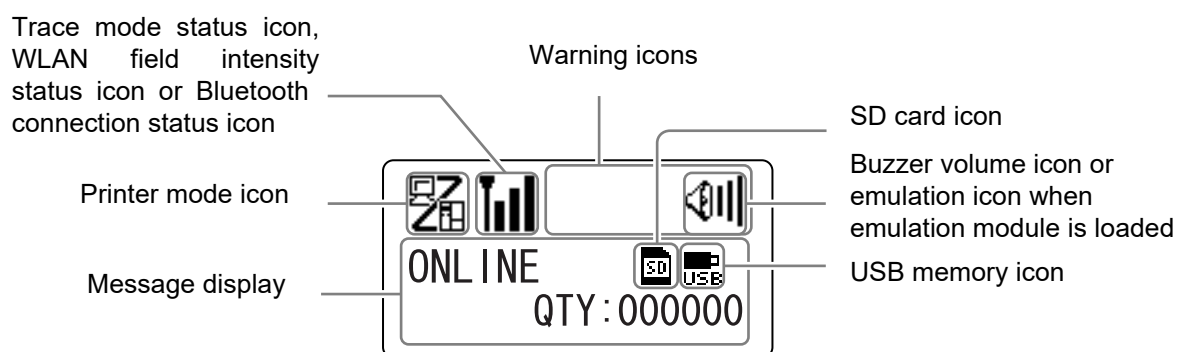
4.1 Display and Operation

The display of the printer varies depending on the following modes:

- Normal mode: refer to [Section 4.1.1 Normal Mode Display and Icons](#).
- Setting mode menu: refer to [Section 4.1.2 Setting Mode Menu and Icons](#).
- Error display: refer to [Section 4.1.3 Error Display and Icons](#).
- Setting display: refer to [Section 4.1.4 Setting Display](#).

4.1.1 Normal Mode Display and Icons

In normal mode, the screen shows the following printer status.



- Printer mode

Icon	Description
	Shows when the printer is in online mode.
	Shows when the printer is in offline mode.
	Shows when the printer is in test print mode and hex dump print mode.
	Shows when the printer is in download mode.
	Shows when the printer is in upload mode.
	Shows when the printer is in memory mode.

- Trace mode status

Icon	Description
	Shows after receiving any data while trace mode is ENABLE.
	Shows after receiving ESC (1BH) A while trace mode is ENABLE.
	Shows after print operation while trace mode is ENABLE.

- WLAN field intensity status

Icon	Description	Infrastructure Mode	Ad Hoc Mode
	The meaning of this icon differs depending on the wireless LAN mode. In Infrastructure mode Shows when the field intensity is more than level 3 and the printer is connected to an access point. In Ad Hoc mode Always shows when the printer is connected.	☐	☐
	Shows when the field intensity is between levels 2 and 3, and the printer is connected to an access point.	☐	Not used
	Shows when the field intensity is between levels 1 and 2, and the printer is connected to an access point.	☐	Not used
	The meaning of this icon differs depending on the wireless LAN mode. In Infrastructure mode Shows when the field intensity is less than level 1 and the printer is connected to an access point. However, it may be possible to communicate depending on the environment. In Ad Hoc mode Always shows when the printer is not connected.	☐	☐
	Shows when the printer is not connected to an access point.	☐	Not used

- Bluetooth connection status

Icon	Description
	Shows when Bluetooth is connected.
	Shows when Bluetooth is disconnected.

- Buzzer volume

Icon	Description
	Shows when the volume is level 3 (Loud).
	Shows when the volume is level 2 (Medium).
	Shows when the volume is level 1 (Low).
	Shows when the volume is level 0 (Mute).

- Emulation mode

Icon	Description
	Shows when SZPL emulation module is loaded.
	Shows when SDPL emulation module is loaded.
	Shows when SIPL emulation module is loaded.

- Warning Icons

Icon	Description
	Shows when a ribbon “near end” is detected.
	Shows when a label “near end” is detected.
	Shows when a command error is detected.
	Shows when a receive buffer “near full” is detected.
	Shows when print head damage is detected.
	Shows when an incompatible print head is detected.

- Memory card status

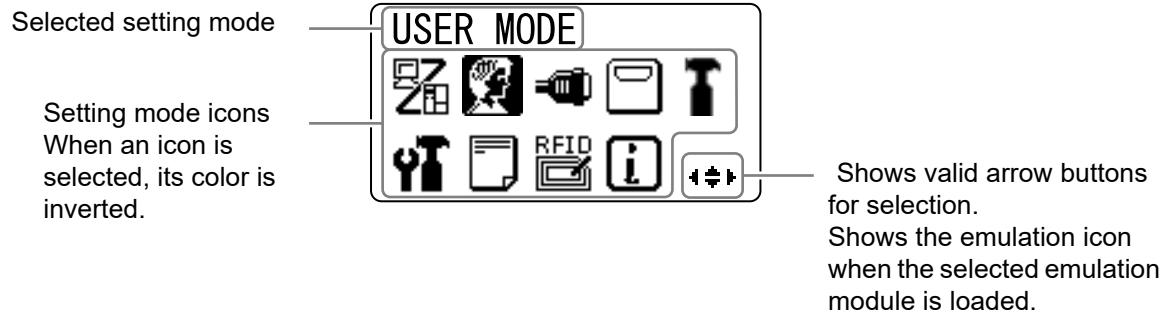
Icon	Description
	Shows when an SD card is inserted.
	Shows when a USB memory is inserted.

Note

- These icons show when the SD card or USB memory is connected.
 - These icons do not show when the printer is in an error mode.
 - These icons do not show when the trace mode is enabled.
 - These icons do not show when the ESC+IM command (for specifying LCD display) is in use.
 - These icon colors are inverted when the SD card or USB memory is being accessed.
-

4.1.2 Setting Mode Menu and Icons

In the setting mode menu, the screen is shown as follows.



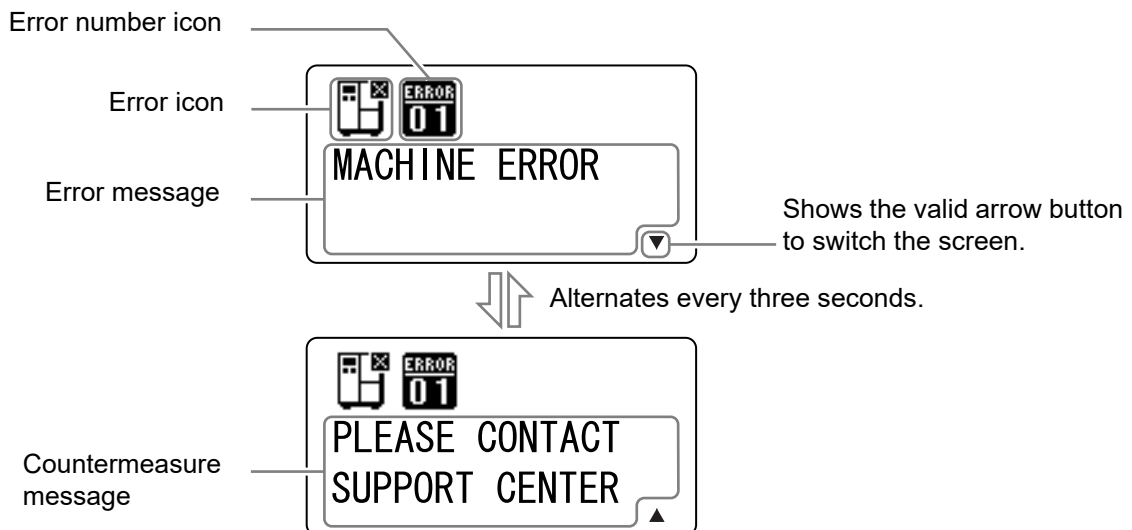
Refer to [Section 4.2.8 Setting Mode Menu](#) for more details.

- Setting Mode

Icon	Description
	The printer enters the normal mode.
	The printer enters the user mode.
	The printer enters the interface mode.
	The printer enters the memory mode.
	The printer enters the service mode.
	The printer enters the advanced mode.
	The printer enters the hex dump print mode.
	The printer enters the RFID user mode. * Shows only if you have installed the optional RFID kit and enabled the RFID mode.
	The printer enters the printer information mode.
	The printer enters the loaded emulation mode. * Shows only if you have loaded with the selected emulation firmware module.

4.1.3 Error Display and Icons

When a printer error occurs, the screen shows the following error messages and icons.



- Error Icon

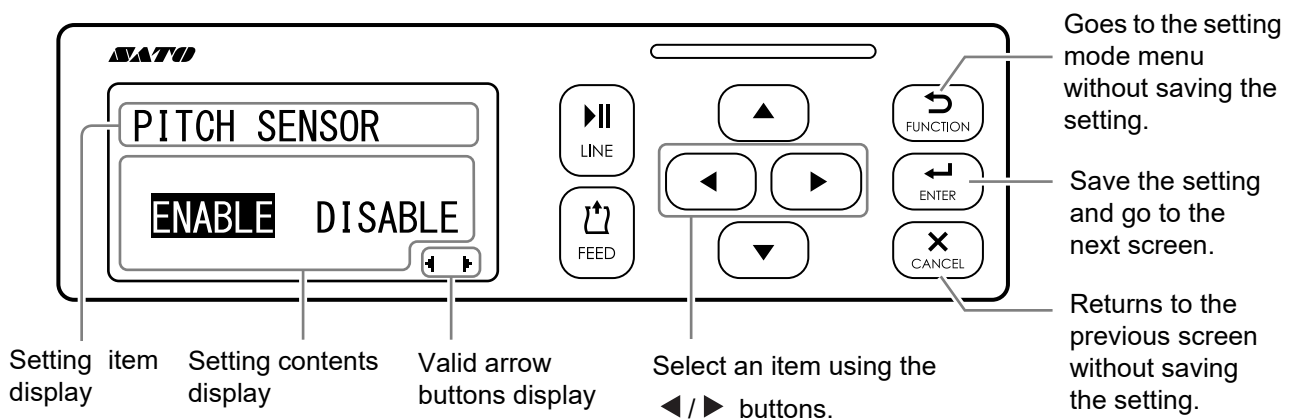
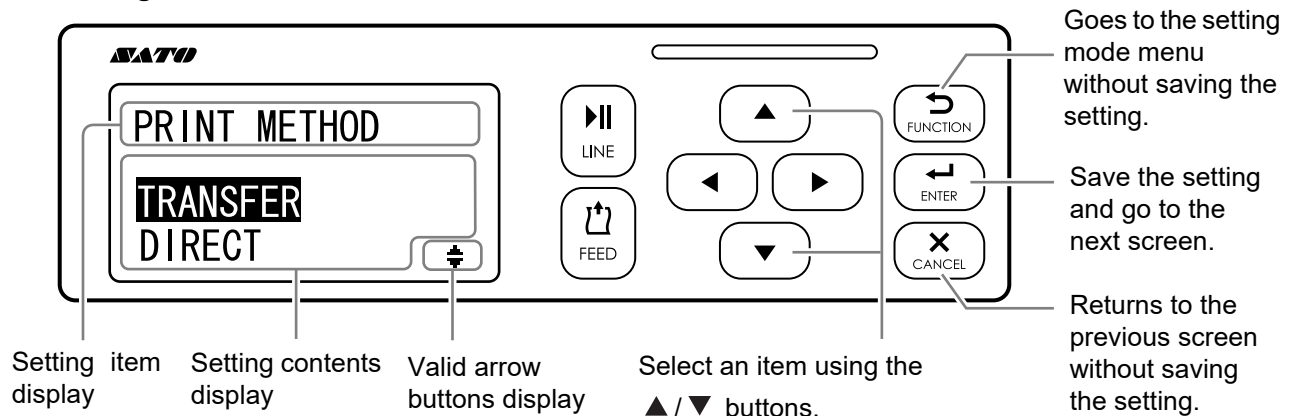
Icon	Description
	Label end or media end is detected.
	Ribbon end is detected.
	Sensor error is detected.
	Print head is unlocked.
	Filament disconnection of the print head is detected.
	Communication error is detected.
	Receive buffer over is detected.
	Item No. error or BCC error is detected.
	Memory card is not accessible or there is no free space in the memory card.
	Writing to the ROM failed or kanji data error is detected.

Icon	Description
	Calendar error is detected.
	Writing information to the RFID tag failed.
	Wireless LAN setting error is detected.
	Any printer error other than above is detected.
	Error number according to the errors.

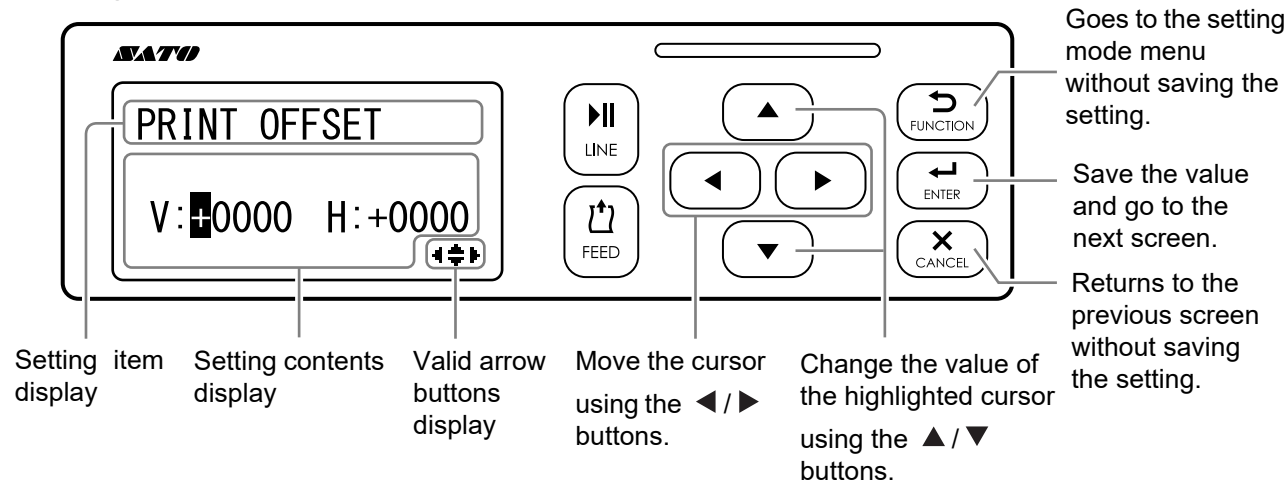
4.1.4 Setting Display

In various setting mode, the setting display is shown as follows. This section also describes the functions of the buttons in setting mode.

- **Selecting an item**



• Setting values



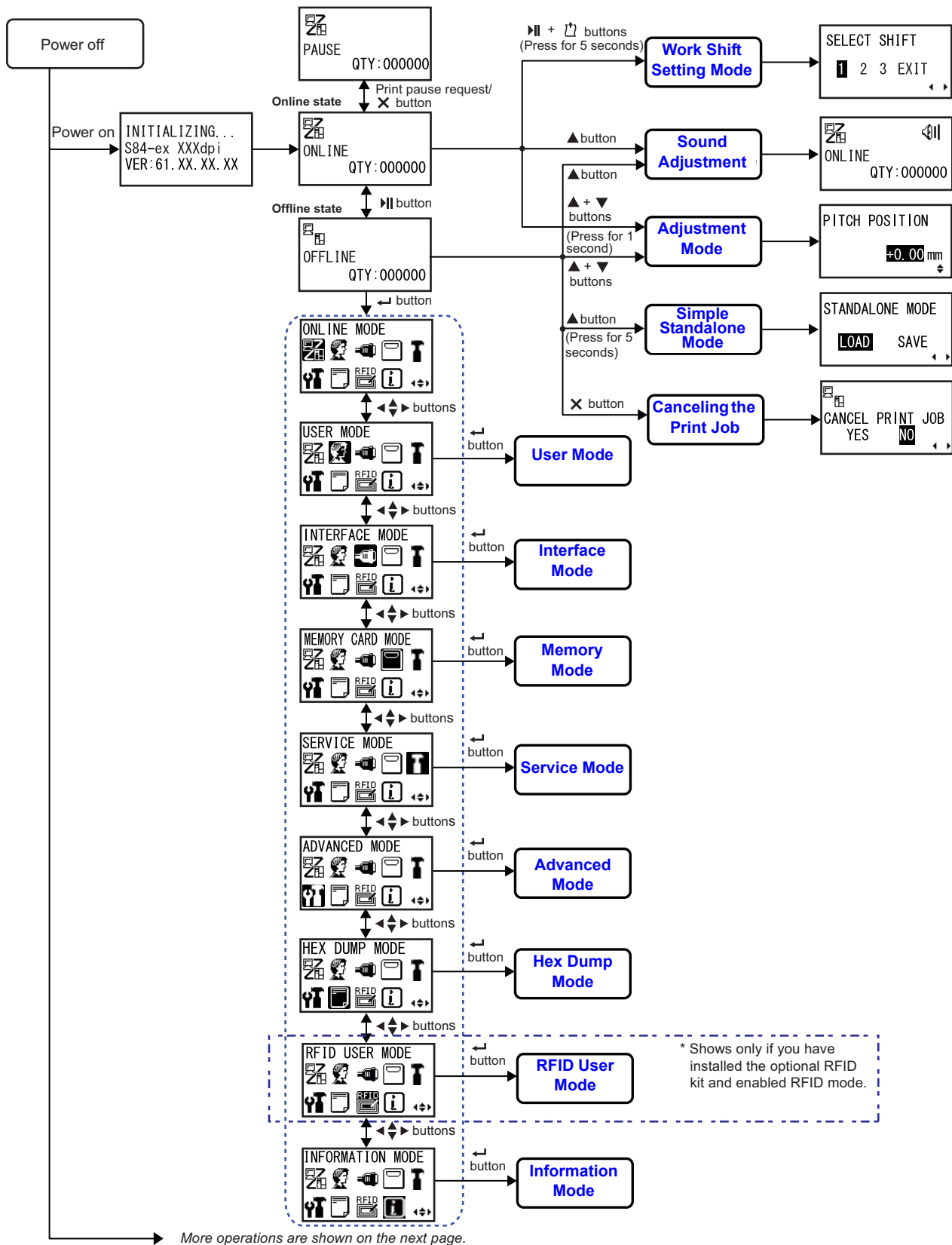
4.2 Operating Modes

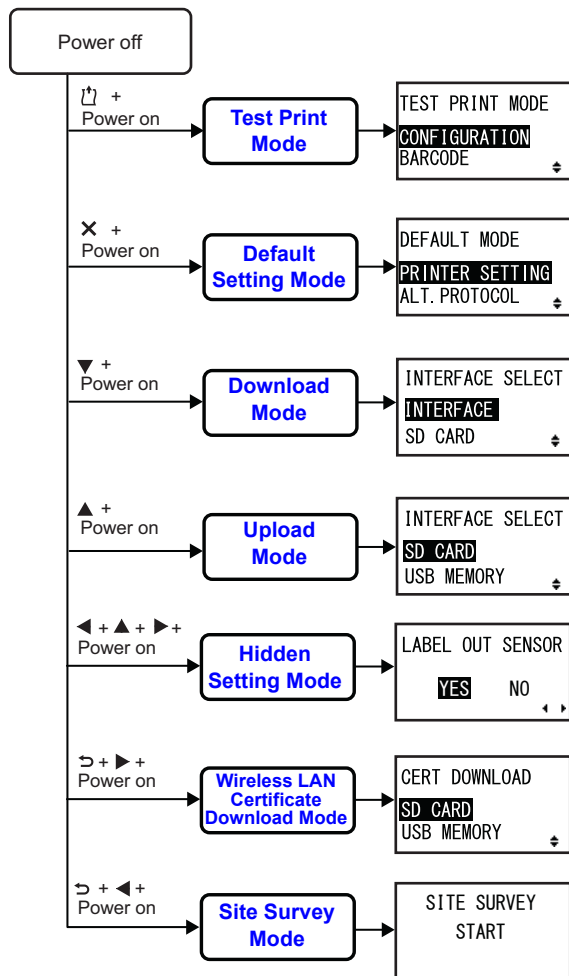
The printer contains a variety of the following operating modes:

Click on the blue links below to go directly to the details of the selected operating mode.

- [Online Mode/Pause Mode/Offline Mode](#)
- [Adjusting the Display Brightness](#)
- [Adjusting the Buzzer Volume](#)
- [Canceling the Print Job](#)
- [Adjustment Mode](#)
- [Work Shift Setting Mode](#)
- [Simple Standalone Mode](#)
- [Setting Mode Menu:](#)
 - [User Mode](#)
 - [Interface Mode](#)
 - [Memory Mode](#)
 - [Service Mode](#)
 - [Advanced Mode](#)
 - [Hex Dump Mode](#)
 - [RFID User Mode](#)
 - [Information Mode](#)
- [Test Print Mode](#)
- [Default Setting Mode](#)
- [Download Mode](#)
- [Upload Mode](#)
- [Hidden Setting Mode](#)
- [Wireless LAN Certificate Download Mode](#)
- [Site Survey Mode](#)

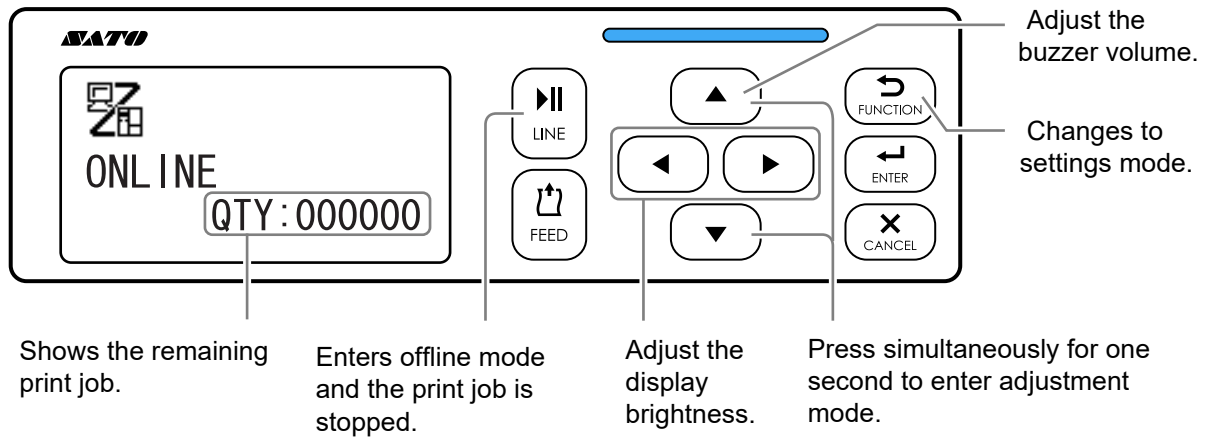
The flow chart provides a clear summary of all the modes and their access methods.



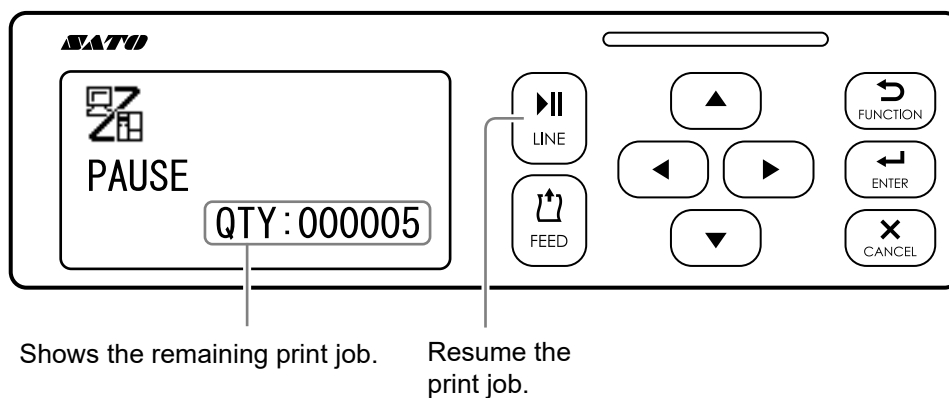


4.2.1 Online Mode/Pause Mode/Offline Mode

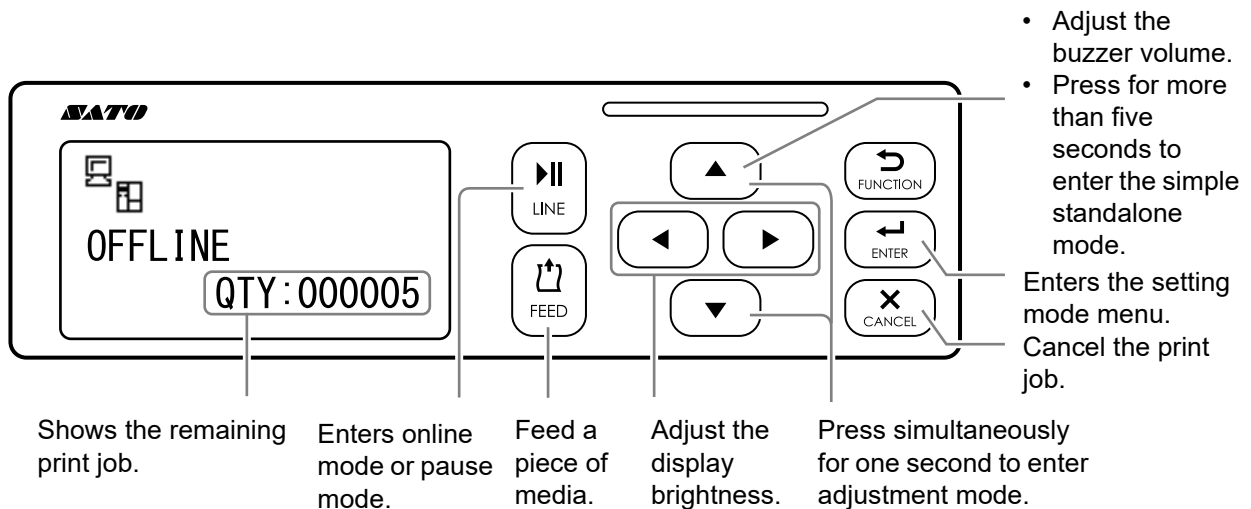
In online mode, the printer is ready to receive print data from the host computer or other connected devices and start the print job.



When you send a pause command during printing, the printer stops the print job and enters pause mode.

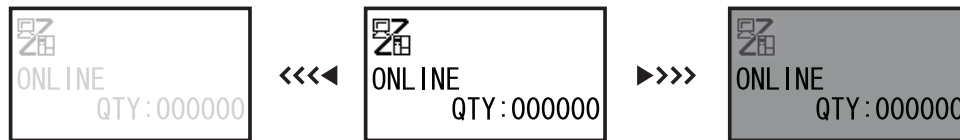


In offline mode, you can cancel the print job, feed the media or enter the setting mode menu.



4.2.2 Adjusting the Display Brightness

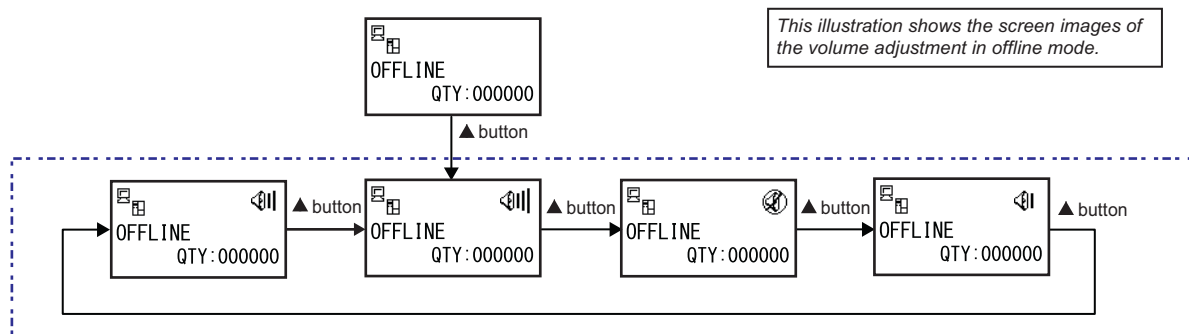
In normal mode (online or offline), press the ◀/▶ buttons repeatedly to adjust the display brightness.



You can adjust the brightness in thirty-two steps (sixteen left and sixteen right). The brightness changes one step for every press of the ◀ button or ▶ button.

4.2.3 Adjusting the Buzzer Volume

In normal mode (online or offline), press the ▲ button repeatedly to adjust the volume of the buzzer.

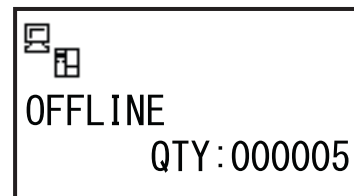


- 1** When the printer is in online or offline mode, press the ▲ button to show the current buzzer volume of the printer.
The buzzer volume icon is shown on the top right corner of the screen.
- 2** Pressing the ▲ button will cycle through the volume level and the buzzer will beep according to the volume.

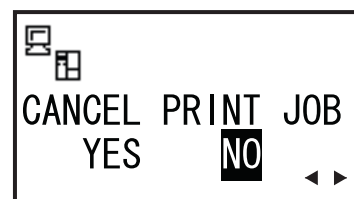
4.2.4 Canceling the Print Job

Cancel the print job according to the following procedure:

- 1 Press the **▶|| LINE** button to change the printer to offline mode.



- 2 Press the **✕ CANCEL** button.
CANCEL PRINT JOB shows to confirm the cancelation of the print job.



- 3 Press the **◀/▶** buttons to select YES and press the **↵ ENTER** button to confirm.
CURRENT and ALL show on the screen.

Note

- Be sure you want to cancel the print job before selecting YES. The job cannot be recovered and it has to be transmitted to the printer again.
- Press the **↶ FUNCTION** button or **✕ CANCEL** button to exit the CANCEL PRINT JOB mode without clearing the print data.

- 4 Press the **◀/▶** buttons to select CURRENT or ALL.
 - CURRENT: Cancel the current print job.
 - ALL: Cancel all the print jobs in printer's memory.

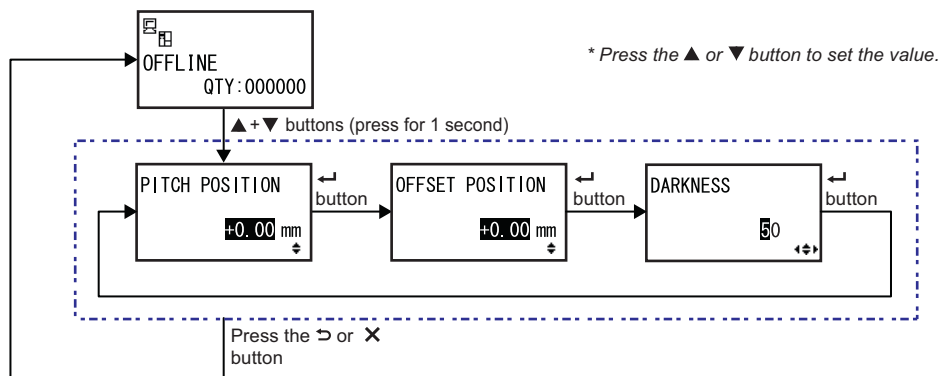


- 5 Press the **↵ ENTER** button to confirm.
CANCEL PRINT JOB COMPLETED shows and three beeps will sound. The printer will then enter offline mode. The selected print jobs will be cleared from memory.



4.2.5 Adjustment Mode

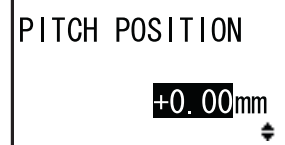
The printer has a quick access to the adjustment mode for setting the print position, stop position and print darkness. These adjustments are in conjunction with the configuration adjustments performed in the user mode menu.



- 1 When the printer is in online or offline mode, press the ▲ and ▼ buttons for one second to enter the adjustment mode. PITCH POSITION shows on the screen.
- 2 Press the ▲/▼ buttons to set the desired value and press the ⏏ **ENTER** button to save the setting and proceed to the next adjustment screen.

PITCH POSITION

Offset the print position in the vertical direction.
Set the offset value with '+' to move the print position opposite the feed direction and value with '-' to move the print position in the feed direction.
The setting value is adjustable by 0.25 mm (0.01") regardless of the print resolution.
The setting range is from -3.75 mm (-0.15") to +3.75 mm (+0.15").



OFFSET POSITON

Correct the offset position.
Offset position refers to the dispense stop position.
Set the offset value with '+' to move the stop position opposite the feed direction and value with '-' to move the stop position in the feed direction.
The setting value is adjustable by 0.25 mm (0.01") regardless of the print resolution.
The setting range is from -3.75 mm (-0.15") to +3.75 mm (+0.15").



DARKNESS	
Fine tune the print darkness. The setting range is from 00 to 99. 00 is the lightest and 99 is the darkest.	

- 3** After adjustment, press the **↵ FUNCTION** button or **✕ CANCEL** button to exit the adjustment mode. The printer enters offline mode.

Note

Pressing the **↵ FUNCTION** button or **✕ CANCEL** button before pressing the **↵ ENTER** button will not save the adjustment.

- 4** Perform a test print after completing the adjustments to make sure that the settings are correct.

Refer to [Section 4.2.17 Test Print Mode](#) for details.

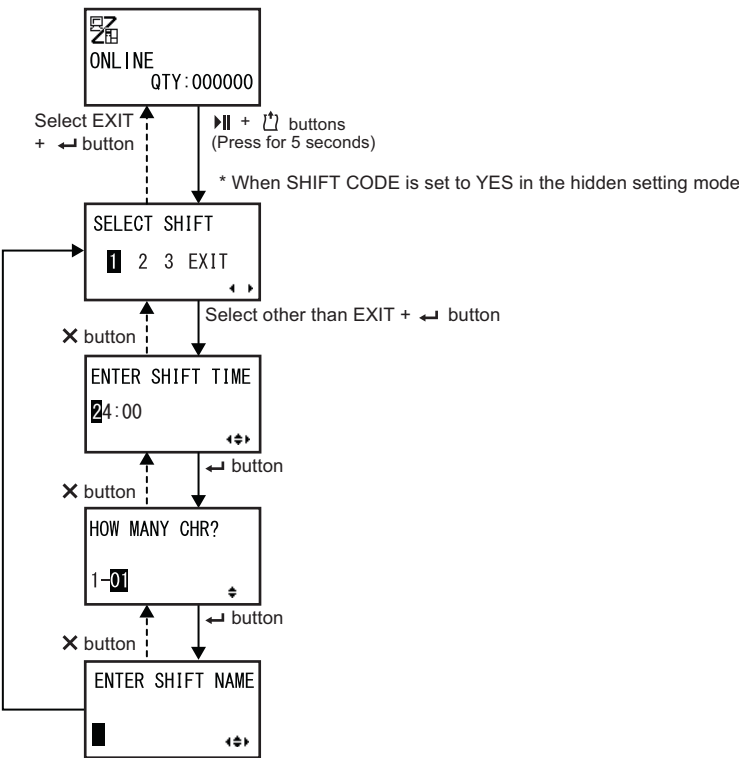
4.2.6 Work Shift Setting Mode

This mode allows for specific production shift information to be printed on a label when used with the printer SBPL command.

The flowchart shows the sequence of the setting screens for the work shift mode. The table describes each setting screen in detail.

Note

- This mode is enabled only if SHIFT CODE is set to YES in the hidden setting mode.
- You can set up to three shifts depending on the number of work shifts required in the field. For example, if two shifts are required, set work shift number 1 and 2.

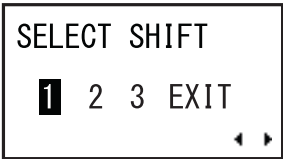


SELECT SHIFT

Select the work shift number to store the work shift setting.
You can select the work shift number from 1 to 3.

Note

If you select EXIT and press the **ENTER** button, the printer returns to the online screen.



ENTER SHIFT TIME

Set the printer start time in 24-hour format.

Press the ◀/▶ buttons to shift the cursor and press the ▲/▼ buttons to change the value.

Press the ⬅ **ENTER** button to save the value and proceed to the next setting screen.

ENTER SHIFT TIME
24:00
◀▶

HOW MANY CHR?

Set the character size of the SHIFT NAME by specifying the number of characters.

Select the number of characters using the ▲/▼ buttons and then press the ⬅ **ENTER** button.

The setting range is from 01 to 16.

HOW MANY CHR?
1-01
⬆

ENTER SHIFT NAME

Specify a name for the work shift.

Available characters are A to Z, space and 0 to 9.

The number of characters you can enter depends on the character size set in the HOW MANY CHR? screen.

Press the ◀/▶ buttons to shift the cursor and press the ▲/▼ buttons to set the character.

Press the ⬅ **ENTER** button to save the work shift name.

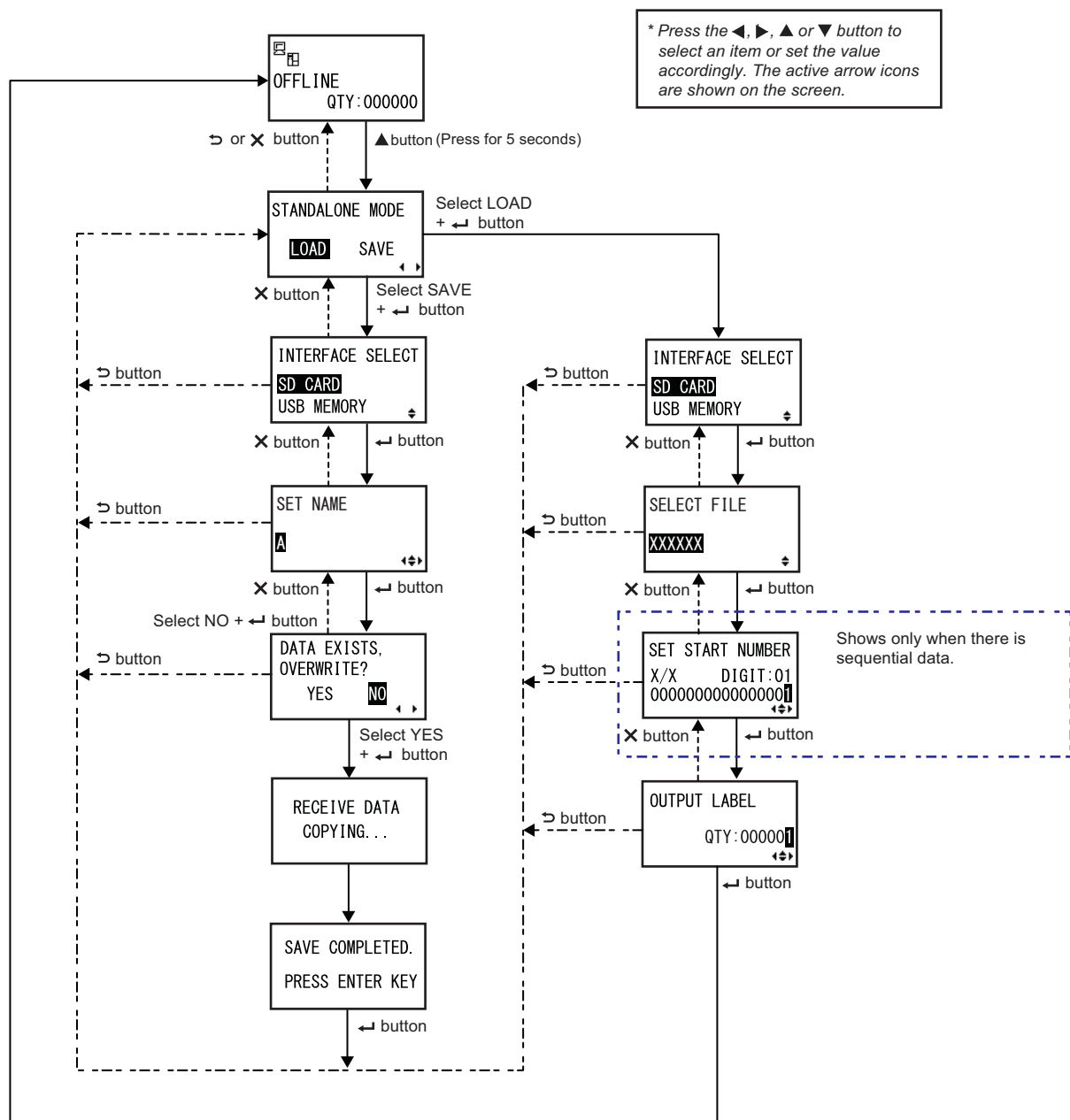
ENTER SHIFT NAME
[] ▶

4.2.7 Simple Standalone Mode

This mode allows the printer to function independently from a host computer once a fixed format has been sent and saved to the SD card or USB memory.

The data may be saved to the SD card or USB memory while in the print buffer, then recalled later with a new print quantity specified. The SD card or USB memory can hold a maximum of ninety nine formats. However, one file number will only hold a single format; new format will overwrite the existing saved format. The host computer must be reconnected to the printer to overwrite an existing format.

The flowchart shows the sequence of the setting screens for the simple standalone mode. The table describes each setting screen in detail.



⚠ CAUTION

Be sure to perform a virus check for the USB memory or SD card before connecting it to the printer. SATO Corporation shall not be held responsible for a malfunction of the printer caused by a virus infection through the USB memory or SD card.

Note

It is also possible to register, recall and print a SBPL command file that is prepared in advance, as a simple standalone data, and save it to the SD card or USB memory.

Prepare the data according to the followings:

- There should be no command errors in the SBPL command.
- The file name should be equal or less than 16 characters, and the extension should be "SSA". Refer to below descriptions on **SET NAME** screen for usable characters.
- The data should be saved to "(SD card/USB memory route)\PR61\DATA" folder.

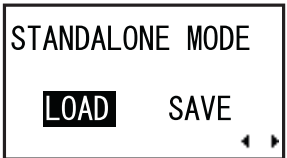
STANDALONE MODE

Select the following options using the ◀/▶ buttons and then press the ⏏ ENTER button.

- **LOAD**: Read and print the file.
- **SAVE**: Save the received print data to a file.

Note

Three beeps will sound if you select SAVE and press the ⏏ ENTER button when there is no received data.



INTERFACE SELECT

Select the memory type using the ▲/▼ buttons and then press the ⏏ ENTER button.

Note

- When LOAD is selected in previous screen, three beeps will sound if the connected memory has no data to load, or the selected memory is not connected.
- When SAVE is selected in previous screen, three beeps will sound if the number of registered items is 99, or the selected memory is not connected.



SET NAME

Specify a name for the received print data.
 Available characters are A to Z, a to z, 0 to 9 and !#\$%&'()+-.,;=@[]^_`{|}~.
 When <space> is entered, the characters after the <space> become invalid.
 Up to 16 characters can be entered, and the default value is "A".
 Press the ◀/▶ buttons to shift the cursor and press the ▲/▼ buttons to set the character. Then press the ↵ **ENTER** button to save the file name.

SET NAME

A

**DATA EXISTS, OVERWRITE?**

This screen confirms that you are overwriting a file if you have selected to save to an existing file name.

Select the following options using the ◀/▶ buttons and then press the ↵ **ENTER** button.

- **YES**: Overwrite the existing file.
- **NO**: Cancel the overwrite and return to the SET NAME screen.

Note

Make sure that you do not need the existing file before overwriting it.

DATA EXISTS,
OVERWRITE?

YES

NO

**RECEIVE DATA COPYING. . .**

This screen shows that the received data is being copied.
 SAVE COMPLETED shows when the received data is fully copied.

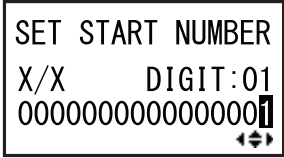
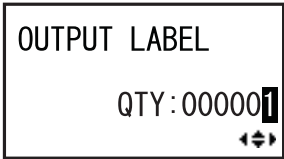
Note

Three beeps will sound if the printer fails to copy the received data. The printer returns to the STANDALONE MODE screen.

RECEIVE DATA
COPYING. . .**SAVE COMPLETED.**

This screen shows when the received data is saved to a specified file.
 Press the ↵ **ENTER** button to return to the STANDALONE MODE screen.

SAVE COMPLETED.
PRESS ENTER KEY

SELECT FILE	
Select the file name of the print data using the ▲/▼ buttons and then press the ↵ ENTER button. The “XXXXXX” in the screen shows the file name of the print data. Only existing file names in the selected interface are displayed. When sequential data are included in the file, the printer goes to the SET START NUMBER screen. When sequential data are not included in the file, the printer goes to the OUTPUT LABEL screen.	
SET START NUMBER	
This is the edit screen of the sequential data included in the read data. Move the cursor using the ◀/▶ buttons, change the value using the ▲/▼ buttons and then press the ↵ ENTER button. The “X/X” in the screen shows the currently edited sequential data number and total sequential data number. DIGIT is the digit number of the selected cursor. The screen may be decimal or hexadecimal according to the read data. The maximum number of DIGIT is 99. Note Shows only when there is sequential data.	
OUTPUT LABEL	
This screen allows you to specify the print number. Move the cursor using the ◀/▶ buttons, change the value using the ▲/▼ buttons and then press the ↵ ENTER button.	

4.2.8 Setting Mode Menu

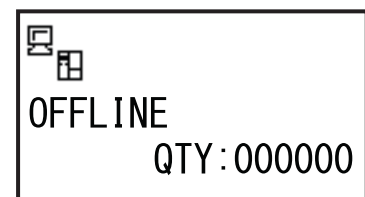
In the settings mode menu, the setting modes are shown as follows:

Menu	Description
 Online mode	Returns to online mode.
 User mode	Access the settings related to the basic user configurations.
 Interface mode	Access the settings related to the interfaces.
 Memory mode	Access the settings related to the memory.
 Service mode	Access the settings related to the media sensor adjustment and various functions activation.
 Advanced mode	Access the settings related to the advanced printer configurations.
 Hex dump mode	Access and print the hex dump for troubleshooting.
 RFID user mode	Access the settings related to the optional RFID module. Shows only if you have installed the optional RFID kit and enabled the RFID mode.
 Information mode	Access the information of this printer.

Select the setting mode according to the following procedure:

- 1 Press the **▶|| LINE** button to change the printer to offline mode.

The printer changes to offline mode.



- 2 Press the **↵ ENTER** button.
The printer changes to the setting mode menu.

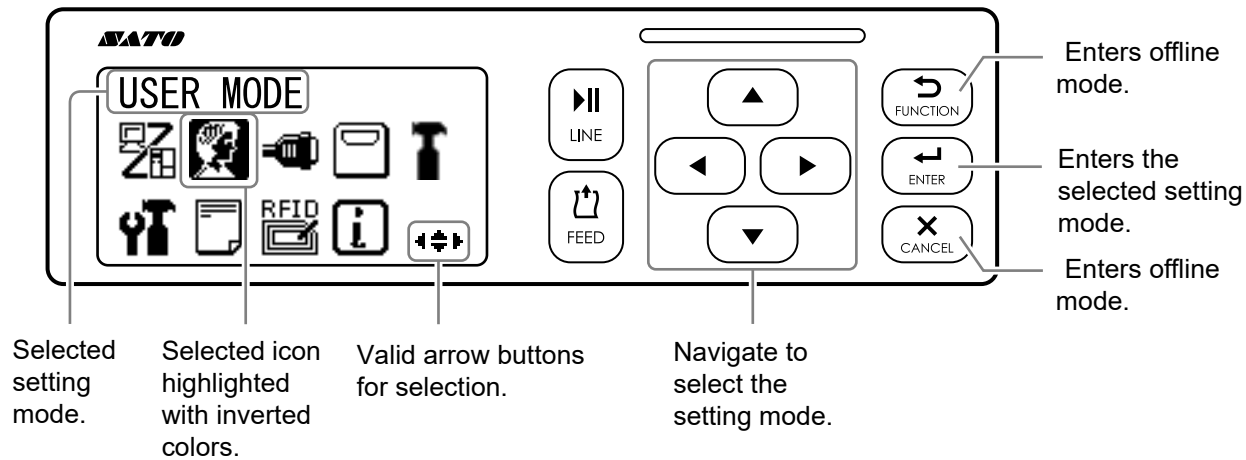
- 3 Select the setting mode using the **▲/▼/◀/▶** buttons.

The selected setting mode shows on the screen and the icon is highlighted by inverting its colors.



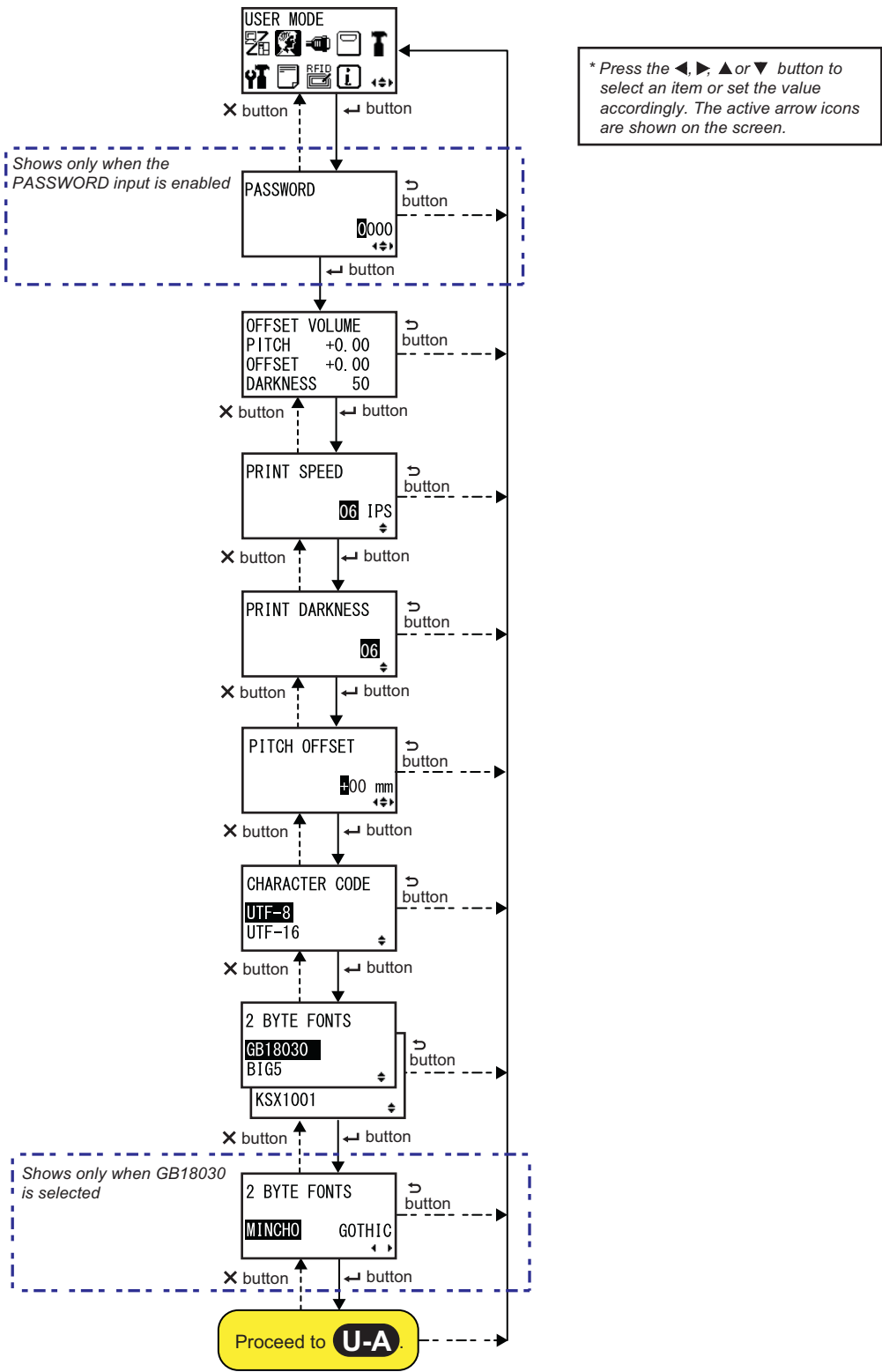
- 4 Press the **↵ ENTER** button to enter the selected mode.

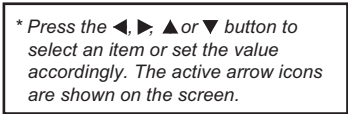
The functions of the buttons in the setting mode menu are shown as below.



4.2.9 User Mode

The flowchart shows the sequence of the setting screens for the user mode. The table describes each setting screen in detail.





OFFSET VOLUME

The setting values of the adjustment mode are shown.

- **PITCH:** Shows the print position offset value.
- **OFFSET:** Shows the stop position offset value.
- **DARKNESS:** Shows the darkness setting value.

You can change these values in **Adjustment Mode** and **Test Print Mode**.

OFFSET VOLUME	
PITCH	+0.00
OFFSET	+0.00
DARKNESS	50

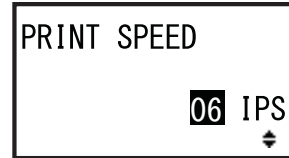
PRINT SPEED

The setting range varies depending on the model.

- S84-ex (203 dpi): 4 to 16 ips (inches/sec)
- S86-ex (203 dpi): 4 to 14 ips (inches/sec)
- S84-ex (305 dpi): 4 to 14 ips (inches/sec)
- S86-ex (305 dpi): 4 to 12 ips (inches/sec)
- S84-ex (609 dpi): 2 to 6 ips (inches/sec)

Note

Setting the print speed to a level that is too fast may affect the print quality.

**PRINT DARKNESS**

Specify the print darkness from ten steps.

The setting range is from 1 to 10. 1 is the lightest and 10 is the darkest.

**PITCH OFFSET**

This setting adjusts the pitch offset value.

The media pitch is the distance between the leading edge (the edge that comes out of the printer first) of the media and the leading edge of the next media. Once the position has been set, it can be fine adjusted using the PITCH POSITION in adjustment mode.

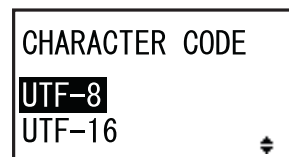
The setting range is from -49 mm (-1.9") to +49 mm (+1.9") and is adjustable by 1 mm (0.04") steps.

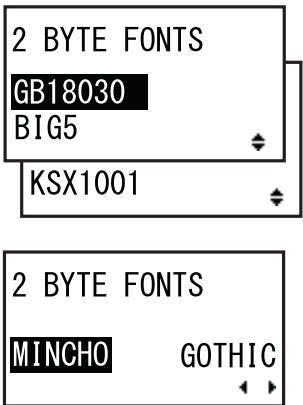
Set the offset value with '+' to move the print position opposite the feed direction and value with '-' to move the print position in the feed direction.

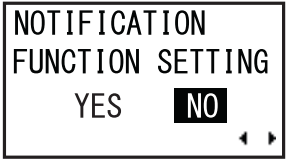
**CHARACTER CODE**

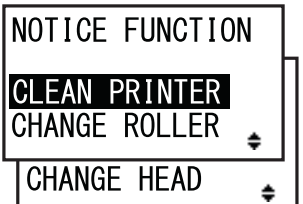
Set the character code to be used.

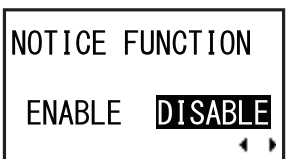
- **UTF-8:** Use UTF-8 for character encoding.
- **UTF-16:** Use UTF-16 for character encoding.



2 BYTE FONTS	
Set the kanji code to be used. • GB18030: Set for use with simplified Chinese. • BIG5: Set for use with traditional Chinese. • KSX1001: Set for use with Korean. The following kanji codes are available if GB18030 is selected: • MINCHO: Print the kanji code using MINCHO. • GOTHIC: Print the kanji code using GOTHIC.	 The first screenshot shows the '2 BYTE FONTS' menu with 'GB18030' selected. The second screenshot shows the same menu with 'MINCHO' and 'GOTHIC' options.

NOTIFICATION FUNCTION SETTING	
Select whether or not to set the notification function. • YES: Set the notification function. • NO: Do not set the notification function. The screen returns to user mode. Note For details on the media motion when the set notification interval has reached, refer to Section 8.6 Notification Function.	 The screenshot shows the 'NOTIFICATION FUNCTION SETTING' menu with 'NO' selected.

NOTICE FUNCTION (SELECT)	
Select the items for notification. • CLEAN PRINTER: Notify when to perform cleaning of the printer. • CHANGE ROLLER: Notify when to perform replacement of the platen roller. • CHANGE HEAD: Notify when to perform replacement of the print head.	 The screenshot shows the 'NOTICE FUNCTION' menu with 'CLEAN PRINTER' selected.

NOTICE FUNCTION (ENABLE/DISABLE)	
Enable or disable the notification for the item selected in the above NOTICE FUNCTION. • ENABLE: Enable the notification function. • DISABLE: Disable the notification function.	 The screenshot shows the 'NOTICE FUNCTION' menu with 'DISABLE' selected.

CLEAN PRINTER

Set the notification distance for cleaning the printer.
The setting range is from 000 to 999 m.

Note

The notification function will be disabled if the distance is set to 0.

CLEAN PRINTER
NOTICE DISTANCE
000 m
◀ ▶

CHANGE ROLLER

Set the notification distance for changing the platen roller.
The setting range is from 000 to 150 km.

Note

The notification function will be disabled if the distance is set to 0.

CHANGE ROLLER
NOTICE DISTANCE
000 km
◀ ▶

CHANGE HEAD

Set the notification distance for changing the print head.
The setting range is from 000 to 150 km.

Note

The notification function will be disabled if the distance is set to 0.

CHANGE HEAD
NOTICE DISTANCE
000 km
◀ ▶

SETTING FINISH?

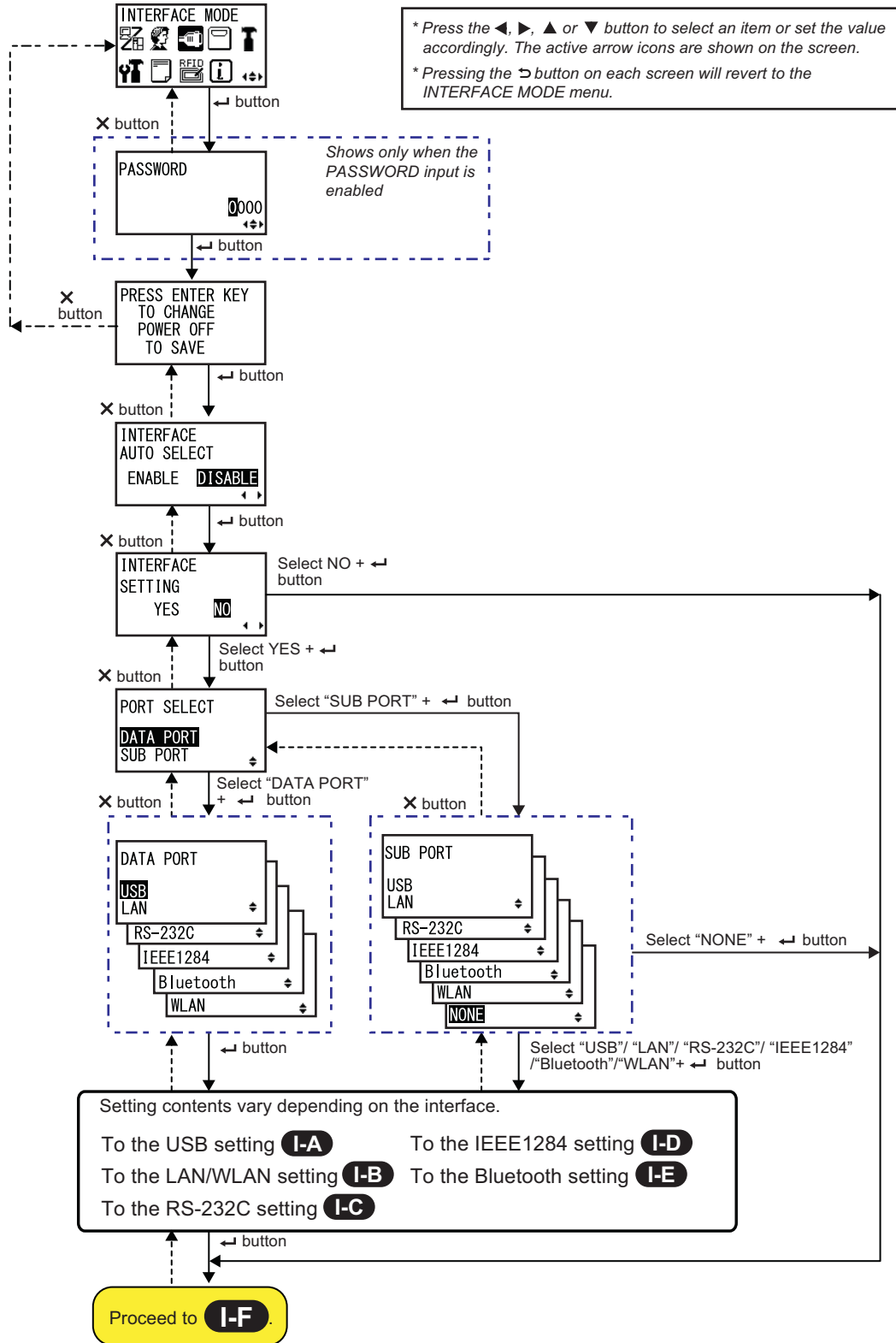
Confirm to complete the setting.

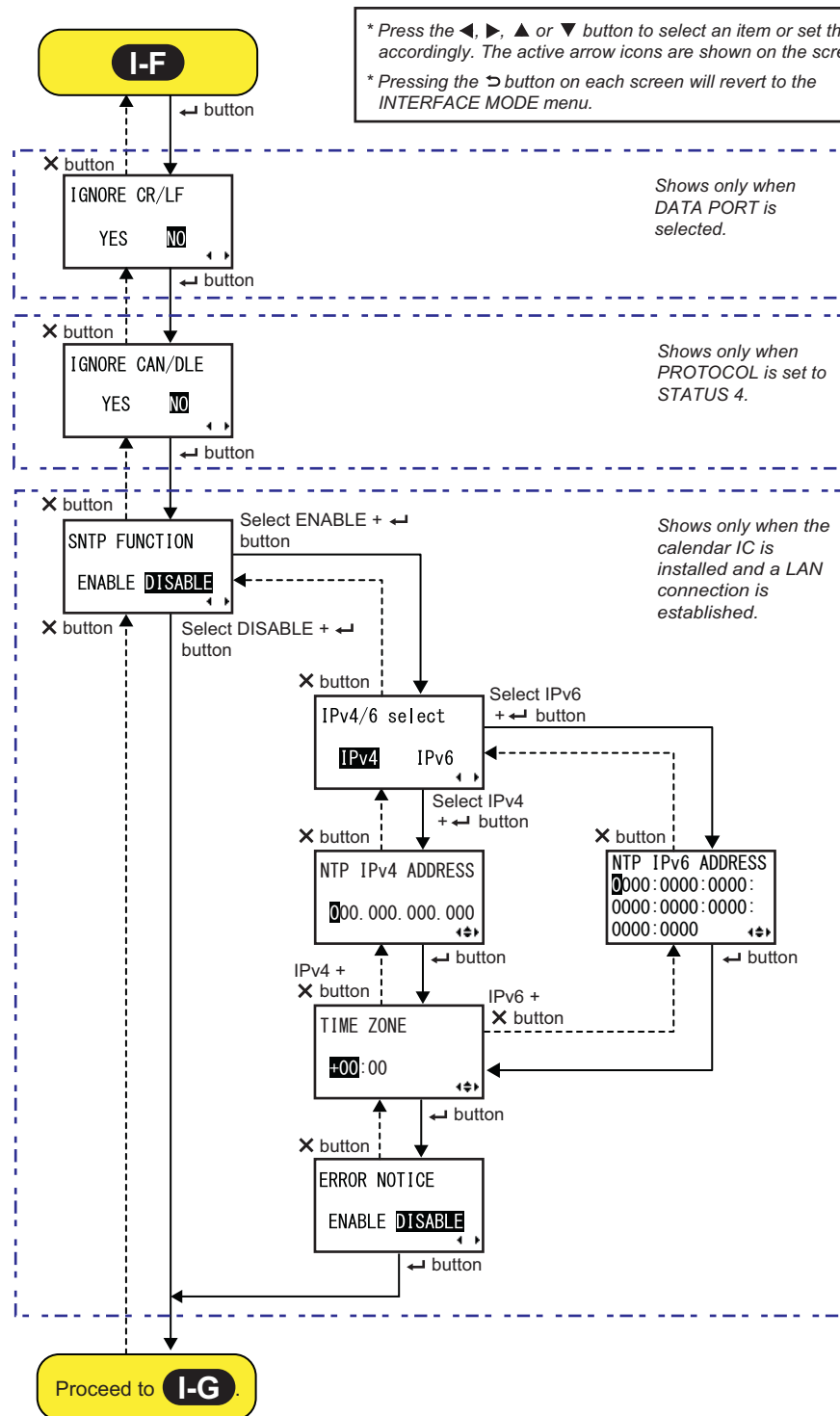
- **YES:** Returns to the user mode screen.
- **NO:** Returns to the NOTICE FUNCTION screen to select an item.

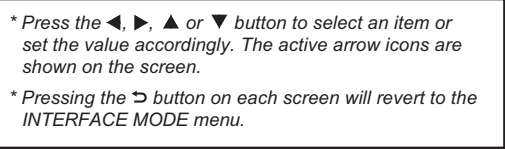
SETTING FINISH?
YES NO
◀ ▶

4.2.10 Interface Mode

The flowchart shows the sequence of the setting screens for the interface mode. The table describes each setting screen in detail.

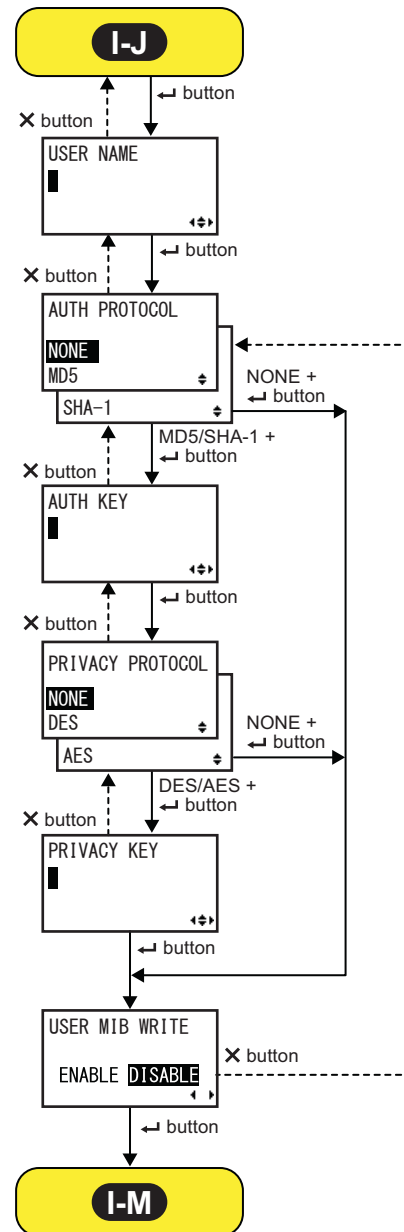
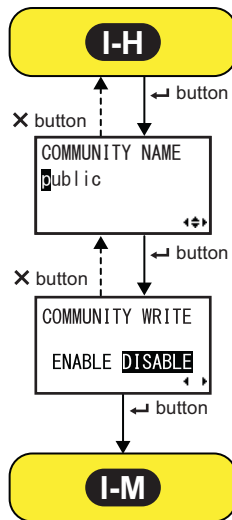


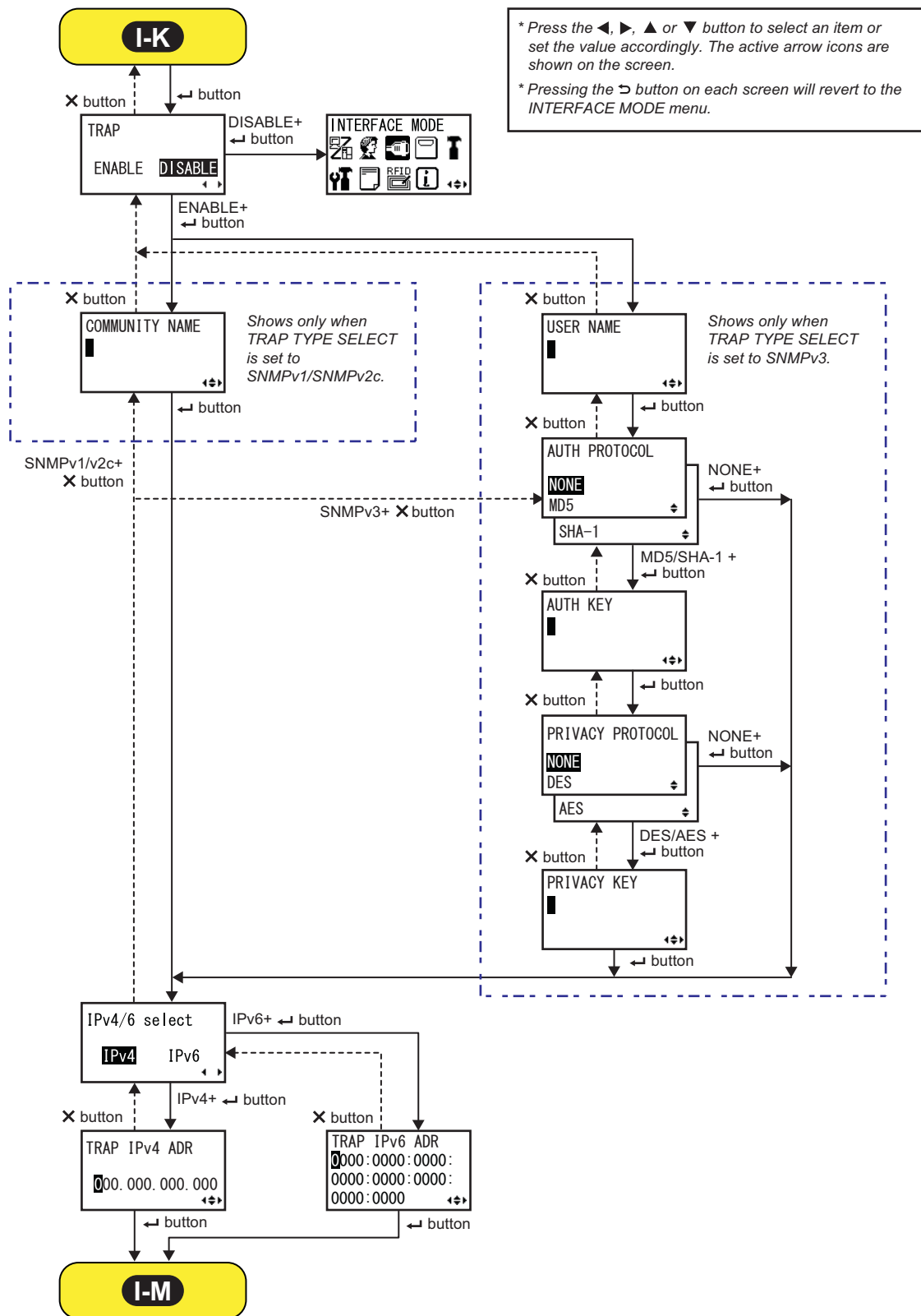




* Press the ◀, ▶, ▲ or ▼ button to select an item or set the value accordingly. The active arrow icons are shown on the screen.

* Pressing the ⏪ button on each screen will revert to the INTERFACE MODE menu.





PRESS ENTER KEY

This screen reminds the user to press the **↵ ENTER** button to change or power off the printer to save the setting.

PRESS ENTER KEY
TO CHANGE
POWER OFF
TO SAVE

INTERFACE AUTO SELECT

Enable or disable the interface auto detection.

- **ENABLE**: Automatically select the connected interface.
- **DISABLE**: The interface is selected based on the interface setting.

Note

The setting will be effective only if you power on the printer again.

INTERFACE
AUTO SELECT
ENABLE **DISABLE**

INTERFACE SETTING

Set whether or not to perform the interface settings.

- **YES**: Enter the PORT SELECT screen.
- **NO**: Enter the IGNORE CR/LF screen.

INTERFACE
SETTING
YES **NO**

PORT SELECT

Select the port used for the connected interface.

- **DATA PORT**: For receiving various SBPL commands and executing print operations.
- **SUB PORT**: For monitoring the printer status and connecting to external devices.

PORT SELECT
DATA PORT
SUB PORT

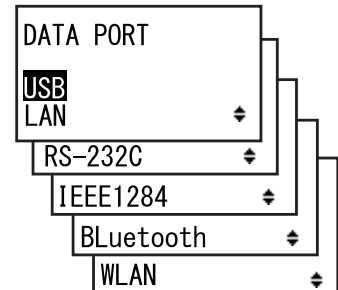
DATA PORT

Select the connected interface for use with the data port.
The options are as follows:

- **USB**
- **LAN**
- **RS-232C**
- **IEEE1284**
- **Bluetooth**
- **WLAN**

Note

- Bluetooth shows even if a Bluetooth adapter is not connected.
- WLAN shows only if a WLAN unit is installed.
- You cannot select the interface that has already been set for the SUB PORT.
- The setting will be effective only if you power on the printer again.

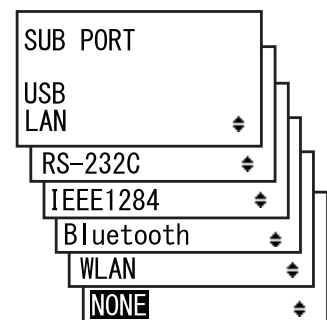
**SUB PORT**

Select the connected interface for use with the data port.
The options are as follows:

- **USB**
- **LAN**
- **RS-232C**
- **IEEE1284**
- **Bluetooth**
- **WLAN**
- **NONE**

Note

- Bluetooth shows even if a Bluetooth adapter is not connected.
- WLAN shows only if a WLAN unit is installed.
- You cannot select the interface that has already been set for the DATA PORT.
- The setting will be effective only if you power on the printer again.

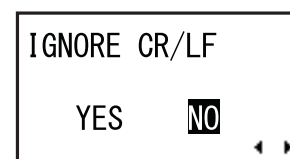
**IGNORE CR/LF**

Ignore or acknowledge the CR/LF code of the received data.

- **YES**: Ignore the CR/LF code.
- **NO**: Do not ignore the CR/LF code.

Note

Shows only if the DATA PORT is selected.



IGNORE CAN/DLE

Ignore or acknowledge the CAN/DLE code of the received data.

- **YES:** Ignore the CAN/DLE code.
- **NO:** Do not ignore the CAN/DLE code.

Note

Shows only if PROTOCOL is set to STATUS4.

IGNORE CAN/DLE

YES

NO

SNTP FUNCTION

Enable or disable the SNTP function.

- **ENABLE:** Perform the time correction of the calendar IC.
- **DISABLE:** Do not perform the time correction of the calendar IC.

Note

Shows only if the calendar IC is installed and the LAN interface is selected.

SNTP FUNCTION

ENABLE

DISABLE

IPv4/6 select

Select IP address type of SNTP.

- **IPv4**
- **IPv6**

Note

Shows only if the SNTP function is enabled.

IPv4/6 select

IPv4

IPv6

NTP IPv4 ADDRESS

Set the IPv4 address for NTP server.

The setting range is from 0.0.0.0 to 255.255.255.255.

Note

Shows only if the SNTP function is enabled.

NTP IPv4 ADDRESS

000.000.000.000

NTP IPv6 ADDRESS

Set the IPv6 address for NTP server.

The setting range is from 0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000 to FFFF:FFFF:FFFF:FFFF:FFFF:FFFF:FFFF:FFFF.

Note

Shows only if the SNTP function is enabled.

NTP IPv6 ADDRESS
0000:0000:0000:
0000:0000:0000:
0000:0000

TIME ZONE

Set the time zone.

The setting range is from -12:45 to +14:45.

Note

Shows only if the SNTP function is enabled.

TIME ZONE
+00:00

ERROR NOTICE

Set whether or not to notify the SNTP function error.

- **ENABLE:** Shows an error notice when failing to correct the time.
- **DISABLE:** Does not show an error notice when failing to correct the time.

Note

Shows only if the SNTP function is enabled.

ERROR NOTICE
ENABLE **DISABLE**

SNMP FUNCTION

Set the SNMP function.

- **ENABLE:** Enables the SNMP function and goes to “SNMP setting select” screen.
- **DISABLE:** Disables the SNMP function and goes to “Interface select screen.

Note

Shows only if the LAN interface is selected.

SNMP FUNCTION
ENABLE **DISABLE**

SNMP SET SELECT

Select SNMP settings.

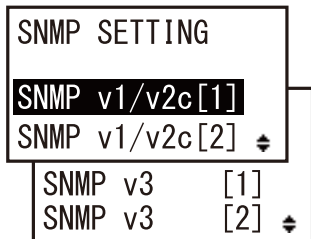
- **SNMP SETTING**: Sets the SNMP settings. When select it, goes to “SNMP setting” screen.
- **SNMP TRAP SET**: Selects the trap number of SNMP. When select it, goes to “SNMP trap setting” screen.



SNMP SETTING

Select community and authentication of SNMP.

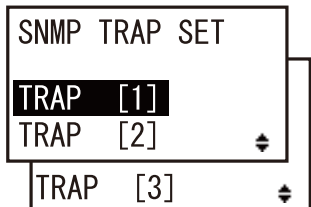
- **SNMPv1/v2c [1]**: Goes to “Community name” screen.
- **SNMPv1/v2c [2]**: Goes to “Community 2 name” screen.
- **SNMPv3 [1]**: Goes to “Authentication 1 user name” screen.
- **SNMPv3 [2]**: Goes to “Authentication 2 user name” screen.



SNMP TRAP SET

Select the trap number of SNMP from 1 to 3.

- **TRAP [1]**
- **TRAP [2]**
- **TRAP [3]**



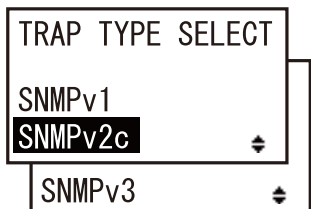
TRAP TYPE SELECT

Select SNMP trap type.

- **SNMPv1**
- **SNMPv2c**
- **SNMPv3**

Note

The setting will be effective only if you power on the printer again.



COMMUNITY NAME

Input SNMP community name.

- When SNMPv1/v2c [1] is selected the default is “public”.
- When SNMPv1/v2c [2] is selected the default is “ ” (none).

Note

- Up to 32 alphanumeric characters and symbols (from 20H to 7EH) can be set.
- Specify “ ” to input a space.
- The setting will be effective only if you power on the printer again.

COMMUNITY NAME

public

Navigation arrows: left, right, enter, back

COMMUNITY WRITE

Enable or disable writing to MIB when accessing to community.

- **ENABLE**: Allows writing to MIB.
- **DISABLE**: Does not allow writing to MIB.

Note

Writing possible OID are sysContact, sysName, and sysLocation.

COMMUNITY WRITE

ENABLE **DISABLE**

Navigation arrows: left, right, enter, back

USER NAME

Input SNMP authentication user name.

Press the ◀/▶ buttons to shift the cursor and press the ▲/▼ buttons to change the value.

Press the ↵ **ENTER** button to save the value and proceed to the next setting screen.

Note

- Up to 32 alphanumeric characters and symbols (from 20H to 7EH) can be set.
- Specify “ ” to input a space.
- The setting will be effective only if you power on the printer again.

USER NAME

Navigation arrows: left, right, enter, back

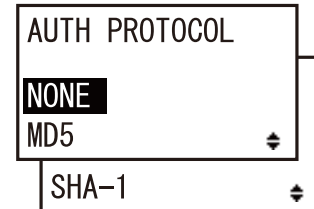
AUTH PROTOCOL

Select SNMP authentication protocol.
The options are as follows:

- **NONE**
- **MD5**
- **SHA-1**

Note

The setting will be effective only if you power on the printer again.



AUTH KEY

Input SNMP authentication key.
Input more than 8 characters for the authentication name.
Press the ◀/▶ buttons to shift the cursor and press the ▲/▼ buttons to change the value.
Press the ⬅ **ENTER** button to save the value and proceed to the next setting screen.

Note

- When the authentication name is less than 8 characters, there will be buzzer sounds and it will not move to the next screen.
- Up to 32 alphanumeric characters and symbols (from 20H to 7EH) can be set.
- Specify " " to input a space.
- The setting will be effective only if you power on the printer again.



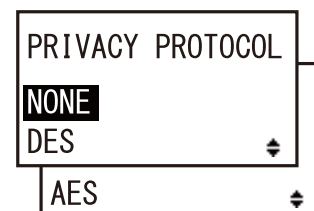
PRIVACY PROTOCOL

Select SNMP privacy protocol.
The options are as follows:

- **NONE**
- **DES**
- **AES**

Note

The setting will be effective only if you power on the printer again.



PRIVACY KEY

Input SNMP privacy key.
Input more than 8 characters for the authentication name.
Press the ◀/▶ buttons to shift the cursor and press the ▲/▼ buttons to change the value.
Press the ↵ **ENTER** button to save the value and proceed to the next setting screen.

Note

- When the authentication name is less than 8 characters, there will be buzzer sounds and it will not move to the next screen.
- Up to 32 alphanumeric characters and symbols (from 20H to 7EH) can be set.
- Specify “_” to input a space.
- The setting will be effective only if you power on the printer again.



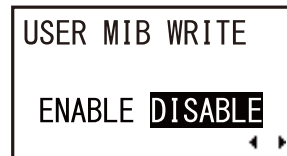
USER MIB WRITE

Enable or disable writing to MIB at authentication access.

- **ENABLE**: Allows writing to MIB.
- **DISABLE**: Does not allow writing to MIB.

Note

Writing possible OID are sysContact, sysName, and sysLocation.



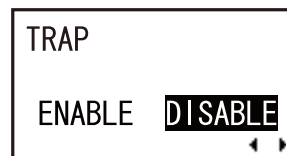
TRAP

Set the SNMP trap.

- **ENABLE**: Allows the SNMP trap.
- **DISABLE**: Does not allow the SNMP trap.

Note

The setting will be effective only if you power on the printer again.



COMMUNITY NAME

Input SNMP trap community name.

Press the ◀/▶ buttons to shift the cursor and press the ▲/▼ buttons to change the value.

Press the ⬅ **ENTER** button to save the value and proceed to the next setting screen.

Note

- When the authentication name is less than 8 characters, there will be buzzer sounds and it will not move to the next screen.
- Up to 32 alphanumeric characters and symbols (from 20H to 7EH) can be set.
- Specify " " to input a space.
- The setting will be effective only if you power on the printer again.

USER NAME

Input SNMP trap authentication user name.

Press the ◀/▶ buttons to shift the cursor and press the ▲/▼ buttons to change the value.

Press the ⬅ **ENTER** button to save the value and proceed to the next setting screen.

Note

- Up to 32 alphanumeric characters and symbols (from 20H to 7EH) can be set.
- Specify " " to input a space.
- The setting will be effective only if you power on the printer again.

AUTH PROTOCOL

Select SNMP trap authentication protocol.
The options are as follows:

- **NONE**
- **MD5**
- **SHA-1**

Note

The setting will be effective only if you power on the printer again.

AUTH KEY

Input SNMP trap authentication key.
Input more than 8 characters for the authentication name.
Press the ◀/▶ buttons to shift the cursor and press the ▲/▼ buttons to change the value.
Press the ↵ **ENTER** button to save the value and proceed to the next setting screen.

Note

- When the authentication name is less than 8 characters, there will be buzzer sounds and it will not move to the next screen.
- Up to 32 alphanumeric characters and symbols (from 20H to 7EH) can be set.
- Specify " " to input a space.
- The setting will be effective only if you power on the printer again.



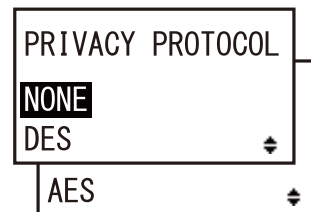
PRIVACY PROTOCOL

Select SNMP trap privacy protocol.
The options are as follows:

- **NONE**
- **DES**
- **AES**

Note

The setting will be effective only if you power on the printer again.



PRIVACY KEY

Input SNMP trap privacy key.
Input more than 8 characters for the authentication name.
Press the ◀/▶ buttons to shift the cursor and press the ▲/▼ buttons to change the value.
Press the ↵ **ENTER** button to save the value and proceed to the next setting screen.

Note

- When the authentication name is less than 8 characters, there will be buzzer sounds and it will not move to the next screen.
- Up to 32 alphanumeric characters and symbols (from 20H to 7EH) can be set.
- Specify " " to input a space.
- The setting will be effective only if you power on the printer again.



TRAP IPv4 ADR

Set the IPv4 address where trap is output.
The setting range is from 0.0.0.0 to 255.255.255.255.

Note

Shows only if the SNTP function is enabled.

TRAP IPv4 ADR

000.000.000.000

**TRAP IPv6 ADR**

Set the IPv6 address where trap is output.
The setting range is from 0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000 to FFFF:FFFF:FFFF:FFFF:FFFF:FFFF:FFFF:FFFF.

Note

Shows only if the SNTP function is enabled.

TRAP IPv6 ADR

0000:0000:0000:
0000:0000:0000:
0000:0000**FINISH SETTING?**

Confirm to complete the setting.

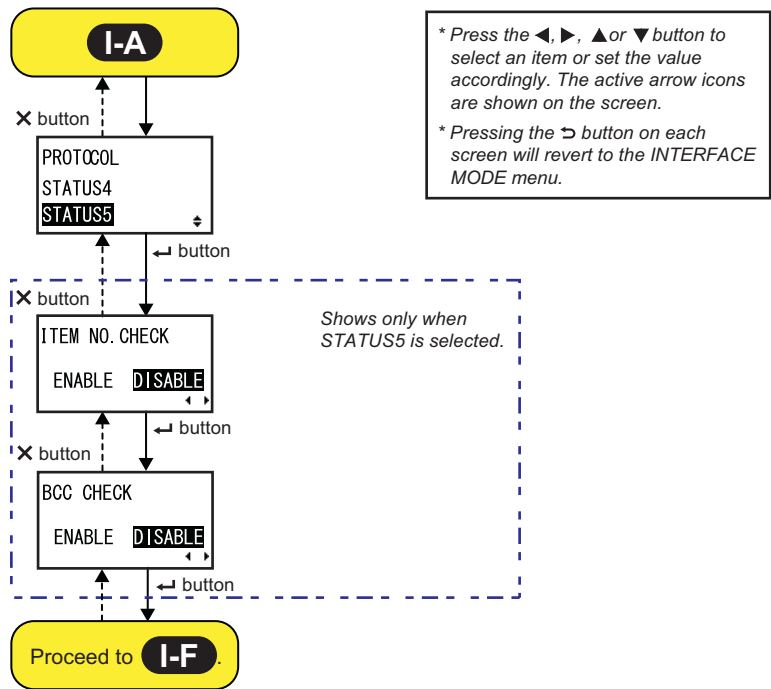
- **YES**: Returns to the user mode screen.
- **NO**: Returns to the NOTICE FUNCTION screen to select an item.

FINISH SETTING?

YES

NO

USB Setting



PROTOCOL	
Set the communication protocol. • STATUS4: When selected, the printer will proceed to the IGNORE CR/ LF screen. • STATUS5: When selected, the printer will proceed to the ITEM NO. CHECK screen.	
ITEM NO. CHECK	
Set the item number check function. • ENABLE: Enable the item number check function. • DISABLE: Disable the item number check function. Note Shows only if PROTOCOL is set to STATUS5.	

BCC CHECK

Set the BCC check function.

- **ENABLE**: Enable the BCC check function.
- **DISABLE**: Disable the BCC check function.

Note

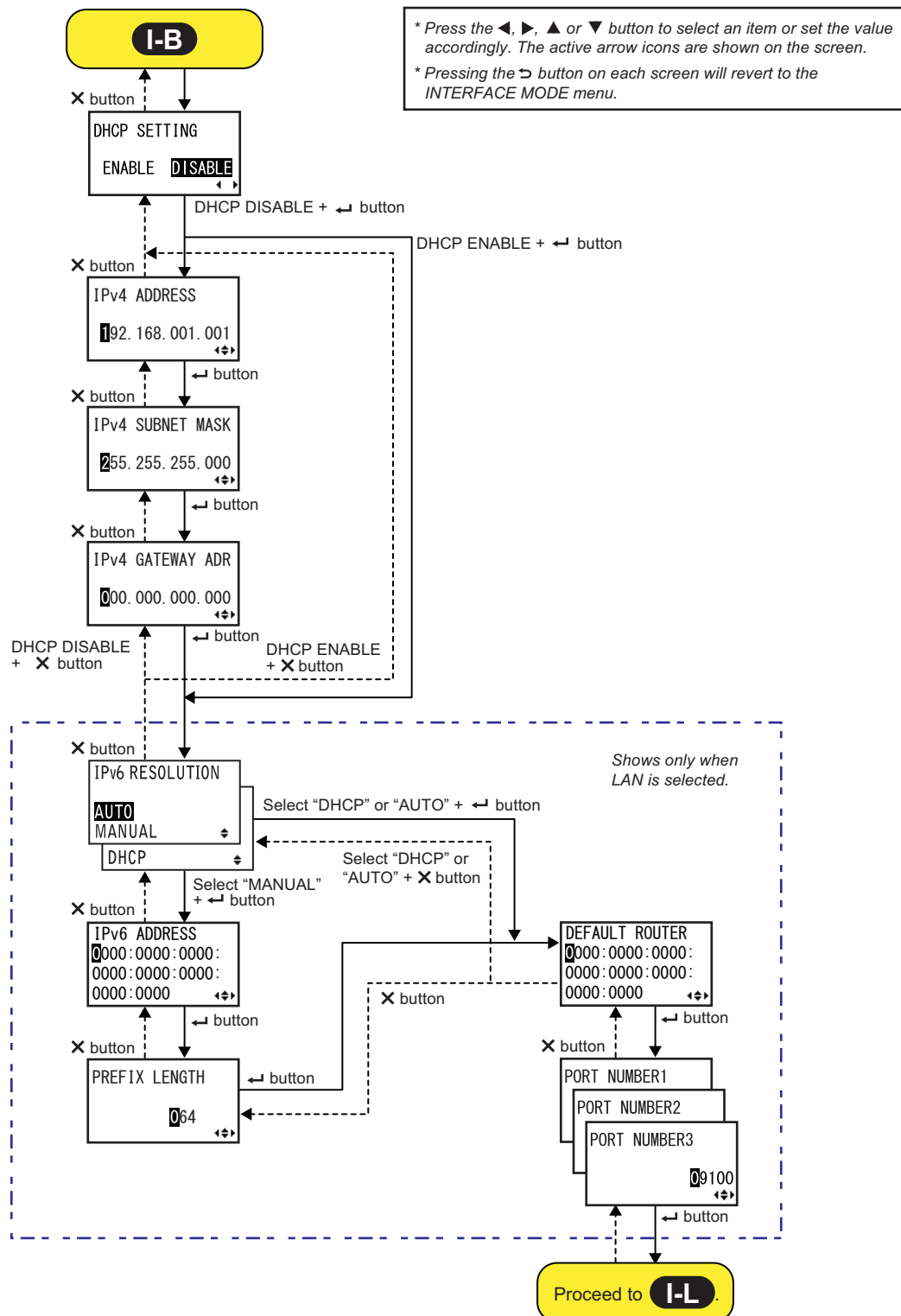
Shows only if PROTOCOL is set to STATUS5.

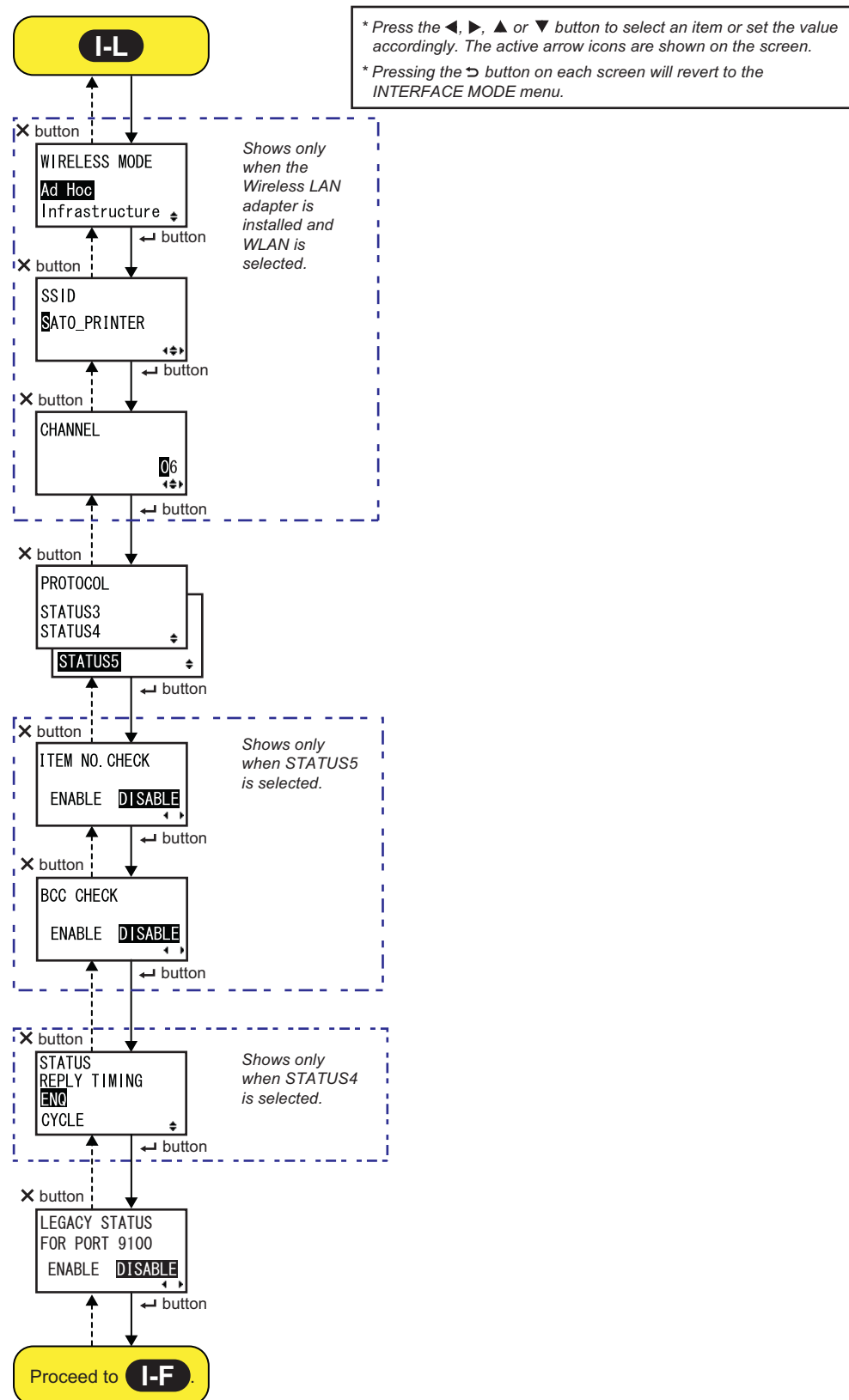
BCC CHECK

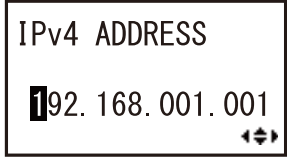
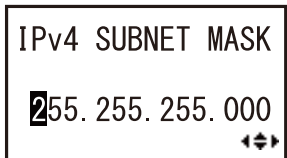
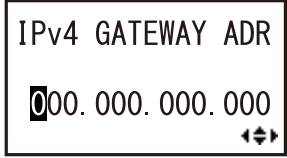
ENABLE **DISABLE**



LAN/Wireless LAN Setting





DHCP SETTING	
Enable or disable DHCP. • ENABLE: Enable DHCP. • DISABLE: Disable DHCP. Note • Shows only if the LAN or WLAN interface is selected. • The setting for the WLAN interface will be effective only if you power on the printer again.	
IPv4 ADDRESS	
Set the IPv4 address. The setting range is from 0.0.0.0 to 255.255.255.255. The default value is 192.168.001.001. Note • Shows only if the LAN or WLAN interface is selected. • The setting will be effective only if you power on the printer again.	
IPv4 SUBNET MASK	
Set the IPv4 subnet mask address. The setting range is from 0.0.0.0 to 255.255.255.255. The default value is 255.255.255.000. Note • Shows only if the LAN or WLAN interface is selected. • The setting will be effective only if you power on the printer again.	
IPv4 GATEWAY ADR	
Set the IPv4 gateway address. The setting range is from 0.0.0.0 to 255.255.255.255. The default value is 000.000.000.000 for LAN and 192.168.001.002 for WLAN. Note • Shows only if the LAN or WLAN interface is selected. • The setting will be effective only if you power on the printer again.	

IPv6 RESOLUTION

Select IPv6 address setting method.
The options are as follows:

- **AUTO**
- **MANUAL**
- **DHCP**

Note

Shows only if the LAN interface is selected.

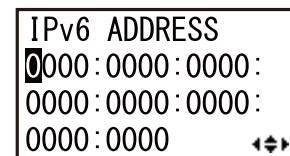


IPv6 ADDRESS

Set the IPv6 address.

Note

Shows only if the LAN interface is selected and "MANUAL" is selected at "IPv6 RESOLUTION" screen.



PREFIX LENGTH

Set the prefix length.

Note

Shows only if the LAN interface is selected and "MANUAL" is selected at "IPv6 RESOLUTION" screen.

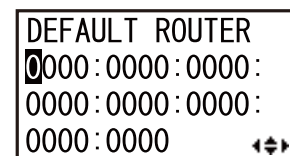


DEFAULT ROUTER

Set the default router of IPv6.

Note

Shows only if the LAN interface is selected and "MANUAL" is selected at "IPv6 RESOLUTION" screen.



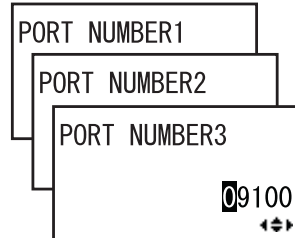
PORT NUMBER

Set the LAN port numbers, 1 to 3.
The setting range is from 00001 to 65535.
The setting details are as follows:

Port Number	Initial Value	Description	
		Status 3, 5	Status 4
1	1024	Bi-Directional Port	Input port
2	1025	Not applicable	Output port
3	9100	Bi-Directional Port	Bi-Directional Port

Note

- Shows only if the LAN interface is selected.
- Each port (1, 2 and 3) must be set to different values.
- When changing the port number, it is recommended to set to 1024 and above.
- The setting will be effective only if you power on the printer again.



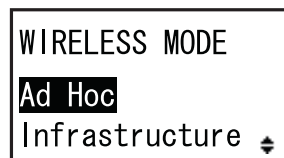
WIRELESS MODE

Set the communication method of the wireless LAN.
The options are as follows:

- **Ad Hoc**
- **Infrastructure**

Note

- Shows only if the WLAN interface is selected.
- The setting will be effective only if you power on the printer again.



SSID

Set the SSID of the wireless LAN.
You can enter a maximum of thirty-two characters including alphabet (upper case and lower case), numbers and symbols.

Note

- Shows only if the WLAN interface is selected.
- The setting will be effective only if you power on the printer again.



CHANNEL

Set the communication channel of the wireless LAN.
The setting range is from 01 to 13 and the default value is 06.

Note

- Shows only if the WLAN interface is selected.
- The setting will be effective only if you power on the printer again.
- When the channel has become invalid due to a region code change, the channel returns to its default setting.

CHANNEL

06

PROTOCOL

Set the communication protocol.

- **STATUS3**: When selected, the printer will proceed to the IGNORE CR/LF screen.
- **STATUS4**: When selected, the printer will proceed to the STATUS REPLY TIMING screen.
- **STATUS5**: When selected, the printer will proceed to the ITEM NO. CHECK screen.

PROTOCOL

STATUS3
STATUS4

STATUS5

ITEM NO. CHECK

Set the item number check function.

- **ENABLE**: Enable the item number check function.
- **DISABLE**: Disable the item number check function.

Note

Shows only if PROTOCOL is set to STATUS5.

ITEM NO. CHECK

ENABLE DISABLE

BCC CHECK

Set the BCC check function.

- **ENABLE**: Enable the BCC check function.
- **DISABLE**: Disable the BCC check function.

Note

Shows only if PROTOCOL is set to STATUS5.

BCC CHECK

ENABLE DISABLE

STATUS REPLY TIMING	
Set the timing for replying with the status information to the host. • ENQ: Returns a status after receiving a Status Request (ENQ), which has been sent from the host. • CYCLE: Returns a status from the printer to the host at an interval of 500 ms. Note Shows only if PROTOCOL is set to STATUS4.	STATUS REPLY TIMING ENQ CYCLE

LEGACY STATUS FOR PORT 9100

Set the compatibility in the response data configuration of Status with old models such as M8485Se, M8490Se, M8459Se, M8460Se, M8465Se and S84.

- **ENABLE**: Use the data configuration same as old model.
- **DISABLE**: Use a data configuration different from the old model.

The difference in the response data is as follows:

Status3

	ENABLE	DISABLE (Default)
ENQ (05H) response	prefix: 4 bytes 00H 00H 00H 0BH	prefix: 0 bytes

Status4

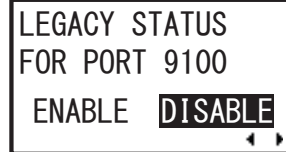
	ENABLE	DISABLE (Default)
CAN (18H) response	1 byte 06H	5 bytes 00H 00H 00H 01H 06H
DLE (10H) response	1 byte 06H	5 bytes 00H 00H 00H 01H 06H
DC1 (11H) response	1 byte 06H	5 bytes 00H 00H 00H 01H 06H
ENQ (05H) response	prefix: 8 bytes 00H 00H 00H 20H 00H 00H 00H 1CH	prefix: 4 bytes 00H 00H 00H 1CH

Status5

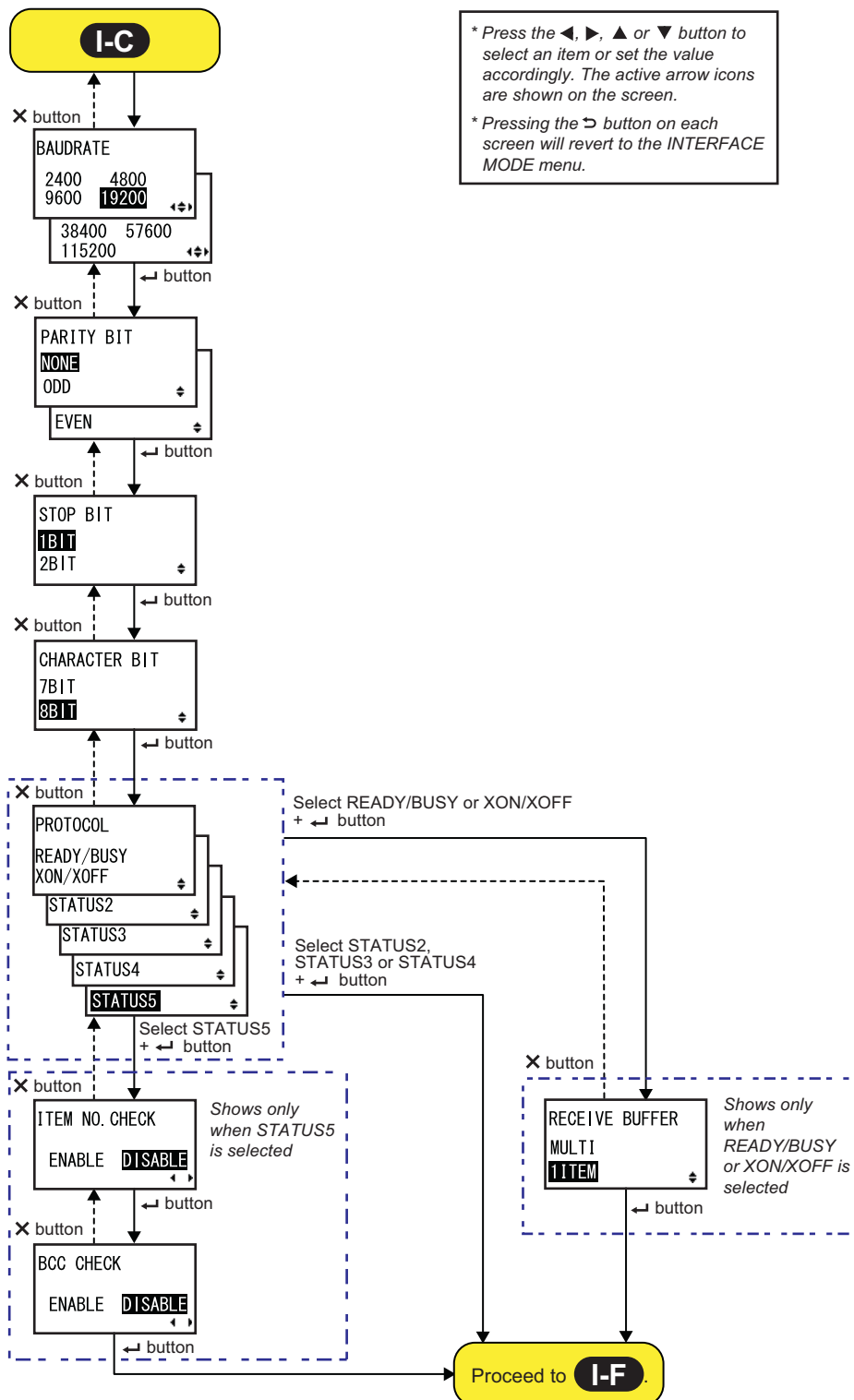
	ENABLE	DISABLE (Default)
ENQ (05H) response	prefix: 4 bytes 00H 00H 00H 16H	prefix: 0 bytes

Note

- Shows only if the LAN or WLAN interface is selected.
- This setting does not have to be changed when using the S84-ex/S86-ex printer driver.



RS-232C Setting



* Press the **◀**, **▶**, **▲** or **▼** button to select an item or set the value accordingly. The active arrow icons are shown on the screen.

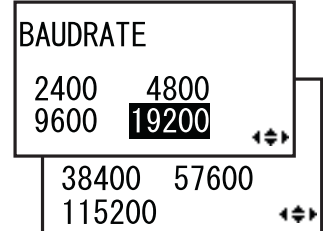
* Pressing the **↵** button on each screen will revert to the INTERFACE MODE menu.

BAUDRATE

Set the RS-232C baud rate.

The following baud rates are available:

- **2400** (bps)
- **4800** (bps)
- **9600** (bps)
- **19200** (bps)
- **38400** (bps)
- **57600** (bps)
- **115200** (bps)



Note

- Shows only if the RS-232C interface is selected.
- The setting will be effective only if you power on the printer again.

PARITY BIT

Set the RS-232C parity bit.

The following options are available:

- **NONE**
- **ODD**
- **EVEN**



Note

- Shows only if the RS-232C interface is selected.
- The setting will be effective only if you power on the printer again.

STOP BIT

Set the RS-232C stop bit.

The following options are available:

- **1BIT**
- **2BIT**



Note

- Shows only if the RS-232C interface is selected.
- The setting will be effective only if you power on the printer again.

CHARACTER BIT

Set the RS-232C data length.
The following options are available:

- **7BIT**
- **8BIT**

Note

- Shows only if the RS-232C interface is selected.
- The setting will be effective only if you power on the printer again.



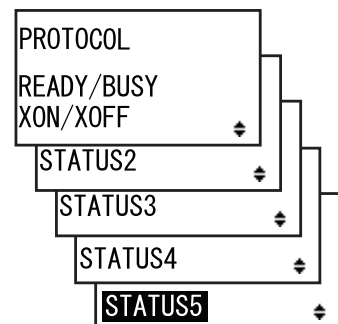
PROTOCOL

Set the communication protocol.

- **READY/BUSY**: When selected, the printer will proceed to the RECEIVE BUFFER screen.
- **XON/OFF**: When selected, the printer will proceed to the RECEIVE BUFFER screen.
- **STATUS2**: When selected, the printer will proceed to the IGNORE CR/LF screen.
- **STATUS3**: When selected, the printer will proceed to the IGNORE CR/LF screen.
- **STATUS4**: When selected, the printer will proceed to the IGNORE CR/LF screen.
- **STATUS5**: When selected, the printer will proceed to the ITEM NO. CHECK screen.

Note

The setting will be effective only if you power on the printer again.



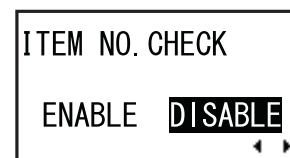
ITEM NO. CHECK

Set the item number check function.

- **ENABLE**: Enable the item number check function.
- **DISABLE**: Disable the item number check function.

Note

Shows only if PROTOCOL is set to STATUS5.



BCC CHECK

Set the BCC check function.

- **ENABLE**: Enable the BCC check function.
- **DISABLE**: Disable the BCC check function.

Note

Shows only if PROTOCOL is set to STATUS5.

BCC CHECK

ENABLE **DISABLE**

RECEIVE BUFFER

Set the receive buffer type.

- **MULTI**: Multiple receive buffers.
- **1ITEM**: A single receive buffer.

Note

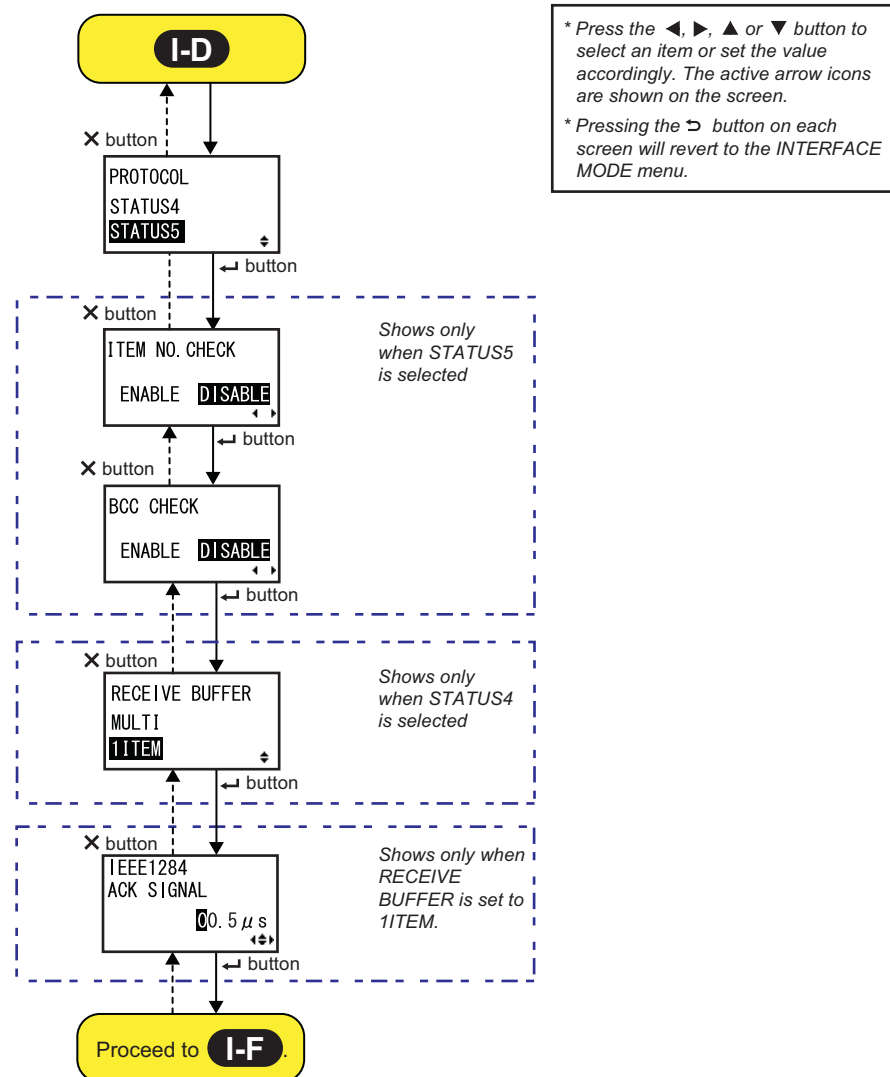
Shows only if PROTOCOL is set to READY/BUSY or XON/XOFF.

RECEIVE BUFFER

MULTI

1ITEM

IEEE1284 Setting



PROTOCOL

Set the communication protocol.

- **STATUS4**: When selected, the printer will proceed to the RECEIVE BUFFER screen.
- **STATUS5**: When selected, the printer will proceed to the ITEM NO. CHECK screen.



ITEM NO. CHECK

Set the item number check function.

- **ENABLE**: Enable the item number check function.
- **DISABLE**: Disable the item number check function.

Note

Shows only if PROTOCOL is set to STATUS5.



BCC CHECK

Set the BCC check function.

- **ENABLE**: Enable the BCC check function.
- **DISABLE**: Disable the BCC check function.

Note

Shows only if PROTOCOL is set to STATUS5.



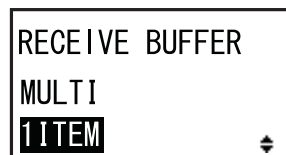
RECEIVE BUFFER

Set the receive buffer type.

- **MULTI**: Multiple receive buffers.
- **1ITEM**: A single receive buffer.

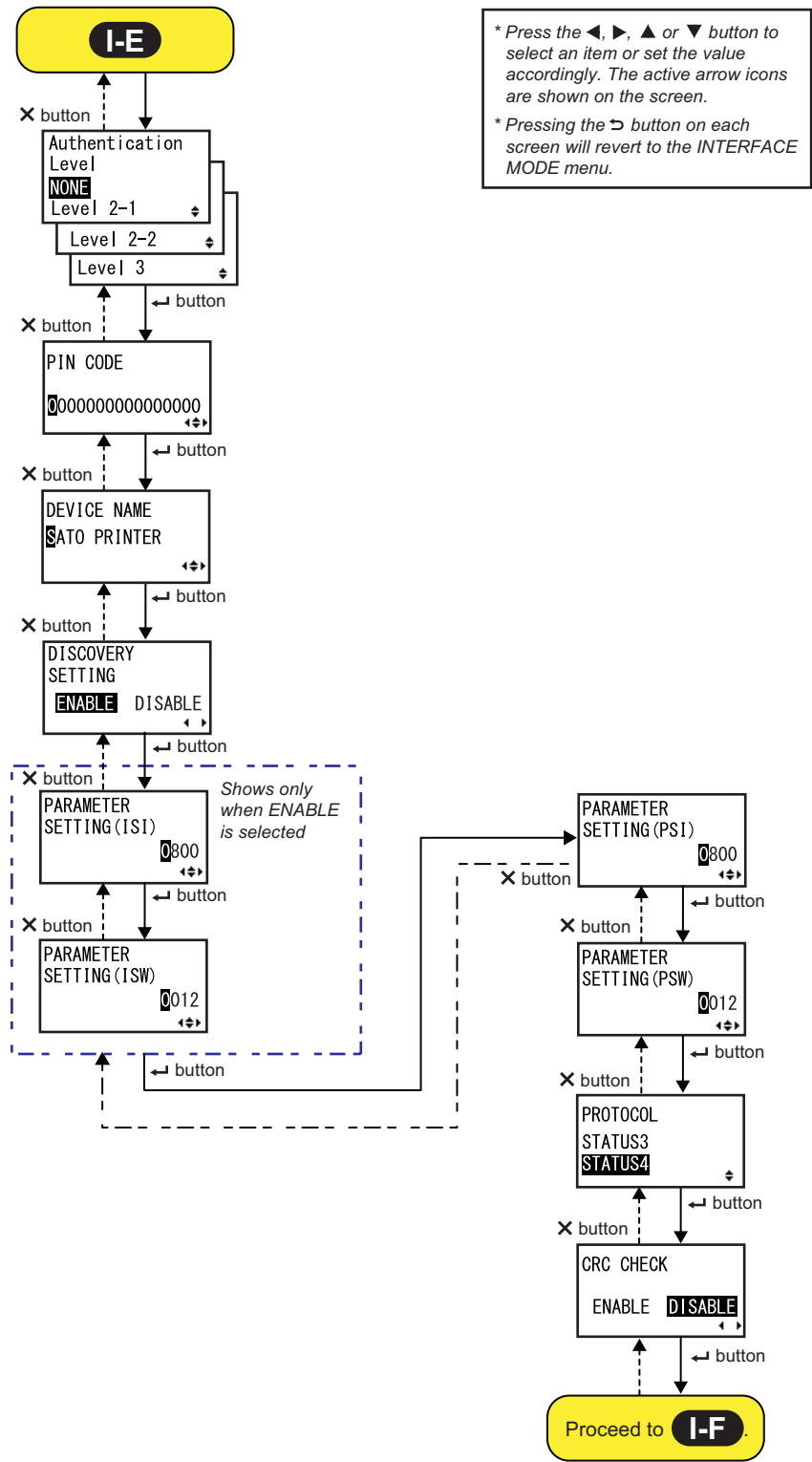
Note

Shows only if PROTOCOL is set to STATUS4.



IEEE1284 ACK SIGNAL	
Set the width of the IEEE1284 ACK signal. The setting range is from 00.5 μs to 12.0 μs, and is adjustable in 0.1 μs steps. Note Shows only if the IEEE1284 interface is selected and RECEIVE BUFFER is set to 1ITEM.	IEEE1284 ACK SIGNAL 00.5 μs ◀▶

Bluetooth Setting



AUTHENTICATION LEVEL

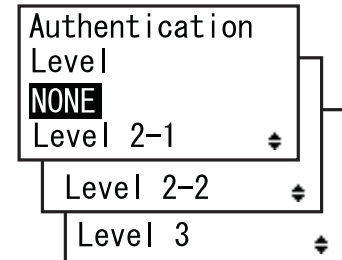
Set the Bluetooth authentication level.

The following options are available:

- **NONE**: No authentication
- **Level 2-1**: PIN code authentication, service level
- **Level 2-2**: PIN code authentication, service level
- **Level 3**: PIN code authentication, link level

Note

- Shows only if the Bluetooth interface is selected.
- The setting will be effective only if you power on the printer again.



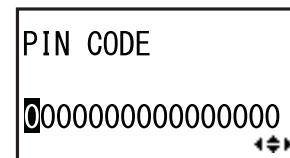
PIN CODE

Set the Bluetooth PIN code.

You can enter a maximum of sixteen characters including alphabet (upper case and lower case), numbers and symbols.

Note

- Shows only if the Bluetooth interface is selected.
- The setting will be effective only if you power on the printer again.



DEVICE NAME

Set the device name for the printer.

You can enter a maximum of twenty characters including alphabet (upper case and lower case), numbers and symbols.

Note

- Shows only if the Bluetooth interface is selected.
- The setting will be effective only if you power on the printer again.



DISCOVERY SETTING

Enable or disable the Bluetooth detection response.

- **ENABLE**: Enable the Bluetooth detection response.
- **DISABLE**: Disable the Bluetooth detection response.

Note

- Shows only if the Bluetooth interface is selected.
- The setting will be effective only if you power on the printer again.



PARAMETER SETTING (ISI)

Set the Bluetooth communication parameter (ISI).
The setting range is from 0012 to 1000.

Note

- Shows only if the Bluetooth interface is selected and DETECTING SETTING is enabled.
- You cannot set the ISI value if it is smaller than the ISW value.
- The setting will be effective only if you power on the printer again.

PARAMETER
SETTING (ISI)
0800
◀▶

PARAMETER SETTING (ISW)

Set the Bluetooth communication parameter (ISW).
The setting range is from 0011 to 1000.

Note

- Shows only if the Bluetooth interface is selected and DETECTING SETTING is enabled.
- You cannot set the ISW value if it is greater than the ISI value.
- The setting will be effective only if you power on the printer again.

PARAMETER
SETTING (ISW)
0012
◀▶

PARAMETER SETTING (PSI)

Set the Bluetooth communication parameter (PSI).
The setting range is from 0012 to 1000.

Note

- Shows only if the Bluetooth interface is selected.
- You cannot set the PSI value if it is smaller than the PSW value.
- The setting will be effective only if you power on the printer again.

PARAMETER
SETTING (PSI)
0800
◀▶

PARAMETER SETTING (PSW)

Set the Bluetooth communication parameter (PSW).
The setting range is from 0011 to 1000.

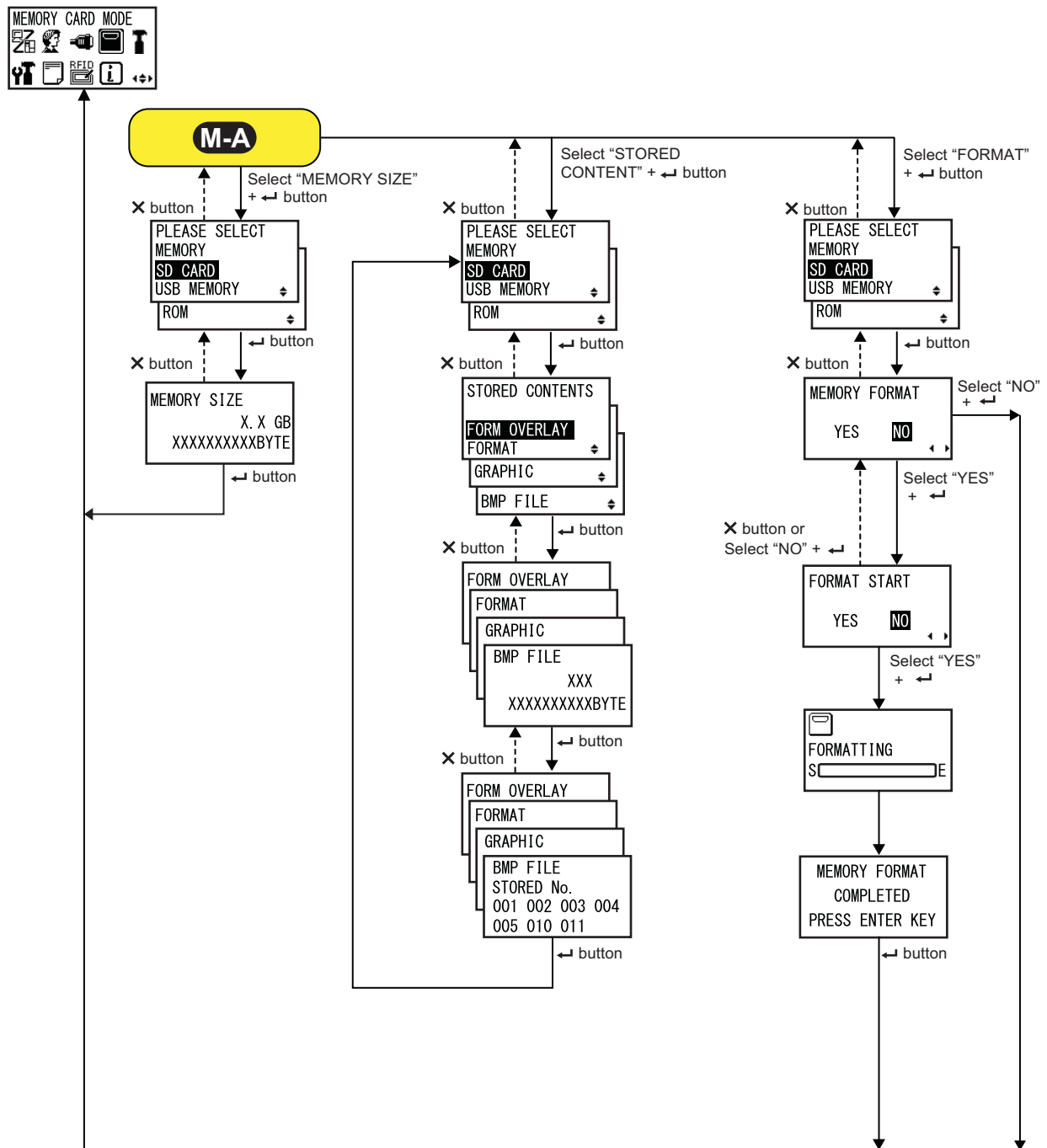
Note

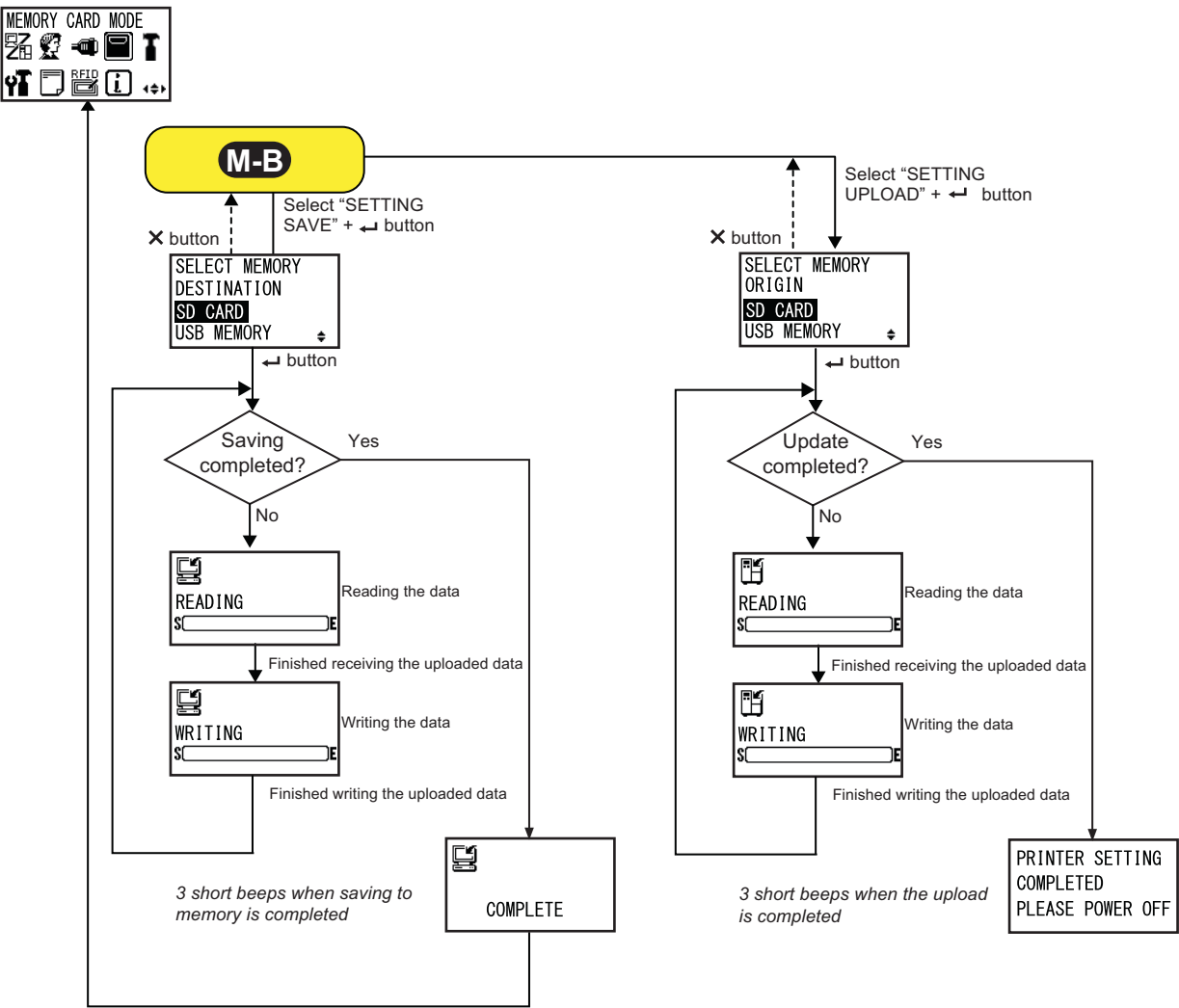
- Shows only if the Bluetooth interface is selected.
- You cannot set the PSW value if it is greater than the PSI value.
- The setting will be effective only if you power on the printer again.

PARAMETER
SETTING (PSW)
0012
◀▶

PROTOCOL	
Set the communication protocol. The following options are available: • STATUS3 • STATUS4	PROTOCOL STATUS3 STATUS4 

CRC CHECK	
Set the CRC check function. • ENABLE: Enable the CRC check function. • DISABLE: Disable the CRC check function. Note Shows only if the Bluetooth interface is selected.	CRC CHECK ENABLE DISABLE 





SLOT SETTING

Select whether or not to set the memory storage allocation for use with the Memory card command <CC>.

- **YES**: Proceed to change the storage allocation for the memory slot.
- **NO**: No change to the memory slot.

Note

Refer to the Programming reference for details on the command.

SLOT SETTING

YES

NO



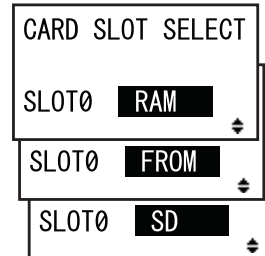
CARD SLOT SELECT

Set the memory storage allocation for each card slot for use with the Memory card command <CC>. A total of three slots can be set (Slot 0-2). Each card slot can be allocated to the following options:

- **RAM**
- **FROM** (Flash ROM)
- **SD** (SD card)
- **USB** (USB memory)
- **NO USE**

Note

- Other than the NO USE option, a memory storage allocated to a card slot cannot be allocated to another card slot.
- Refer to the Programming reference for details on the command.

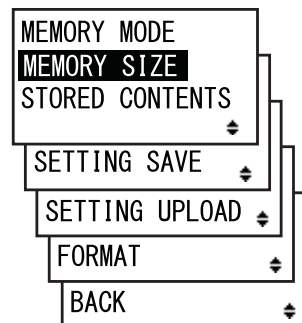


MEMORY MODE

Perform the memory settings.

The following options are available:

- **MEMORY SIZE**: Check the free size of the selected memory.
- **STORED CONTENTS**: Shows the information that is registered in the selected memory.
- **SETTING SAVE**: Save the printer setting information to the selected memory.
- **SETTING UPLOAD**: Update the printer setting information stored in the selected memory.
- **FORMAT**: Initialize and format the selected memory.
- **BACK**: Returns to the MEMORY CARD MODE screen.



PLEASE SELECT MEMORY

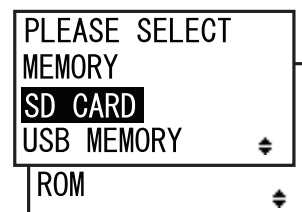
Select the memory you want to perform the settings.

The following options are available:

- **SD CARD**
- **USB MEMORY**
- **ROM**

Note

Shows only if MEMORY MODE is set to MEMORY SIZE, STORED CONTENTS or FORMAT.



MEMORY SIZE	
Check the free size of the selected memory. The memory unit (BYTE, KB, MB, GB) changes automatically according to the free space of the memory. Note After you press the ↵ ENTER button, the screen returns to MEMORY CARD MODE.	MEMORY SIZE X.X GB XXXXXXXXXXBYTE

STORED CONTENTS	
Select the type of information registered in the memory. The following options are available: • FORM OVERLAY • FORMAT • GRAPHIC • BMP FILE	STORED CONTENTS FORM OVERLAY FORMAT GRAPHIC BMP FILE

MEMORY INFORMATION	
Shows the number of files and total size of the selected type of information registered in the memory. The maximum number of files is 999.	FORM OVERLAY FORMAT GRAPHIC BMP FILE XXX XXXXXXXXXXBYTE

STORED NO. INFORMATION	
Shows the stored number of the registered information. The stored number range is from 001 to 999. Note After you press the ↵ ENTER button, the screen returns to PLEASE SELECT MEMORY.	FORM OVERLAY FORMAT GRAPHIC BMP FILE STORED No. 001 002 003 004 005 010 011

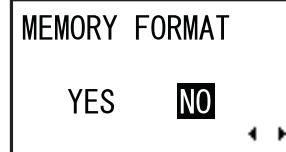
MEMORY FORMAT

Select whether or not to format the memory.

- **YES:** Format the memory.
- **NO:** Do not format the memory.

Note

If you select NO, the screen returns to MEMORY CARD MODE.



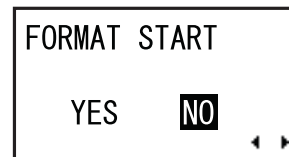
FORMAT START

Confirm to start formatting the memory.

- **YES:** Start to format the memory.
- **NO:** Cancel formatting the memory.

Note

If you select NO, the screen returns to MEMORY FORMAT.



FORMATTING

Shows the formatting progress of the memory.

Note

After formatting the memory card, a completion message will show.

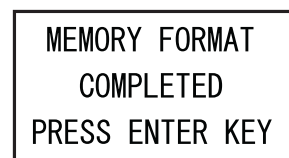


MEMORY FORMAT COMPLETED

Shows that the formatting of the memory card is completed.

Note

After you press the **ENTER** button, the screen returns to MEMORY CARD MODE.



SELECT MEMORY DESTINATION

Select the memory to save the printer setting information.
The following options are available:

- **SD CARD**
- **USB MEMORY**

Note

- Shows only if MEMORY MODE is set to SETTING SAVE.
- The setting information of the wireless LAN is saved only if the wireless LAN is connected.

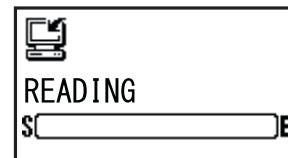


READING (SETTING SAVE)

Shows while the printer is reading the setting information data.

Note

Automatically shows the WRITING screen upon completion.



WRITING (SETTING SAVE)

Shows while the printer is writing the setting information data.

Note

Shows the COMPLETE screen automatically upon completion.



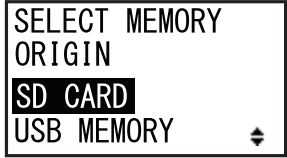
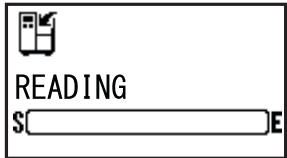
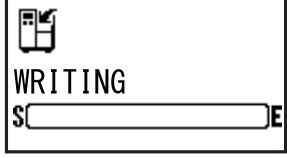
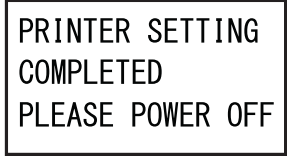
COMPLETE

Shows when the printer setting information has been saved to memory.

Note

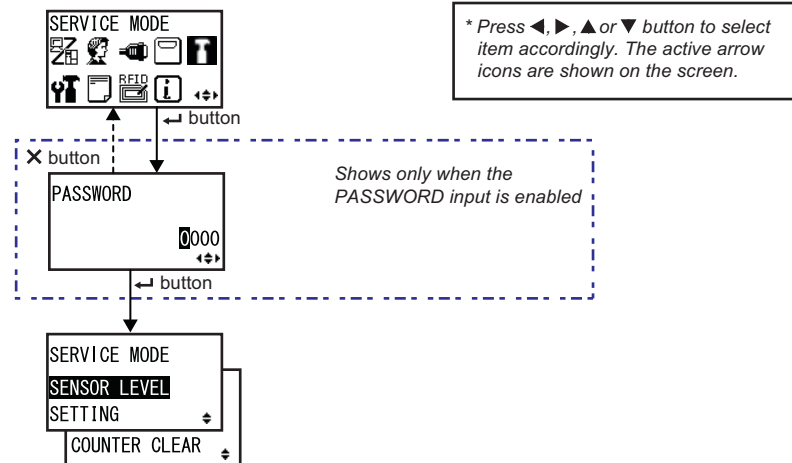
After three beeps, the screen returns to MEMORY CARD MODE.



SELECT MEMORY ORIGIN	
Select the memory to copy the printer setting information. The following options are available: • SD CARD • USB MEMORY Note Shows only if MEMORY MODE is set to SETTING UPLOAD.	
READING (SETTING UPLOAD)	
Shows while the printer is reading the setting information data. Note Automatically shows the WRITING screen upon completion.	
WRITING (SETTING UPLOAD)	
Shows while the printer is writing the setting information data. Note Automatically shows the PRINTER SETTING COMPLETED screen upon completion.	
PRINTER SETTING COMPLETED	
Shows when the printer setting information has been uploaded to the printer. Note • Three beeps will sound when the upload is completed. • The setting will be effective only if you power on the printer again.	

4.2.12 Service Mode

In the SERVICE MODE menu, you can perform sensor level adjustments and various function settings of the printer.



SERVICE MODE

Select one from the three service setting modes.

- **SENSOR LEVEL:** Adjust the sensor level.
- **SETTING:** Set the various function settings of the printer.
- **COUNTER CLEAR:** Clear various counter value.



SERVICE MODE
SENSOR LEVEL
 SETTING
 COUNTER CLEAR

Select SENSOR LEVEL + button

SENSOR LEVEL
AUTO
 MANUAL

Select AUTO + button

SENSOR SELECT
I-MARK
 GAP

When I-MARK is selected
 INSERT WHITE AREA OF LABELS UNDER SENSOR. PRESS ENTER KEY

When GAP is selected
 REMOVE LABEL. PLACE LINER UNDER SENSOR. PRESS ENTER KEY

Calibration succeed.
CALIBRATION
 COMPLETE
 PRESS ENTER KEY

Calibration failed.
CALIBRATION
 FAILED
 PRESS ENTER KEY

CALIBRATION
EXIT CALIBRATION
 RETRY

Select RETRY + button

Select EXIT CALIBRATION + button

SENSOR LEVEL
 I-MARK(E) X. XV
 ADJUST LEVEL 2

Select MANUAL + button

SENSOR LEVEL
 I-MARK(R) X. XV
 ADJUST LEVEL 090

SENSOR LEVEL
 I-MARK(R) X. XV
 SLICE LEVEL 1.4V

SENSOR LEVEL
 GAP(E) X. XV
 ADJUST LEVEL 2

SENSOR LEVEL
 GAP(R) X. XV
 ADJUST LEVEL 090

SENSOR LEVEL
 GAP(R) X. XV
 SLICE LEVEL 1.4V

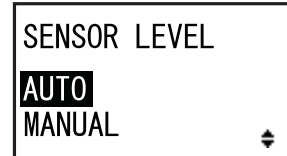
** Press the , , or button to select an item or set the value accordingly. The active arrow icons are shown on the screen.*

** Pressing the button on each screen will revert to the SERVICE MODE setting screen.*

SENSOR LEVEL

Set the sensor adjustment method.

- **AUTO**: Automatically adjust the sensor level.
- **MANUAL**: Manually adjust the sensor level.



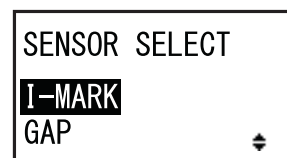
SENSOR SELECT

Select the media sensor type for the sensor adjustment.

- **I-MARK**: Adjust the I-mark sensor.
- **GAP**: Adjust the Gap sensor.

Note

Shows only if AUTO is selected for the sensor adjustment method.

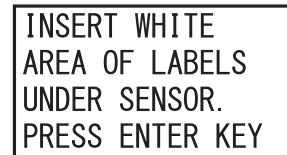


I-mark sensor adjustment explanation screen

This screen shows the instruction to place the media for I-mark sensor adjustment.

Shows only if I-MARK is selected in the SENSOR SELECT screen.

After placing the media, press the **← ENTER** button to start the automatic sensor adjustment.



Gap sensor adjustment explanation screen

This screen shows the instruction to place the media for I-mark sensor adjustment.

Shows only if GAP is selected in the SENSOR SELECT screen.

After placing the label, press the **← ENTER** button to start the automatic sensor adjustment.



CALIBRATION COMPLETE/FAILED

This screen shows the result of the automatic sensor adjustment.

- **COMPLETE:** The automatic adjustment has succeeded.
- **FAILED:** The automatic adjustment has failed.

Press the **← ENTER** button to proceed to the next screen.

CALIBRATION
COMPLETE
PRESS ENTER KEY

CALIBRATION
FAILED
PRESS ENTER KEY

CALIBRATION

Select to exit the automatic sensor adjustment or retry the automatic sensor adjustment.

- **EXIT CALIBRATION:** Exit the automatic sensor adjustment.
- **RETRY:** Retry the automatic sensor adjustment.

CALIBRATION
EXIT CALIBRATION
RETRY

SENSOR LEVEL I-MARK(E)

Shows the current level (Emission) of the I-mark sensor on the upper part of the screen.

This offset determines how soon the sensor will respond to an incoming I-mark. The adjustment range is from 1 to 3 and is shown on the bottom line of the screen.

SENSOR LEVEL
I-MARK(E) X. XV
ADJUST LEVEL 2

SENSOR LEVEL I-MARK(R)

Shows the current level (Reception) of the I-mark sensor on the upper part of the screen.

This offset determines how soon the sensor will respond to an incoming I-mark. The adjustment range is from 0 to 127 and is shown on the bottom line of the screen.

SENSOR LEVEL
I-MARK(R) X. XV
ADJUST LEVEL 090

SENSOR LEVEL I-MARK SLICE

Shows the current level (Reception) of the I-mark sensor on the upper part of the screen.

The slice level is calculated automatically and shown on the bottom line. The slice level can be set to 0.0 V, or from 0.3 V to 2.9 V. (adjustable in increments of 0.1 V)

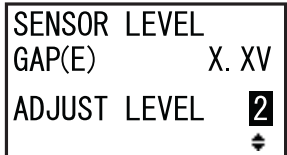
Note

- The slice level is set automatically when the value is set to 0.0 V.
- In the case of automatic calculation, the calculated value will be shown automatically after printing.


SENSOR LEVEL GAP(E)

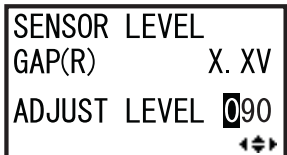
Shows the current level (Emission) of the gap sensor on the upper part of the screen.

This offset determines how soon the sensor will respond to an incoming gap. The adjustment range is from 1 to 3 and is shown on the bottom line of the screen.


SENSOR LEVEL GAP(R)

Shows the current level (Reception) of the gap sensor on the upper part of the screen.

This offset determines how soon the sensor will respond to an incoming gap. The adjustment range is from 0 to 127 and is shown on the bottom line of the screen.

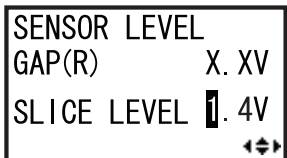

SENSOR LEVEL GAP SLICE

Shows the current level (Reception) of the gap sensor on the upper part of the screen.

The slice level is calculated automatically and shown on the bottom line. The slice level can be set to 0.0 V, or from 0.3 V to 2.9 V. (adjustable in increments of 0.1 V)

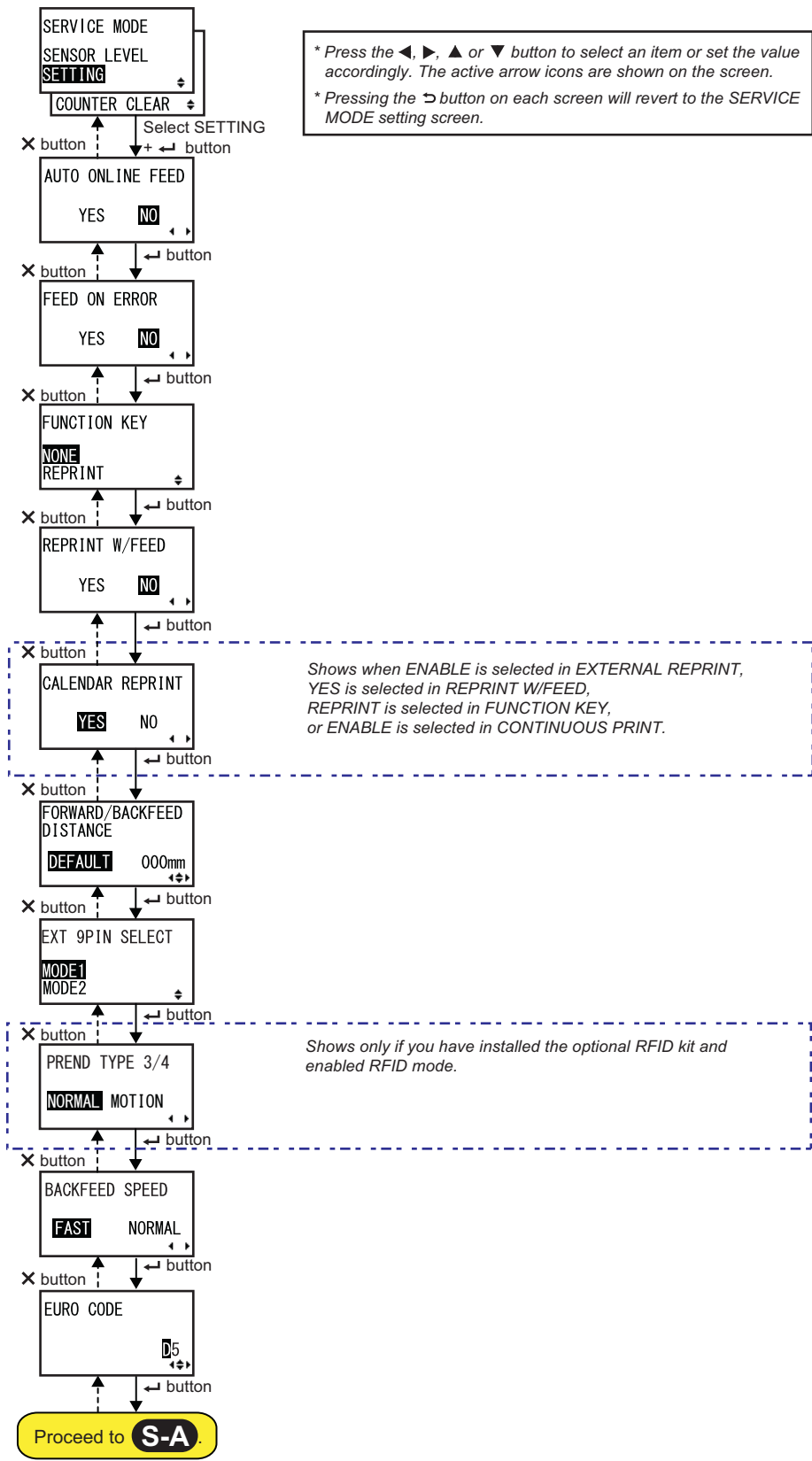
Note

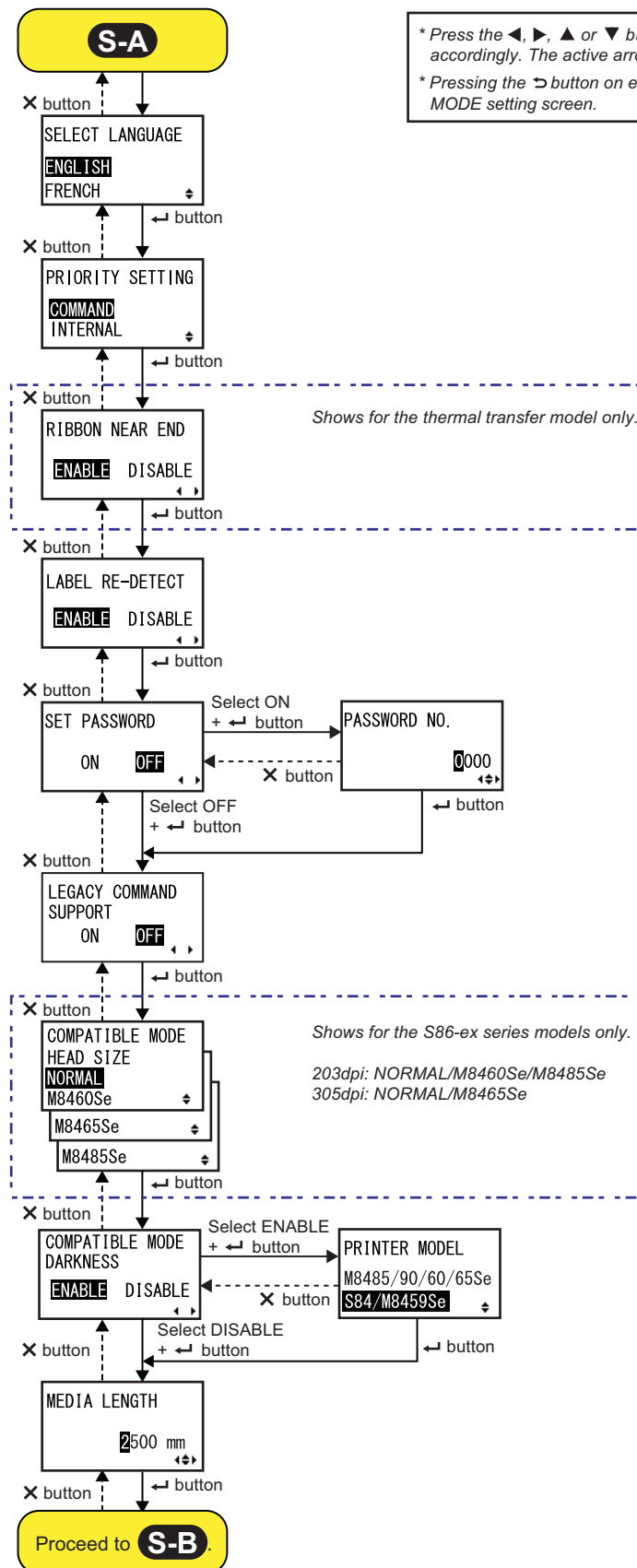
- The slice level is set automatically by the firmware when the value is set to 0.0 V.
- In the case of automatic calculation, the calculated value will be shown automatically after printing.

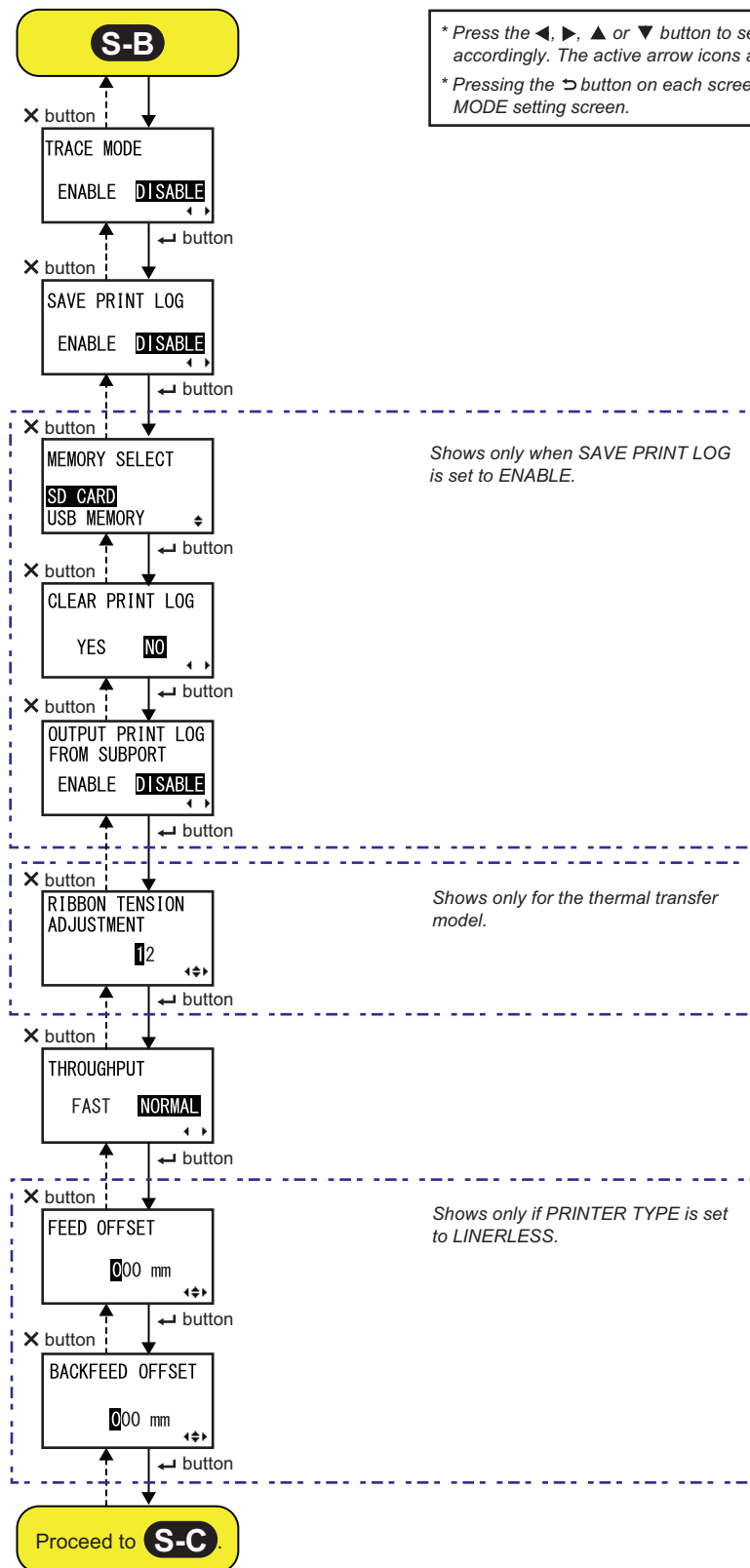


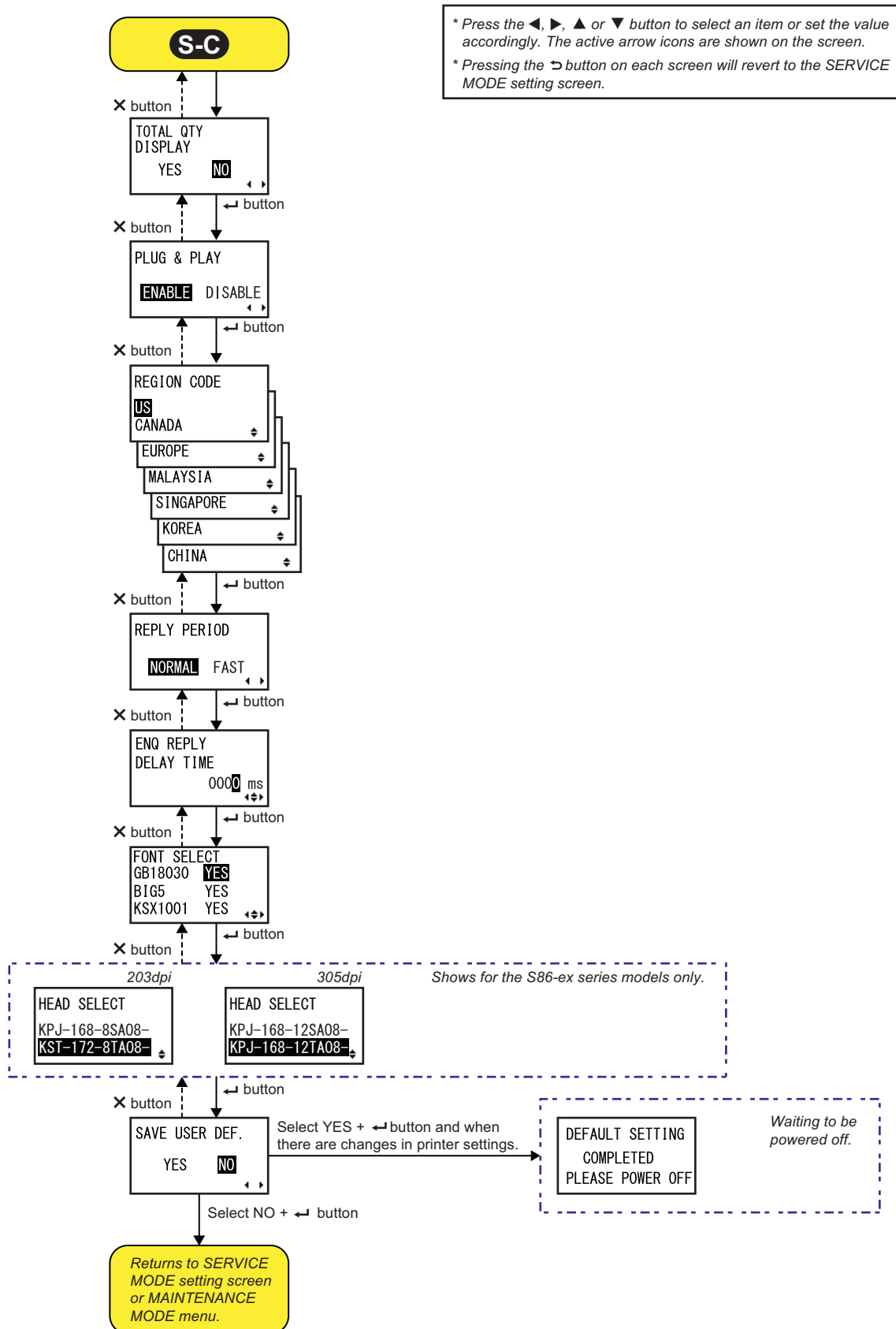
Function Settings

The flowchart shows the sequence of the setting screens for the function settings. The table describes each setting screen in detail.









AUTO ONLINE FEED

Set the auto online feed function.

This function enables the printer to automatically feed media in online mode after power on.

- **YES:** Feed the media in online mode at power on.
- **NO:** Do not feed the media in online mode at power on.

AUTO ONLINE FEED	
YES	NO
◀ ▶	

FEED ON ERROR

Set the online feed function.

This function enables the printer to feed media automatically when recovering from a head open error or when starting up the printer and changing to online mode.

- **YES:** Feed the media when changing to online mode.
- **NO:** Do not feed the media when changing to online mode.

FEED ON ERROR	
YES	NO
◀ ▶	

FUNCTION KEY

Allocate the following functions to the  **FUNCTION** button.

- **NONE:** Do not allocate any function.
- **REPRINT:** Allocate the reprint function.

Note

The  **FUNCTION** button is disabled when NONE is set.

FUNCTION KEY	
NONE	REPRINT
↕	

REPRINT W/FEED

Enable or disable the reprint function using the  **FEED** button.

If this function is enabled, you can reprint the last print job by pressing the  **FEED** button in online mode.

- **YES:** Enable the reprint function.
- **NO:** Disable the reprint function.

REPRINT W/FEED	
YES	NO
◀ ▶	

CALENDAR REPRINT

Perform the calendar reprint setting.

- **YES:** The updated calendar data (date and time) according to the RTC (Real Time Clock) is included in the reprint data.
- **NO:** Print exactly the same data as before.

Note

Shows only if EXTERNAL REPRINT is set to ENABLE, REPRINT W/ FEED is set to YES, FUNCTION KEY is set to REPRINT, or CONTINUOUS PRINT is set to ENABLE.

CALENDAR REPRINT

YES NO



FORWARD/BACKFEED DISTANCE

Set the feed length in the forward and backward directions.

- **DEFAULT:** Enable the printer to operate using the fixed value maintained in the printer.
- **000mm:** Set the feed length to enable the printer to operate using this distance. The setting range of forward/backward feed length is from 001 mm to 255 mm (0.04" to 10").
The actual forward/backward feed length is equivalent to the offset adjustment value + the paper feed length.

Note

- If using thermal transfer for printing, set the feed distance to less than 30 mm (1.2") to avoid detection of the ribbon end by mistake.
- If the value is larger than the distance between the print head and the option stop position, the media may shift away from the platen during backward feed.

FORWARD/BACKFEED DISTANCE

DEFAULT 000mm



EXT 9PIN SELECT

Set the output mode of the external signal pin 9 when using a 14-pin connector (pin 6 when using a 25-pin connector).

- **MODE1:** The output signal becomes "Active" when there is remaining print data without error in online mode.
- **MODE2:** The output signal becomes "Active" when the printer is ONLINE.

Note

Refer to the [Timing Chart of the EXT Output Signal \(Online\)](#) for details.

EXT 9PIN SELECT

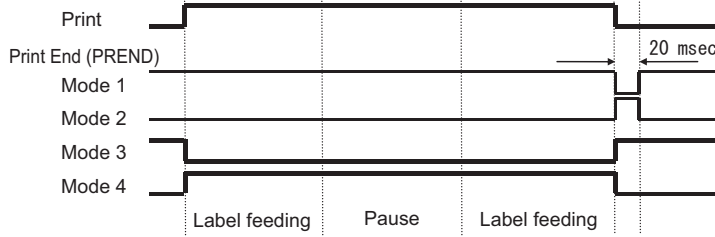
MODE1
MODE2



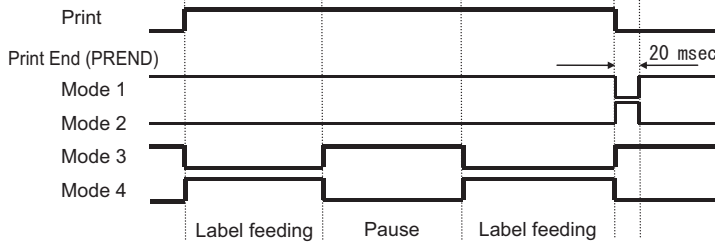
PREND TYPE 3/4

Select whether to reflect the label feed/stop timing on PREND output signal in External signal MODE3, 4.

- **NORMAL:** Do not reflect the label feed/stop timing on PREND output.



- **MOTION:** Reflect the label feed/stop timing on PREND output.



Note

Shows only if you have installed the optional RFID kit and enabled the RFID mode.

PREND TYPE 3/4

NORMAL MOTION

◀ ▶

BACKFEED SPEED

Specify the backfeed speed.

- **FAST:** Set to a speed of six inches per second.
- **NORMAL:** Set to a speed of four inches per second.

BACKFEED SPEED

FAST NORMAL

◀ ▶

EURO CODE

Set the European currency symbol to a hex code.
The setting range is from 00 to FF (hexadecimal).

EURO CODE

D5

◀ ▶

SELECT LANGUAGE

Set the LCD language.

The following languages are available:

- **ENGLISH**
- **FRENCH**
- **GERMAN**
- **SPANISH**
- **PORTUGUESE**
- **ITALIAN**
- **CHINESE** (Simplified Chinese)
- **DUTCH**
- **RUSSIAN**



PRIORITY SETTING

Set the priority for the system commands.

- **COMMAND**: Certain system commands that have been sent to the printer have the priority to overwrite the printer configuration set by the LCD operator panel.
- **INTERNAL**: The above mentioned printer configuration set by the LCD operator panel will not be replaced by the sent command.

System commands that can be assigned priority are as follows:

Print Darkness <#E>, Print Darkness <#F>, Print Speed <CS>, Position Offset <A3>, Print Mode <PM>, Print Method <PH>



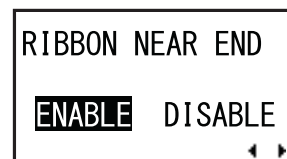
RIBBON NEAR END

Enable or disable the detection of the ribbon near end.

- **ENABLE**: Detect and notify when the ribbon is about to run out.
- **DISABLE**: Do not detect the ribbon near end.

Note

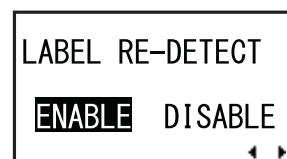
Shows for the thermal transfer model only.



LABEL RE-DETECT

Set whether or not to re-detect the label pitch when the power is on after the head opens/closes.

- **ENABLE**: Re-detect the label pitch.
- **DISABLE**: Do not re-detect the label pitch.



SET PASSWORD

Enable or disable password input to various modes.

- **ON**: Password input is required to enter various modes.
- **OFF**: Password input is not required to enter various modes.

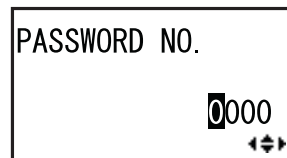
You can enable password input for the following modes:
USER MODE, INTERFACE MODE, MEMORY MODE,
ADVANCED MODE, HEX DUMP MODE and SERVICE MODE.



PASSWORD NO.

Set the four digit password for entering various modes.

Move the cursor using the ◀/▶ buttons, change the value using the ▲/▼ buttons and then press the ↵ **ENTER** button to confirm the password.



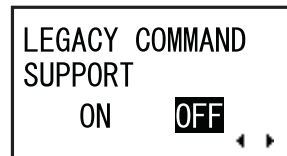
LEGACY COMMAND SUPPORT

Set the compatibility with the printer operation of existing models.

- **ON**: Keep the compatibility with the printer operation of existing models.
- **OFF**: Disable the compatibility with the printer operation of existing models.

Note

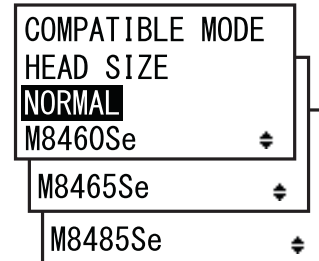
For details on the legacy command support, refer to [Section 8.3 About Legacy Command Support](#).



COMPATIBLE MODE HEAD SIZE

Set the head width for S86-ex series models.
The options vary depending on the head density. Corresponding head width are as follows:

Model Name	Option	Head Width (mm)
S86-ex (203 dpi)	NORMAL	167.5
	M8460Se	152.0
	M8485Se	128.0
S86-ex (305 dpi)	NORMAL	167.5
	M8465Se	152.0



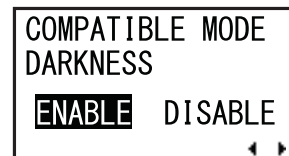
Note

- Shows for S86-ex series models only and if LEGACY COMMAND SUPPORT is set to ON.
- Refer to [Section 8.3.2 Compatible Mode - Print Head Width \(only for S86-ex printer\)](#) for details on the affected items.

COMPATIBLE MODE DARKNESS

Enable or disable the system command Print Darkness <#E>.

- **ENABLE:** Enable you to execute the Print Darkness <#E>.
- **DISABLE:** Ignore the Print Darkness <#E>.



PRINTER MODEL

Select the printer model based on print darkness in compatible mode.

- **M8485/90/60/65Se**: Triple the value for Print Darkness <#E> and set it as the print darkness.

Print Darkness value <#E>	The value converted as Print Darkness value <#F>
1	3
2	6
3	9

- **S84/M8459Se**: Double the value for Print Darkness <#E> and set it as the print darkness.

Print darkness value <#E>	The value converted as Print Darkness value <#F>
1	2
2	4
3	6
4	8
5	10

Note

- Shows only if COMPATIBLE MODE DARKNESS is set to ENABLE.
- This table explains that the system accepts the legacy Print Darkness setting command and does not guarantee that the printed darkness of the succeeding model will be the same as the older model.

PRINTER MODEL

M8485/90/60/65Se

S84/M8459Se ⬆

MEDIA LENGTH

Set the maximum length of the media to be used.
This function affects the printable area (lengthwise) and media size checking function. It is necessary to set this value based on the actual media length to be used.
The setting range varies depending on the model as follows:

Model Name	Setting Range (mm)	Default Value (mm)
S84-ex (203 dpi)	0 - 2500	2500
S84-ex (305 dpi)	0 - 1500	1500
S84-ex (609 dpi)	0 - 400	400
S86-ex (203 dpi)	0 - 1249	1249
S86-ex (305 dpi)	0 - 1249	1249

MEDIA LENGTH

2500 mm
◀ ▶

TRACE MODE

Enable or disable the function to show the printer operation status through icons in online mode. The following operation status are available:



RCU : Data reception: Shows after receiving any data.



EDT : Data edition: Shows after receiving ESC (1BH) A.



PRT : Print: Shows after a print job.

Each icon will be overwritten and cleared when changing to online mode.

TRACE MODE

ENABLE **DISABLE** ◀ ▶

SAVE PRINT LOG

Enable or disable to save the printer operation log to a memory card.

- **ENABLE**: Save the history data to a memory card.
- **DISABLE**: Do not save the history data to a memory card.

SAVE PRINT LOG

ENABLE **DISABLE** ◀ ▶

MEMORY SELECT

Select the storage memory for saving the printer operation log.
SD CARD or USB MEMORY can be selected.

CAUTION

Be sure to perform a virus check for the USB memory or SD card before connecting it to the printer. SATO Corporation shall not be held responsible for a malfunction of the printer caused by a virus infection through the USB memory or SD card.

Note

Shows only if SAVE PRINT LOG is set to ENABLE.

MEMORY SELECT

SD CARD

USB MEMORY

⬆ ⬇ ⬇ ⬆

CLEAR PRINT LOG

Select whether or not to clear the history data in the memory card.

- **YES:** Clear the history data.
- **NO:** Do not clear the history data.

Note

Shows only if SAVE PRINT LOG is set to ENABLE.

CLEAR PRINT LOG

YES

NO

⬅ ➡

OUTPUT PRINT LOG FROM SUBPORT

Output the printer operation log to the sub port in real time (when the status has changed).

- **ENABLE:** Enable the sub port and output the history data from it.
- **DISABLE:** Disable the sub port and do not output any history data from it.

Note

Shows only if SAVE PRINT LOG is set to ENABLE.

OUTPUT PRINT LOG
FROM SUBPORT

ENABLE

DISABLE

⬅ ➡

RIBBON TENSION ADJUSTMENT

This is to adjust the delay for the timing of the platen roller drive against the ribbon rewind shaft drive. When ribbon smudge (mark of the friction of the carbon ribbon and the label surface) is observed, this can be adjusted to reduce that.

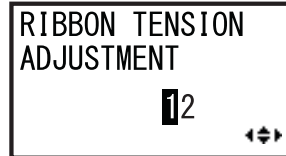
The ribbon is tensed when using a smaller value, and is loosened when using a larger value.

The setting range varies depending on the head density as follows:

Head Density	Setting Range	Default Value
203 dpi	0 - 15	12
305 dpi	0 - 15	5
609 dpi	0 - 15	1

Note

Shows only for the thermal transfer model.



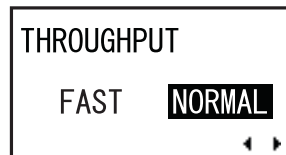
THROUGHPUT

Set the interval from backfeed to forward feed or from forward feed to backfeed.

- **FAST:** The interval is shortened and the throughput is improved.
- **NORMAL:** Use the existing interval.

Note

The printer may not operate with the FAST setting, depending on the operating environment.



FEED OFFSET

Set the feed distance in LINERLESS mode.
The setting range is from 000 to 250 mm.

Note

Shows only if PRINTER TYPE in ADVANCED MODE is set to LINERLESS.

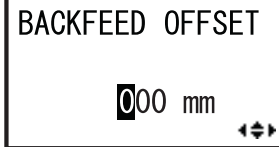


BACKFEED OFFSET

Set the backfeed distance in LINERLESS mode.
The setting range is from 000 to 250 mm.

Note

Shows only if PRINTER TYPE in ADVANCED MODE is set to LINERLESS.



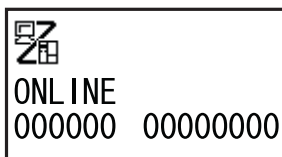
TOTAL QTY DISPLAY

Set whether or not to show the total print quantity.

- **YES:** Shows the total print quantity and current print quantity.
- **NO:** Shows the current print quantity.

YES is selected

NO is selected



PLUG & PLAY

Enable or disable the Plug and play function of the printer.

- **ENABLE:** Enable the Plug and play function.
- **DISABLE:** Disable the Plug and play function.

Note

This function will affect the IEEE1284 interface connectivity because it uses the DEVICE ID response of the IEEE1284.

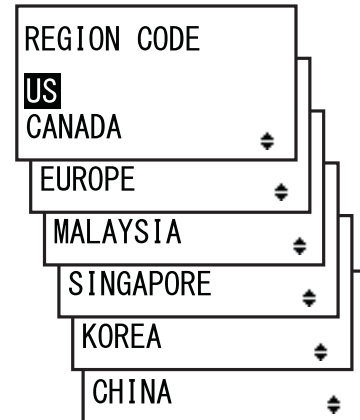


REGION CODE

Set the region code of the wireless LAN.

The channel range varies depending on the region code as follows:

Region	Region Code	Channel Range
USA	US	1 - 11ch
CANADA	CANADA	1 - 11ch
Europe	EUROPE	1 - 13ch
Malaysia	MALAYSIA	1 - 13ch
Singapore	SINGAPORE	1 - 13ch
Korea	KOREA	1 - 13ch
China	CHINA	1 - 13ch



REPLY PERIOD

Set the LAN reply timing.

- **NORMAL**: Reply intervals of 500 to 1000 milliseconds.
- **FAST**: Reply intervals of 200 to 400 milliseconds.



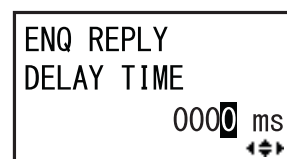
ENQ REPLY DELAY TIME

Set the ENQ reply delay time.

The setting range is from 0000 to 9999 ms and is adjustable by 1 ms.

Note

- If "0000ms" is selected, the printer sends an ENQ response with no delay.
- If status 4 is set as the cyclic response mode, the printer sends an ENQ response with no delay for cycle response or ENQ command.



FONT SELECT

Select a font from the stored fonts.

- **GB18030**: Simplified Chinese
- **BIG 5**: Traditional Chinese
- **KSX1001**: Korean
- **YES**: Printable
- **NO**: Non-printable

Move the cursor using the ▲/▼ buttons, change the value using the ◀/▶ buttons and then press the ↵ **ENTER** button to set the value.
The printable maximum size of the TrueType font varies depending on the setting as follows:

GB18030	BIG5	KSX1001	Available TrueType font size (MB)
YES	YES	YES	4.6
YES	YES	NO	5.5
YES	NO	YES	5.6
YES	NO	NO	6.5
NO	YES	YES	10.6
NO	YES	NO	10.7
NO	NO	YES	10.8
NO	NO	NO	11.7

Note

When the printer tries to print a TrueType font that is bigger than the maximum size, a command error occurs.

FONT SELECT	
GB18030	YES
BIG5	YES
KSX1001	YES

HEAD SELECT

Set the type of print head installed in the S86-ex printer.

Select according to the first fourteen to fifteen characters of the print head serial number.

The selection varies depending on the print head density.

Note

- Shows only for S86-ex series model with the firmware version later than 61.00.00.06.
- If the installed print head and the selected type do not match, the printing cannot be done correctly. Make sure to set correctly for correct printing.

S86-ex (203dpi):

HEAD SELECT
KPJ-168-8SA08-
KST-172-8TA08-

S86-ex (305dpi):

HEAD SELECT
KPJ-168-12SA08-
KPJ-168-12TA08-

SAVE USER DEF.

This is a screen for saving service mode and advanced mode settings performed by the user as default settings.

- **YES:** Save the printer settings.
- **NO:** Do not save the printer settings.

Note

The printer can be initialized to this setting at a later time. Refer to [Section 4.2.18 Default Setting Mode](#).

SAVE USER DEF.
YES NO

DEFAULT SETTING COMPLETED

Shows when the printer settings have been saved completely.

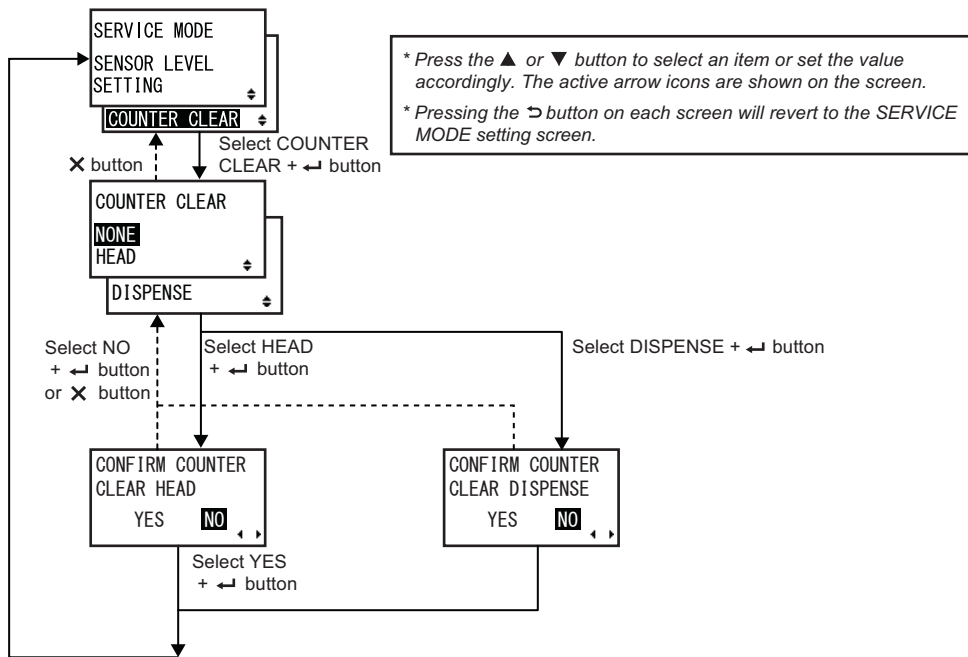
Note

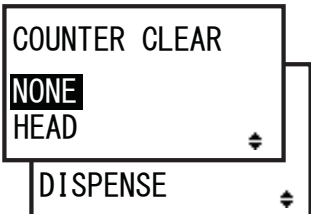
The setting will be effective only if you power on the printer again.

DEFAULT SETTING
COMPLETED
PLEASE POWER OFF

Counter Clear

The flowchart shows the sequence of the counter clear function. The table describes each setting screen in detail.

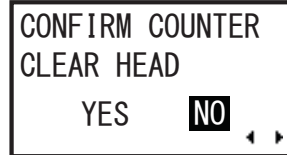


COUNTER CLEAR	
Select one of the followings. • NONE: Does not clear any counter. • HEAD: Clear the head counter. • DISPENSE: Clear the dispense counter.	

CONFIRM COUNTER CLEAR HEAD

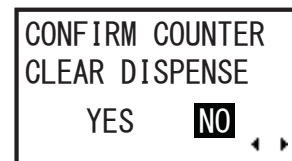
Select whether to clear the head counter or not.

- **YES:** Clear the head counter.
- **NO:** Does not clear the head counter.

**CONFIRM COUNTER CLEAR DISPENSE**

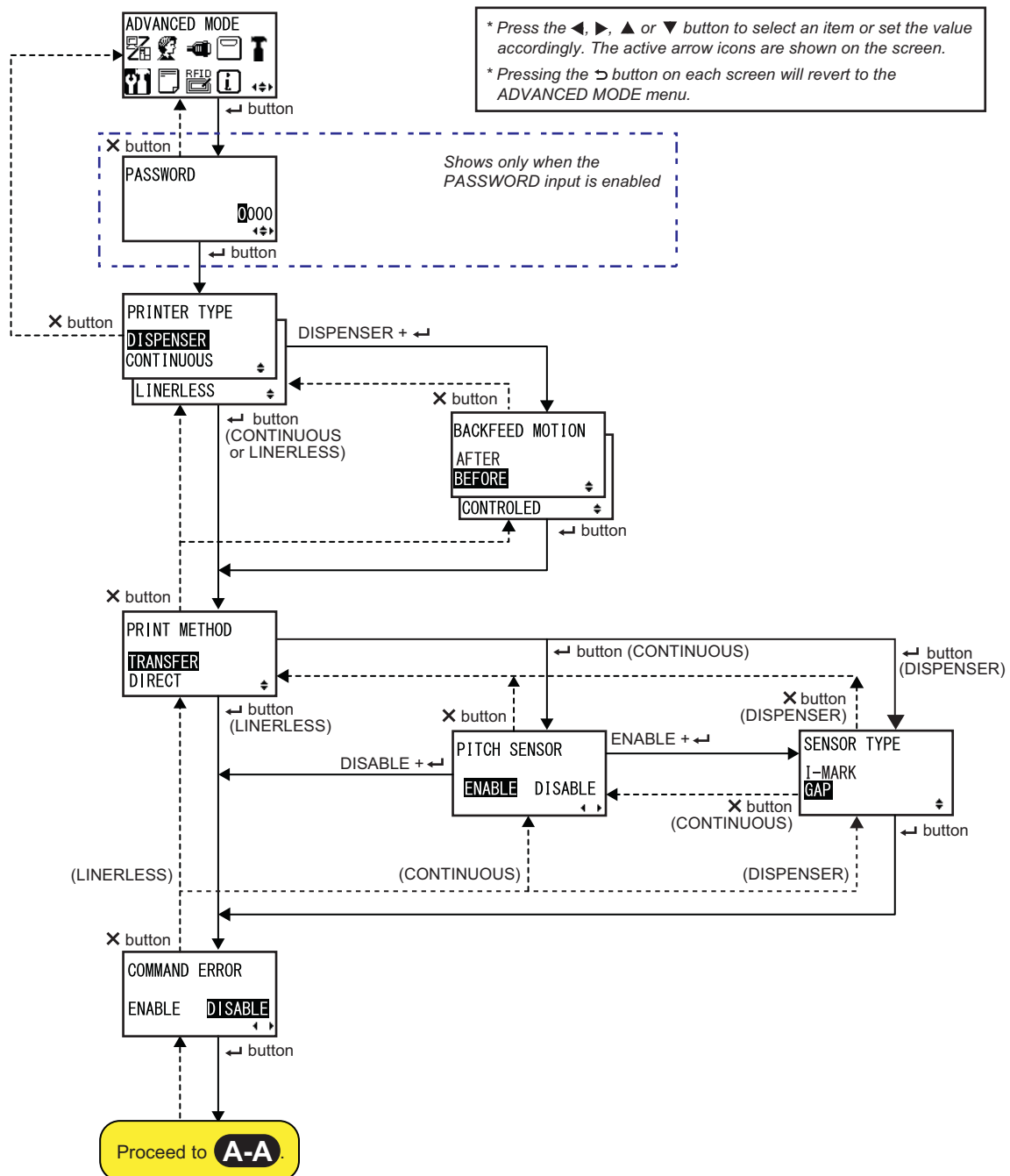
Select whether to clear the dispense counter or not.

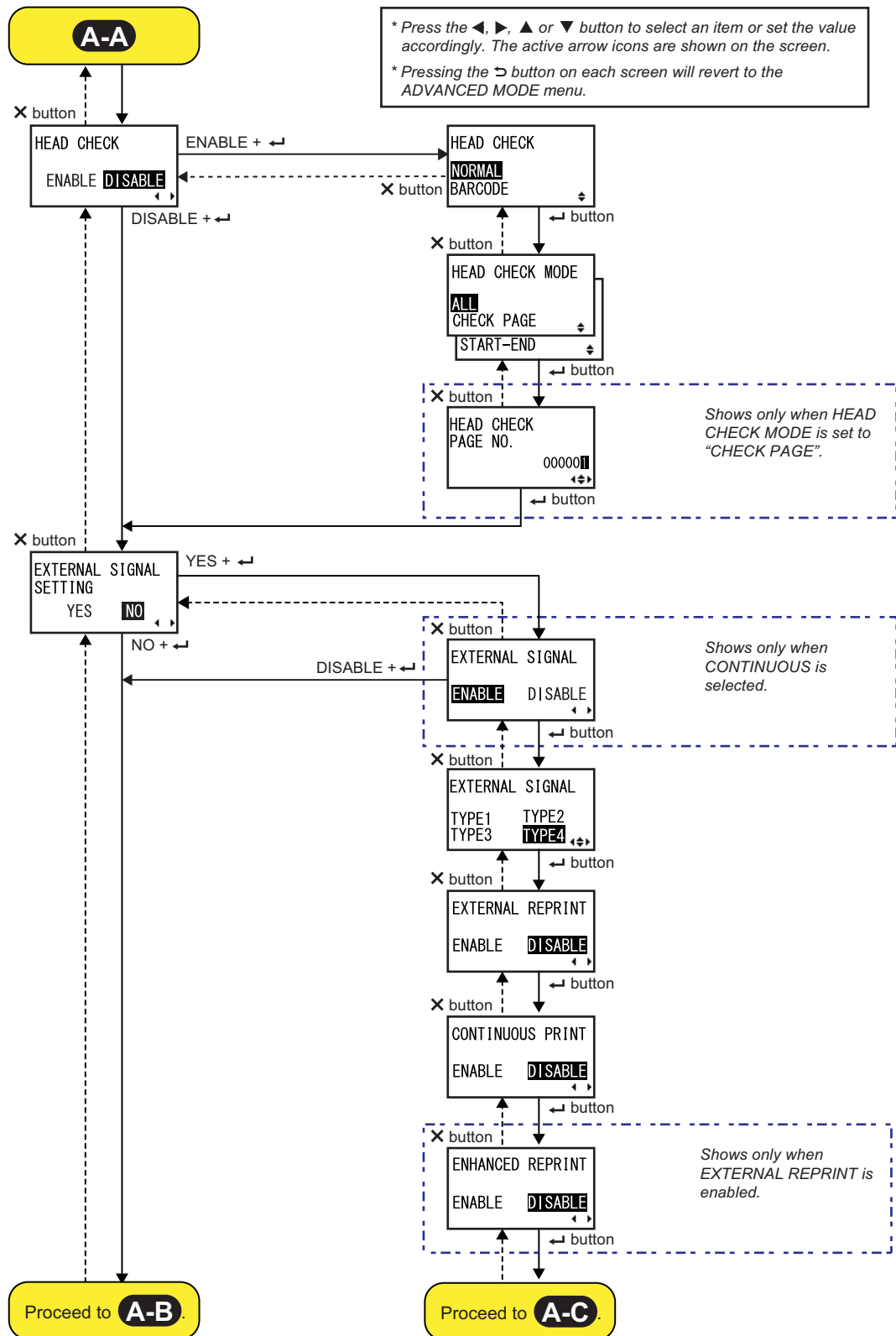
- **YES:** Clear the dispense counter.
- **NO:** Does not clear the dispense counter.

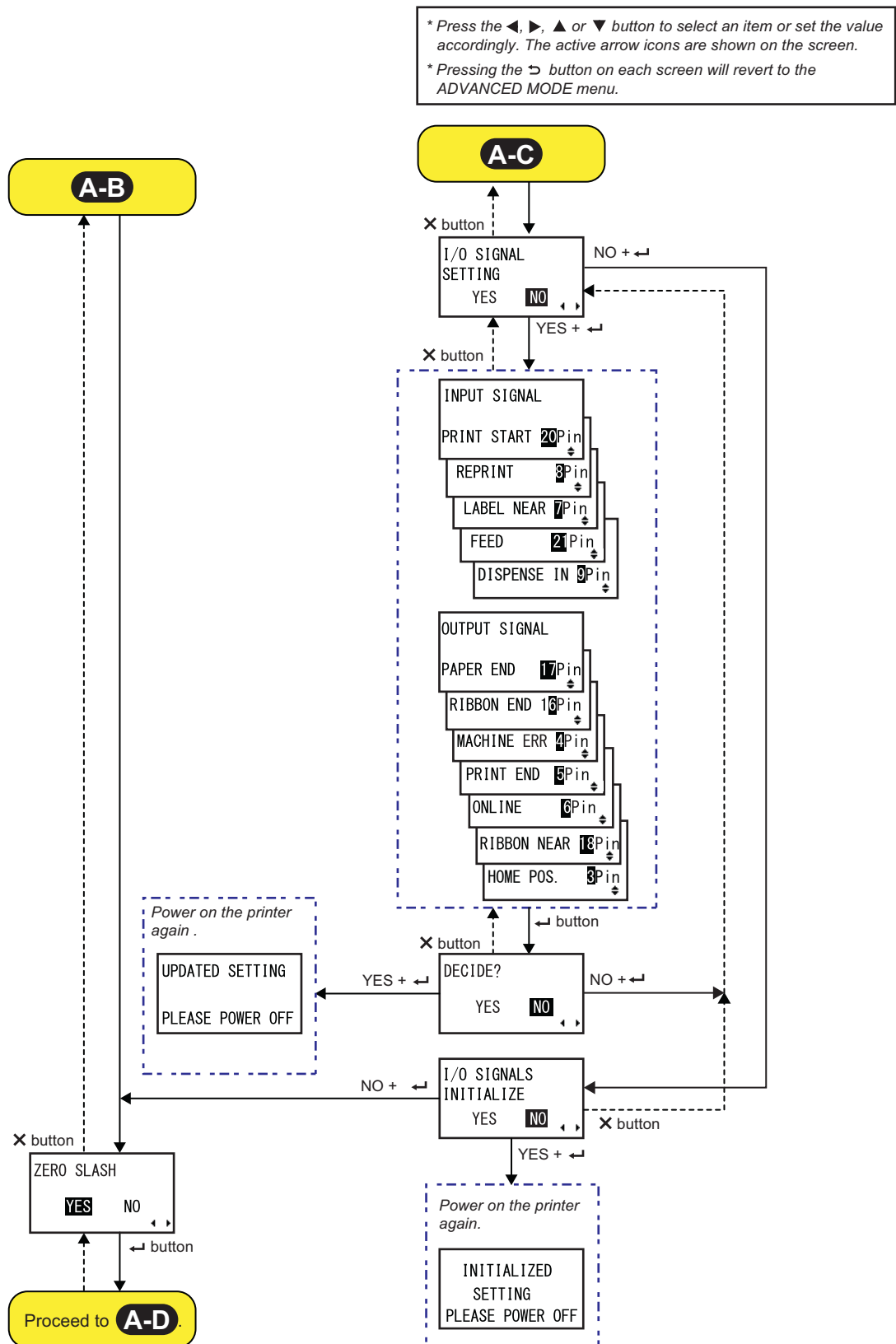


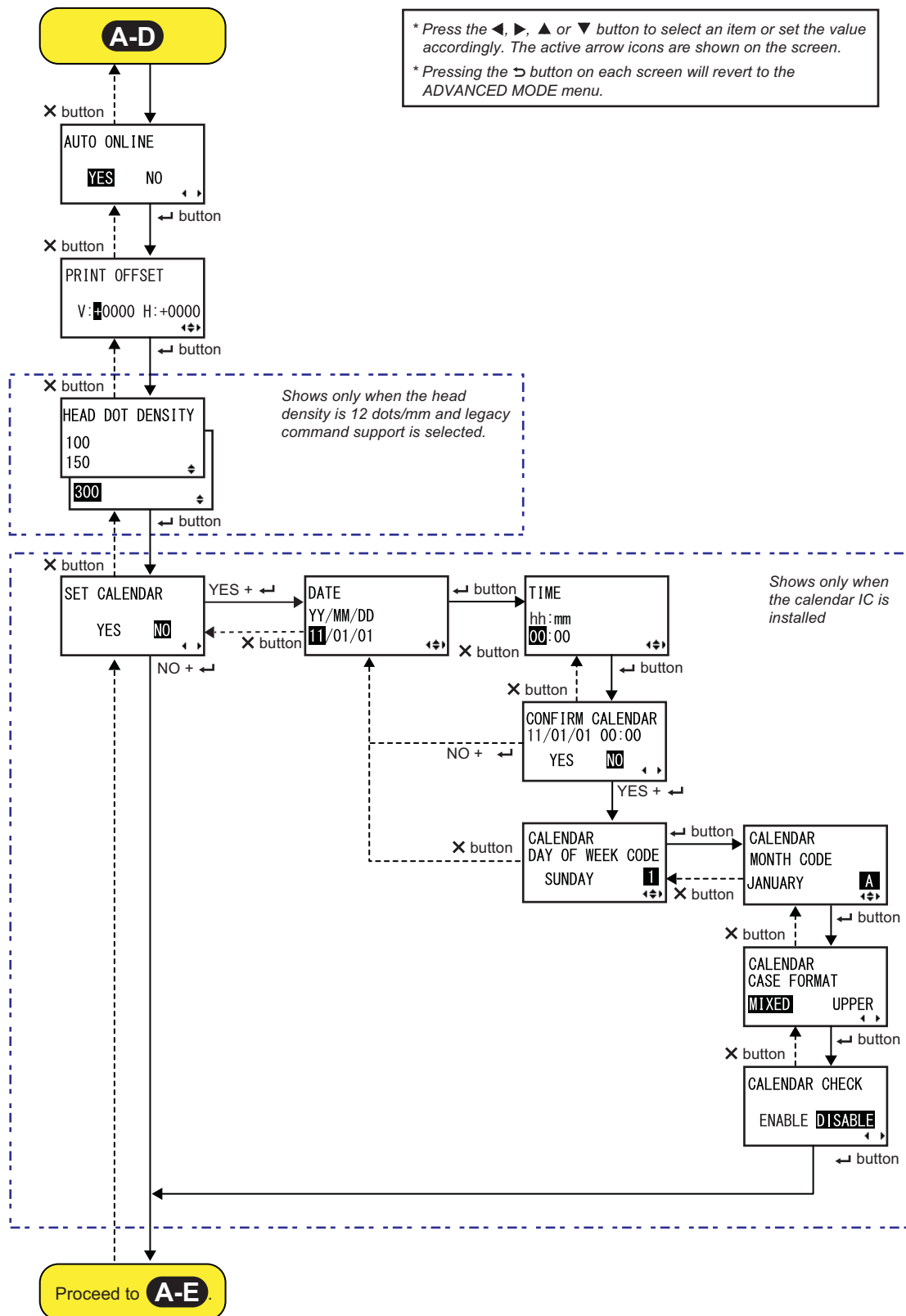
4.2.13 Advanced Mode

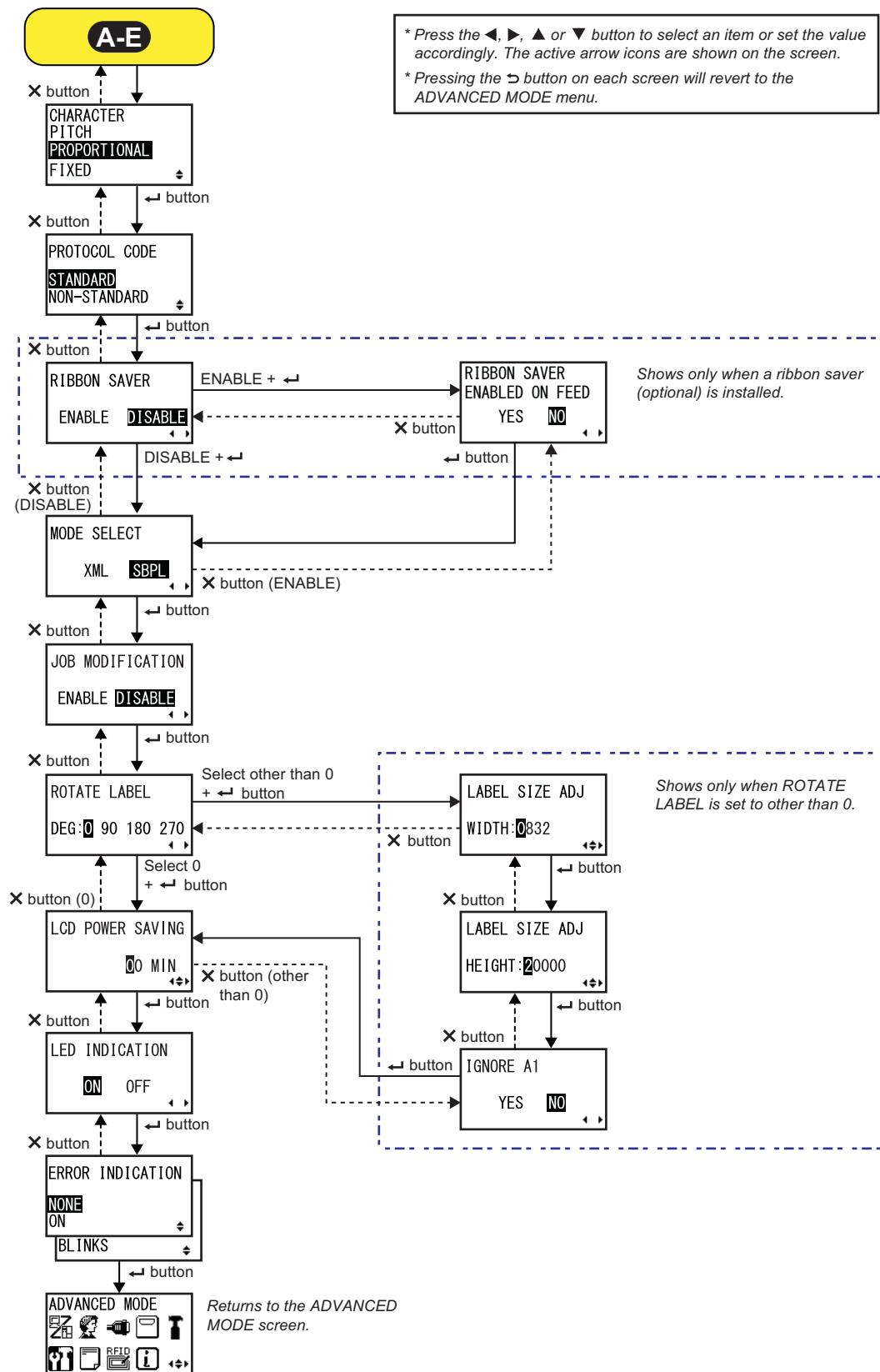
The advanced mode lets you configure the more advanced features of the printer hardware. The flowchart shows the sequence of the setting screens for the advanced mode. The table describes each setting screen in detail.







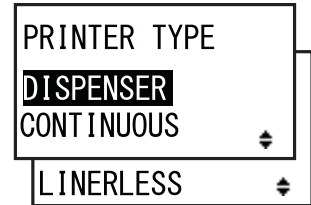




PRINTER TYPE

Set the print mode.

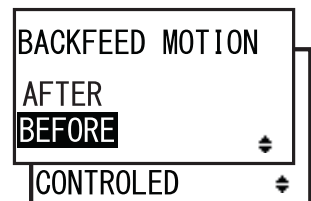
- **DISPENSER**: Peel the liner from the printed label as it is advanced to the printer's front. Once the printed label has been removed by the applicator, the next label will retract and position itself for printing.
- **CONTINUOUS**: Print the specified number of media. The media remains in position for printing at all times.
- **LINERLESS**: Perform backfeed, print and then feed each label to the applicator for cutting. You can specify the distance of FEED OFFSET and BACKFEED OFFSET in the SERVICE MODE menu.



BACKFEED MOTION

Backfeed is applicable only if the print mode is set to dispenser mode.

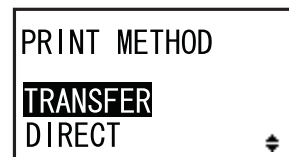
- **AFTER**: Backfeed the front part of the next label after dispensing the label.
- **BEFORE**: Before printing, backfeed the front part of the media to the print head position.
- **CONTROLLED**: When selected, DISPENSER INPUT (9 Pin) and HOME POSITION (3 Pin) are enabled.



PRINT METHOD

Set the print method.

- **TRANSFER**: Print using a ribbon.
- **DIRECT**: Print using direct thermal paper.



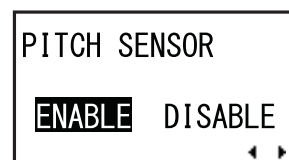
PITCH SENSOR

Enable or disable the pitch sensor.

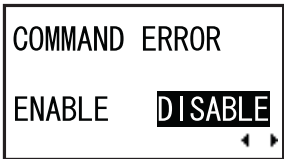
- **ENABLE**: Enable the pitch sensor.
- **DISABLE**: Disable the pitch sensor.

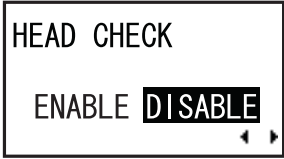
Note

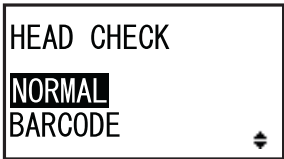
Shows only if PRINTER TYPE is set to CONTINUOUS.



SENSOR TYPE	
Set the type of sensor for sensing the media. • I-MARK: Use the reflective type sensor. • GAP: Use the transmissive type sensor.	

COMMAND ERROR	
Enable or disable the command error indication. This setting determines the printer motion when detecting a command error. • ENABLE: Stops printing when a command error occurs. • DISABLE: Shows a warning icon and continues printing when a command error occurs.	

HEAD CHECK	
This printer can be set to check the print head when printing each media. • ENABLE: Enable the head check function. • DISABLE: Disable the head check function.	

HEAD CHECK	
Automatically check if there is a filament disconnection of the print head. • NORMAL: Check the entire print area. • BARCODE: Check only the area for printing a barcode. Head check is not applicable for barcodes printed as graphic data. CAUTION Head check is a reference for checking for a filament disconnection of the print head. This function does not guarantee barcode readability. Note Shows only if the head check function is enabled.	

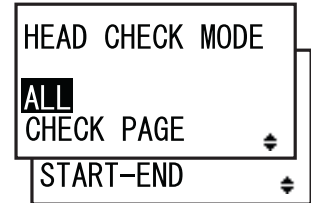
HEAD CHECK MODE

Set the method for the head check.

- **ALL**: Perform the head check for every item.
- **CHECK PAGE**: Perform the head check for each specified number of media.
- **START-END**: The head check occurs before starting to print and when printing is stopped. If backfeed is applicable, the head check occurs before starting to print, when stopping to print and during the backfeed.

Note

Shows only if the head check function is enabled.

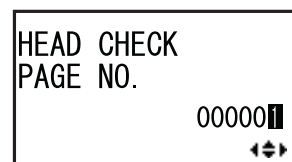


HEAD CHECK PAGE NO.

Specify the number of media between each head check.
The setting range is from 000001 to 999999.

Note

Shows only if HEAD CHECK MODE is set to CHECK PAGE.



EXTERNAL SIGNAL SETTING

Select whether or not to perform the external signal setting.

- **YES**: Proceed to the external signal setting screen.
- **NO**: Proceed to the ZERO SLASH screen.



EXTERNAL SIGNAL

Enable or disable the external signal (EXT) function.

- **ENABLE**: Enable the external signal (EXT) function.
- **DISABLE**: Disable the external signal (EXT) function.

Note

Shows only if PRINTER TYPE is set to CONTINUOUS.



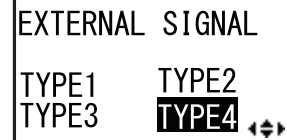
EXTERNAL SIGNAL

Set the output signal type of the print end signal (PREND).
The following options are available:

Type	Operation Details
TYPE1	The print end signal (PREND) is High before label printing, and it becomes Low after print completion. The signal level becomes High after 20 ms.
TYPE2	The print end signal (PREND) is Low before label printing, and it becomes High after print completion. The signal level becomes Low after 20 ms.
TYPE3	The print end signal (PREND) is High before label printing, becomes Low from the start to the end of print, and becomes High again after print completion.
TYPE4	The print end signal (PREND) is Low before label printing, becomes High from the start to the end of print, and becomes Low again after print completion.

Note

- Shows only if the external signal (EXT) function is enabled.
- Refer to the [Timing Chart of the EXT Input Signal](#) for details.



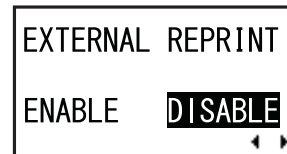
EXTERNAL REPRINT

Set the reprint function by reprint signal (PRIN2) from the external signal.

- **ENABLE:** Enable the reprint when no print quantity is remaining.
- **DISABLE:** Disable the reprint.

Note

The printer will not reprint if a command error occurs.



CONTINUOUS PRINT

Set the reprint function by the print start signal (PRIN) from an external signal.

- **ENABLE:** Enable the continuous print when no print quantity is remaining.
- **DISABLE:** Disable the continuous print.



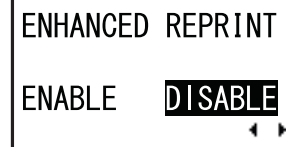
ENHANCED REPRINT

Set the reprint function by the reprint signal (PRIN2) from an external signal.

- **ENABLE:** The printer reprints regardless of the remaining print quantity.
- **DISABLE:** Disable the enhanced reprint.

Note

Shows only if EXTERNAL REPRINT is enabled.



I/O SIGNAL SETTING

Select whether or not to set the pin number for the input/output signal.

- **YES:** Proceed to the INPUT SIGNAL screen.
- **NO:** Proceed to the I/O SIGNALS INITIALIZE screen.



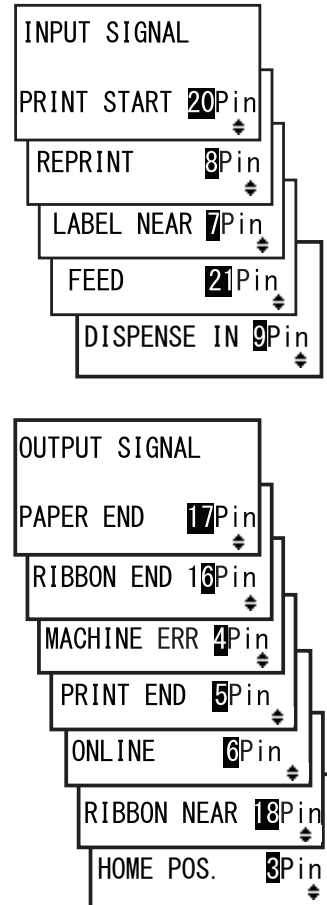
INPUT SIGNAL/OUTPUT SIGNAL

Set the pin number for the input/output signal.
The setting details are as follows:

Signal Name	Input/ Output	Default Pin No.	Overla pping	Available Pin No.
PRINT START	Input	20	Not Allowed	Can be set to 8 or 20.
REPRINT	Input	8	Not Allowed	
LABEL NEAR END	Input	7	Not Allowed	Can be set to 7 or 21. “-”: Function is disabled.
FEED	Input	21	Not Allowed	
DISPENSE INPUT	Input	9	Not Allowed	Can be set to 7, 9 or 21. “-”: Printer operates with PRIN START as a trigger.
PAPER END	Output	17	Allowed	Can be set to 4, 5, 6, 16, 17 or 18. “-”: No output
RIBBON END	Output	16	Allowed	
MACHINE ERROR	Output	4	Allowed	
PRINT END	Output	5	Not Allowed	
ONLINE	Output	6	Allowed	
RIBBON NEAR END	Output	18	Allowed	
HOME POSITION	Output	3	Not Allowed	Can be set to 3, 4, 5, 6, 16, 17 or 18. “-”: No output

Note

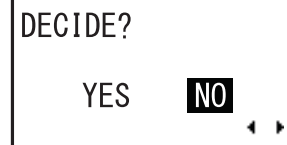
- DISPENSE INPUT and HOME POSITION are available only if CONTROLLED is selected in **BACKFEED MOTION**.
- For details, refer to **Section 8.5 Input/Output Signal of the External Signal**.



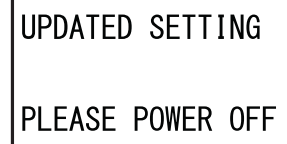
DECIDE?

Select whether or not to confirm the input/output signal setting.

- **YES:** Proceed to the UPDATED SETTING screen.
- **NO:** Returns to the I/O SIGNAL SETTING screen.

**UPDATED SETTING**

This screen shows that the input/output signal setting has been updated. Power on the printer again to make the setting effective.

**I/O SIGNALS INITIALIZE**

Select whether or not to initialize the pin number for the input/output signal.

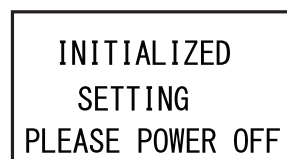
- **YES:** Proceed to the INITIALIZED SETTING screen.
- **NO:** Proceed to the ZERO SLASH screen.

Note

Refer to the default value of the pin number in **INPUT SIGNAL/OUTPUT SIGNAL**.

**INITIALIZED SETTING**

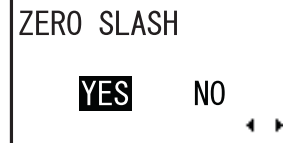
This screen shows that the pin number for the input/output signal has been initialized. Power on the printer again to make the setting effective.



ZERO SLASH

Set whether to print the number zero (0) with or without a slash (/).

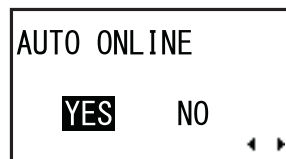
- **YES:** Print zero with a slash.
- **NO:** Print zero without a slash.



AUTO ONLINE

Set the auto online function.
This function sets the printer status at power on.

- **YES:** Start up the printer in online mode.
- **NO:** Start up the printer in offline mode.



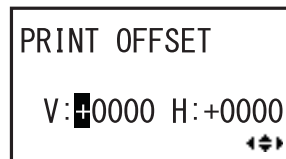
PRINT OFFSET

When setting the print position in the vertical direction "V":
Set the offset value with '+' from the print reference position to move the print position opposite the feed direction and value with '-' to move the print position in the feed direction.

When setting the print position in the horizontal direction "H":
Set the offset value with '+' from the print reference position to move to the left side and value with '-' to move to the right side of the printer (when facing the front of the printer).

The setting range varies depending on the model as follows:

Model	V (dot)	H (dot)
S84-ex (203 dpi)	±0-9999	±0-832
S84-ex (305 dpi)	±0-9999	±0-1248
S84-ex (609 dpi)	±0-9999	±0-2496
S86-ex (203 dpi)	±0-9999	±0-1340
S86-ex (305 dpi)	±0-9999	±0-2010



HEAD DOT DENSITY

Toggle the head dot density from 12 dots/mm to 6 dots/mm and vice versa. The following options are available:

- **100**: Approximately four inches. Effective for S84-ex only.
- **150**: Approximately six inches. Effective for S84-ex and S86-ex.
- **300**: Approximately twelve inches. Effective for S84-ex and S86-ex.

Note

Shows only if the head dot density is 12 dots/mm and **LEGACY COMMAND SUPPORT** is enabled. For details on the legacy command support, refer to **Section 8.3 About Legacy Command Support**.

SET CALENDAR

Select whether or not to set the calendar.

- **YES**: Proceed to the calendar setting screen.
- **NO**: Proceed to the CHARACTER PITCH screen.

Note

Shows only if the calendar IC is installed.

DATE

Set the Year/Month/Date.

The setting range is from 81/01/01 (January 01, 1981) to 80/12/31 (December 31, 2080).

Note

Shows only if YES is selected in the SET CALENDAR screen.

TIME

Set the time in 24 hour format.

The setting range is from 00:00 to 23:59.

Note

Shows only if YES is selected in the SET CALENDAR screen.

CONFIRM CALENDAR

This is the screen to confirm calendar setting. If YES is selected, it goes to the next screen after saving the value. If not, the printer returns to the DATE screen.

Note

Shows only if YES is selected in the SET CALENDAR screen.

CONFIRM CALENDAR
11/01/01 00:00
YES **NO**

CALENDAR DAY OF WEEK CODE

Set the day of the week code for the calendar.
The setting range is from 0 to 9, A to Z, and a to z.
The default value is 1-SUNDAY, 2-MONDAY, 3-TUESDAY,
4-WEDNESDAY, 5-THURSDAY, 6-FRIDAY, 7-SATURDAY.

Select the day using the ▲/▼ buttons, select the day of the week code using the ◀/▶ buttons, then press the ↵ **ENTER** button to confirm the day of week code.

Note

Shows only if YES is selected in the SET CALENDAR screen.

CALENDAR
DAY OF WEEK CODE
SUNDAY **1**

CALENDAR MONTH CODE

Set the month code for the calendar.
The setting range is from A to Z and a to z.
The default value is A-JANUARY, B-FEBRUARY, C-MARCH, D-APRIL,
E-MAY, F-JUNE, G-JULY, H-AUGUST, J-SEPTEMBER, K-OCTOBER,
L-NOVEMBER, M-DECEMBER.

Select the month using the ▲/▼ buttons, select the month code using the ◀/▶ buttons, then press the ↵ **ENTER** button to confirm the month code.

Note

Shows only if YES is selected in the SET CALENDAR screen.

CALENDAR
MONTH CODE
JANUARY **A**

CALENDAR CASE FORMAT

Select the character format for the calendar.

- **MIXED**: Use upper case for the first character only.
- **UPPER**: Use upper case for all characters.

Note

Shows only if YES is selected in the SET CALENDAR screen.



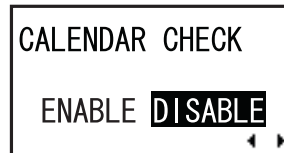
CALENDAR CHECK

Enable or disable the calendar check function.

- **ENABLE**: Enable the calendar check function.
- **DISABLE**: Disable the calendar check function.

Note

Shows only if YES is selected in the SET CALENDAR screen.



CHARACTER PITCH

Set the character width for printing.

- **PROPORTIONAL**: Print each character with a different width.
- **FIXED**: Print all characters with the same width.



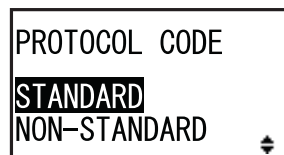
PROTOCOL CODE

Set the protocol code.

- **STANDARD**: Use a standard code.
- **NON-STANDARD**: Use a non-standard code.

Note

To set the non-standard code, send the user download command <LD> in normal mode. For more details on the <LD> command, refer to the Programming Reference.



RIBBON SAVER

Enable or disable the ribbon saver function.

- **ENABLE:** Use the ribbon saver.
- **DISABLE:** Do not use the ribbon saver.

Note

Shows only if the optional ribbon saver is installed. The optional ribbon saver is only available for the S84-ex printer.
For details on the ribbon saver function, refer to [Section 8.10 Optional Ribbon Saver](#).

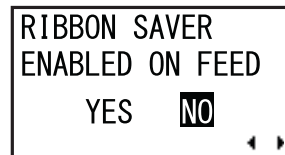
**RIBBON SAVER ENABLED ON FEED**

Enable or disable the ribbon saver function during feed.

- **YES:** Use the ribbon saver during feed.
- **NO:** Use the ribbon saver but not during feed.

Note

Shows only if the optional ribbon saver is installed and enabled. The optional ribbon saver is only available for the S84-ex printer.
For details on the ribbon saver function, refer to [Section 8.10 Optional Ribbon Saver](#).

**MODE SELECT**

Set the communication command mode for analysis.

- **XML:** Use for supporting Oracle and SAP mode.
- **SBPL:** Use SBPL (SATO Barcode Printer Language) for the printer commands.

Note

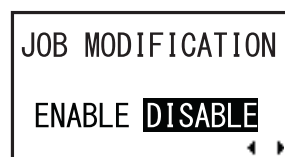
The setting will be effective only if you power on the printer again.

**JOB MODIFICATION**

Set the job modification function.

Use the job modification command <#J> to specify the strings before and after conversion.

- **ENABLE:** Enable the job modification function.
- **DISABLE:** Disable the job modification function.



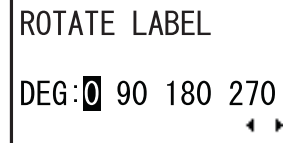
ROTATE LABEL

Set the rotation for printing.

- **0**: Print the data as usual without rotation.
- **90**: Print the data with 90 degree counterclockwise rotation from media feed direction.
- **180**: Print the data with 180 degree counterclockwise rotation from media feed direction.
- **270**: Print the data with 270 degree counterclockwise rotation from media feed direction.

Note

The LABEL SIZE ADJ screen shows if you press the **↵ ENTER** button with 90, 180 or 270 selected.



LABEL SIZE ADJ WIDTH

Specify the width of the label for rotation.
The setting range varies depending on the model as follows:

Model	Setting Range (dot)	Default Value (dot)	Step
S84-ex (203 dpi)	0000-0832	0832	8
S84-ex (305 dpi)	0000-1248	1248	12
S84-ex (609 dpi)	0000-2496	2496	24
S86-ex (203 dpi)	0000-1340	1340	8
S86-ex (305 dpi)	0000-2010	2010	12

Note

Shows only if ROTATE LABEL is set to 90, 180 or 270.



LABEL SIZE ADJ HEIGHT

Specify the height of the label for rotation.
The setting range varies depending on the model as follows:

Model	Setting Range (dot)	Default Value (dot)
S84-ex (203 dpi)	00000-20000	20000
S84-ex (305 dpi)	00000-18000	18000
S84-ex (609 dpi)	00000-09600	09600
S86-ex (203 dpi)	00000-09992	09992
S86-ex (305 dpi)	00000-14988	14988

Note

Shows only if ROTATE LABEL is set to 90, 180 or 270.

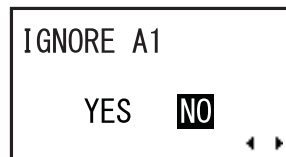
**IGNORE A1**

Select whether or not to ignore the <A1> command.
<A1> command is to set the media size.
Refer to the Programming Reference for details of the command.

- **YES:** Ignore the <A1> command.
- **NO:** Proceed with the <A1> command.

Note

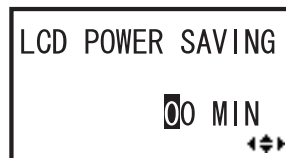
Shows only if ROTATE LABEL is set to 90, 180 or 270.

**LCD POWER SAVING**

Specify a period of time to light off the LCD backlight when the printer is not operated.
The setting range is from 00 to 15 minutes.

Note

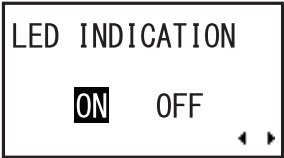
This function is disabled if set to 00; the LCD backlight will remain on. For details, refer to [Section 8.4 LCD Power Saving Mode](#).



LED INDICATION

Set the LED indicator for indicating the printer status.

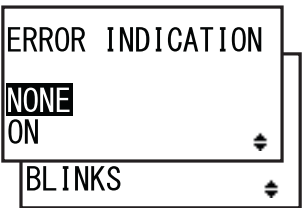
- **ON**: The LED indicator lights, flashes or off according to the printer status.
- **OFF**: The LED indicator is always off.



ERROR INDICATION

Set the LCD backlight for indicating a printer error.

- **NONE**: No change to the LCD backlight.
- **ON**: The LCD backlight lights orange.
- **BLINKS**: The LCD backlight flashes orange.



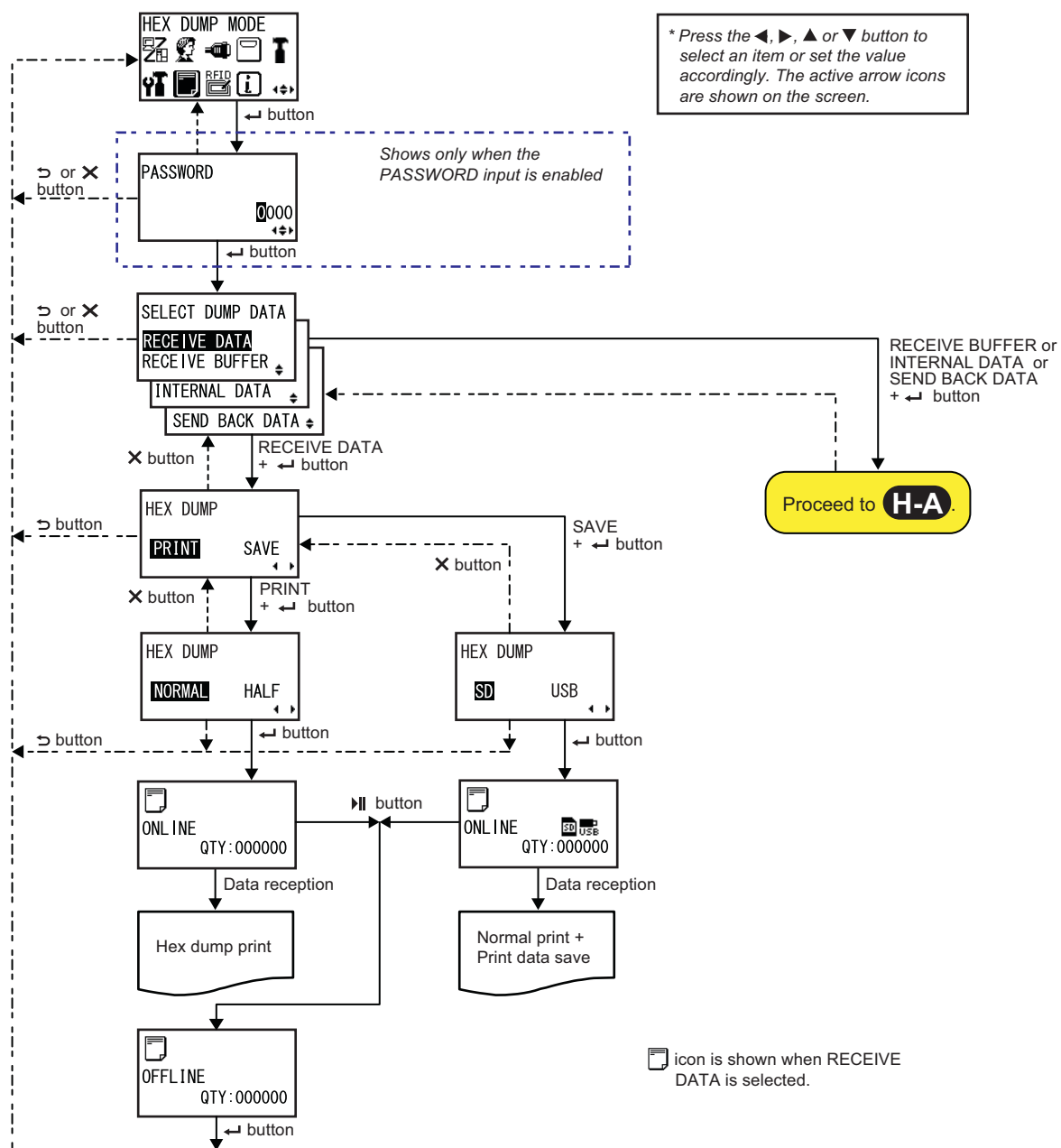
4.2.14 Hex Dump Mode

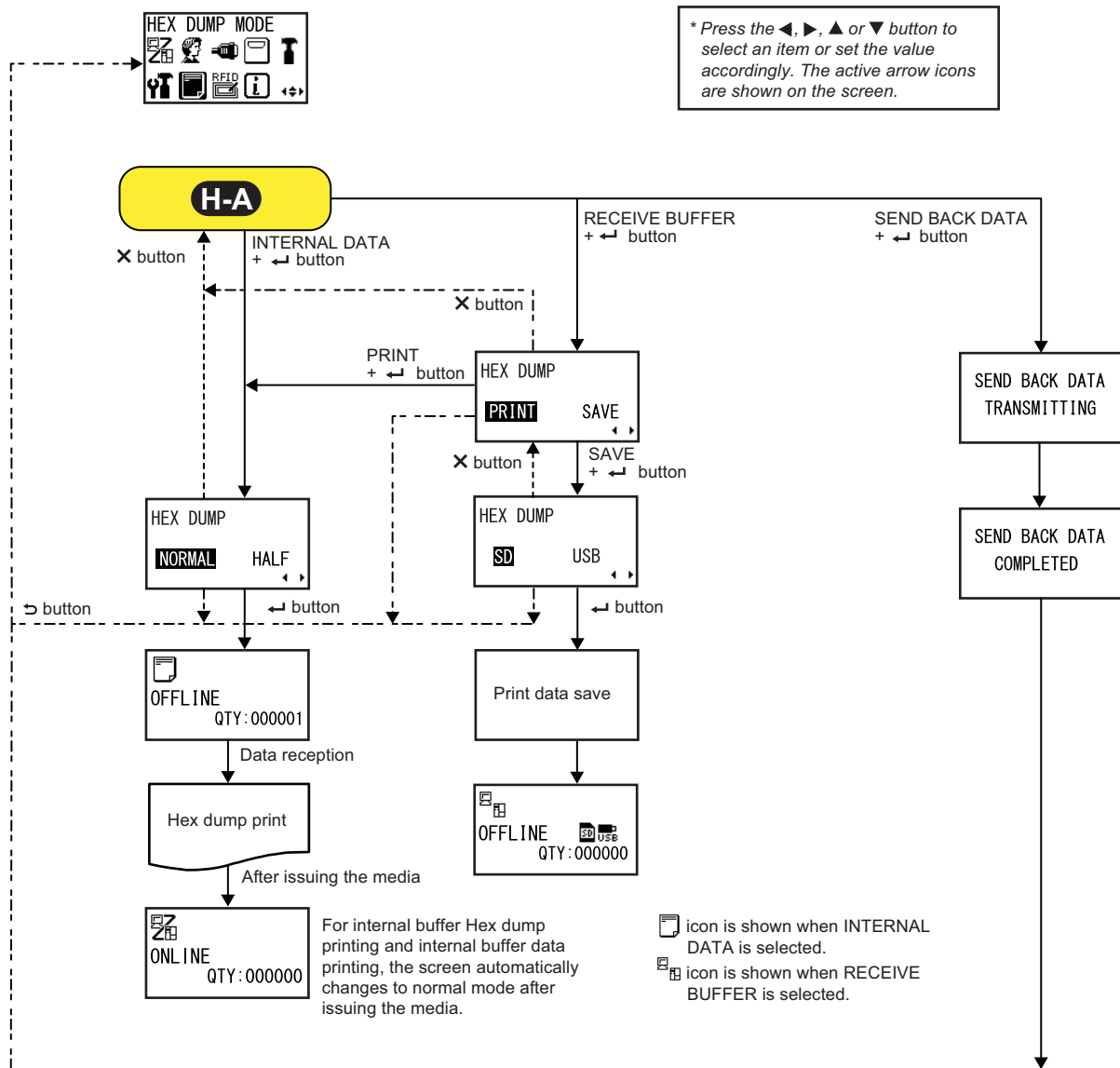
The hex dump mode allows you to print the contents of the receive buffer in a hexadecimal format to allow the data stream to be examined for errors and troubleshooting.

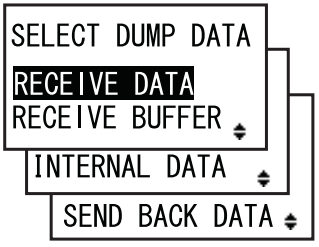
The flowchart shows the sequence of the setting screens for the hex dump mode. The table describes each setting screen in detail.

CAUTION

Be sure to perform a virus check for the USB memory or SD card before connecting it to the printer. SATO Corporation shall not be held responsible for a malfunction of the printer caused by a virus infection through the USB memory or SD card.





SELECT DUMP DATA	
Select the data for printing the hex dump. • RECEIVE DATA: Print the hex dump of the received data. • RECEIVE BUFFER: Print the hex dump of the received print data (one item). • INTERNAL DATA: Print the setting values of the internal buffer. • SEND BACK DATA: Return the received data (one item) to the data port. Note RECEIVE BUFFER and SEND BACK DATA cannot be selected if there is no received data.	

HEX DUMP	
Set the print and save functions of the hex dump. • PRINT: Only print the received data. • SAVE: Save and print the received data.	

HEX DUMP	
Set the print width of the hex dump. • NORMAL: Print the received data with sixteen bytes in one line. • HALF: Print the received data with eight bytes in one line.	

HEX DUMP

Set the memory for saving the hex dump data.
 The file name of the data to be saved is created from "DATA_001.DAT" in sequence.
 A maximum of one hundred hex dump data can be saved.
 When saving file with one hundred files already in the media, the older file starting from the first number (001) will be overwritten in sequence.

- **SD**: Save data to an SD card.
- **USB**: Save data to a USB memory.

Note

- For installation and removal of the memory, refer to [Section 2.8 Installing Optional Memory Storage](#).
- Three beeps will sound if you press the **ENTER** button when the selected memory is not installed.



ONLINE

This screen shows an online status icon if RECEIVE DATA is selected.

HEX DUMP PRINT

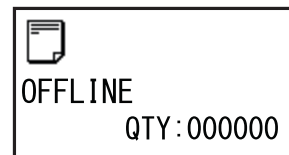


HEX DUMP SAVE



OFFLINE

This screen shows an offline status icon if RECEIVE DATA or INTERNAL DATA is selected.



ONLINE

This screen shows an online status icon if INTERNAL DATA is selected.



OFFLINE

This screen shows an offline status icon if RECEIVE BUFFER is selected.



SEND BACK DATA TRANSMITTING

This screen shows while the printer is transmitting the "SEND BACK DATA".

SEND BACK DATA
TRANSMITTING

SEND BACK DATA COMPLETED

This screen shows that the printer has completed the transmission of "SEND BACK DATA".

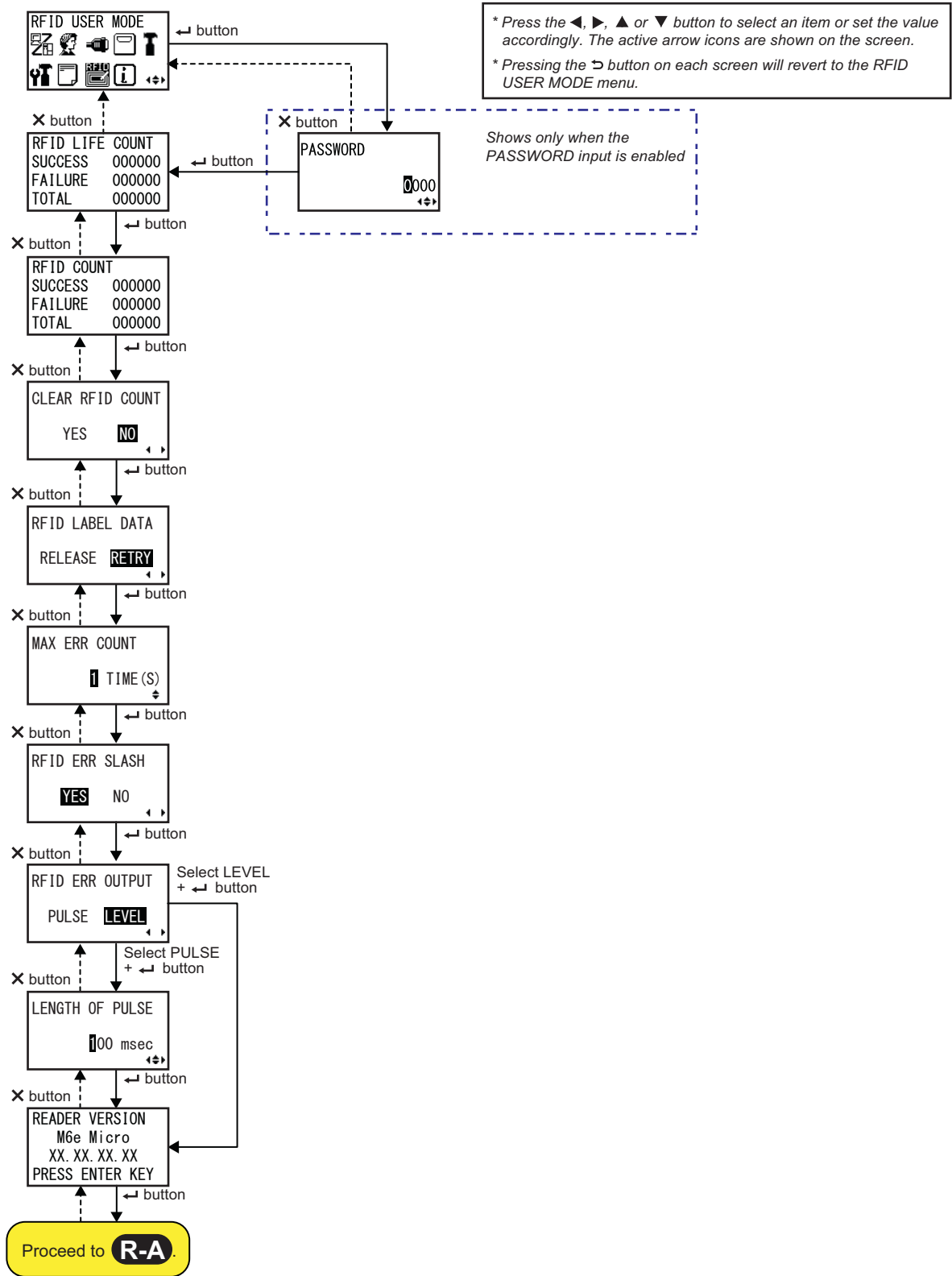
Note

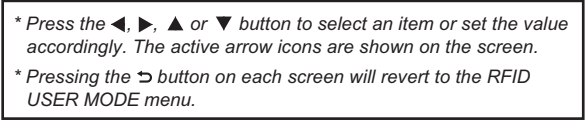
The printer returns to the HEX DUMP MODE screen after three beeps.

SEND BACK DATA
COMPLETED

4.2.15 RFID User Mode

The flowchart shows the sequence of the setting screens for the RFID user mode. The table describes each setting screen in detail.





RFID LIFE COUNT

This screen shows the total accumulated number of RFID write from the factory clear.

- **SUCCESS** shows the total number of write success.
- **FAILURE** shows the total number of write failure.
- **TOTAL** shows the total number of write success and write failure.

When the value of **TOTAL** exceeded 999999, all the values are cleared to 000000.

RFID LIFE COUNT	
SUCCESS	000000
FAILURE	000000
TOTAL	000000

RFID COUNT

This screen shows the current RFID write numbers after the RFID counter is cleared.

- **SUCCESS** shows the number of write success.
- **FAILURE** shows the number of write failure.
- **TOTAL** shows the total number of write success and write failure.

When the value of **TOTAL** exceeded 999999, all the values are cleared to 000000.

RFID COUNT	
SUCCESS	000000
FAILURE	000000
TOTAL	000000

CLEAR RFID COUNT

Select whether or not to clear the current RFID counter.

- **YES**: Proceed to clear the RFID write numbers (SUCCESS, FAILURE and TOTAL).
- **NO**: Do not clear the RFID counter.

Note

The total accumulated number of RFID write in the RFID LIFE COUNT is not cleared.

CLEAR RFID COUNT	
YES	NO

RFID LABEL DATA

Set the recovery operation at RFID tag error, and recovery conditions at when the printer paused due to MAX ERR COUNT (number of retries) exceeding.

The options are as follows:

- **RELEASE**: When an RFID tag error occurs, the printer discards the current writing data and failed label. The RFID error screen shows and continues to print the next data. If the RFID error occurs continuously and reaches the specified MAX ERR COUNT, printing pauses.

Press the **▶|| LINE** button to discard the current writing data and continues to the next print.

Press the **⏏ FEED** button to discard the all data of the current item and continues to the next item printing.

Press the **✕ CANCEL** button to discard all the item data including the current data.

- **RETRY**: When an RFID tag error occurs, the printer attempts to write the same data based on the specified MAX ERR COUNT. If the tag error continues, an error message is shown and the printer pauses.

Press the **▶|| LINE** button to print again.

Press the **⏏ FEED** button to discard the data of the current item and continues to the next item printing.

Press the **✕ CANCEL** button to discard all the item data including the current data.

If the external signal is enabled and MAX ERR COUNT is set to 0, the printer does not display the error message, nor pause at tag error with both RETRY/RELEASE, and continues printing with the external signal.

RFID LABEL DATA

RELEASE **RETRY**

MAX ERR COUNT

Set the number of retries (release/reprint) at the RFID tag error.

The count starts after the RFID tag error occurs.

The printer pauses with the error message when it has reached the specified number of errors.

The setting range is from 0 to 9.

If you set to 0, the RFID error screen shows and printing continues.

MAX ERR COUNT

1 TIME (S)

RFID ERR SLASH

Select whether or not to print a slash on a tag when an RFID tag error occurred.

- **YES**: Prints a slash at the time of RFID tag error.
- **NO**: Do not print a slash at the time of RFID tag error. Only RFID TAG ERROR is printed.

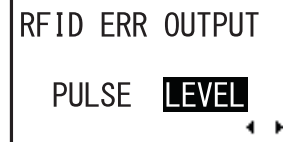
RFID ERR SLASH

YES NO

RFID ERR OUTPUT

Set the output pattern at RFID error.

- **PULSE**: Single shot pulse output.
- **LEVEL**: Flat level output.



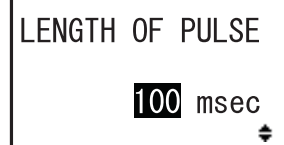
LENGTH OF PULSE

Set the pulse width.

The setting values are 100, 200, 300, 400 and 500 msec.

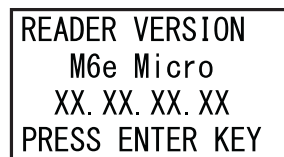
Note

Shows only if PULSE is selected in the RFID ERR OUTPUT screen.



READER VERSION

This screen shows the firmware version of the RFID module.
This screen is not shown correctly when the RFID module is neither connected correctly nor configured correctly.

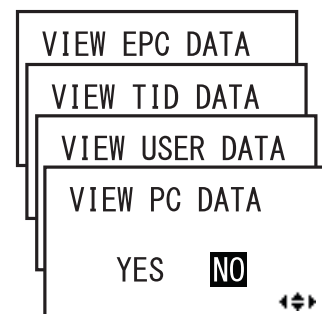


VIEW EPC DATA

Select whether or not to read and show the data of the RFID tag.
Tag needed to be set at the correct position (at antenna position) for correct reading.

Press the ▲/▼ buttons to select the reading area from EPC, TID, USER and PC.

- **YES**: The printer reads and shows the data.
- **NO**: Do not read the data and proceed to the next screen.



TAG DATA

This screen shows the data of the RFID tag.

If the read code is more than thirty-two digits, scroll using the ▲/▼ buttons to show the data.

If reading of the data is failed, NO TAG FOUND is shown.

- **RETRY**: Read the data again.
- **CONTINUE**: Proceed to the next screen.

0123456789ABCDEF
01234567
RETRY **CONTINUE**

NO TAG FOUND
RETRY **CONTINUE**

ANTENNA PITCH

Set the antenna pitch.

- **STANDARD**
- **SHORT**

ANTENNA PITCH
STANDARD SHORT

RFID TAG OFFSET

Set the value of the tag offset.

If the value is set to other than 0, tag writing is done during pause in printing.

The setting range is from 0 to 240 mm.

To release this function, set the value to 0 mm.

RFID TAG OFFSET
000mm

WRITE POWER

Set the write power of the antenna, referring to the “S84-ex UHF Inlay Placement & Configuration Table” in the S84-ex UHF RFID Configuration Guide.

The measurement unit is in dBm, and it is adjustable with 0.1 dBm.

The value converted to milliwatts (mW) is shown on the left.

The setting range differs according to the mounted RFID module.

The setting range is from 0.0 to 24.0 dBm.

WRITE POWER
10mW **10.0dBm**

READ POWER

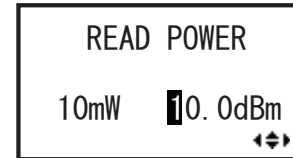
Set the read power of the antenna, referring to the “S84-ex UHF Inlay Placement & Configuration Table” in the S84-ex UHF RFID Configuration Guide.

The measurement unit is in dBm, and it is adjustable with 0.1 dBm.

The value converted to milliwatts (mW) is shown on the left.

The setting range differs according to the mounted RFID module.

The setting range is from 0.0 to 24.0 dBm.

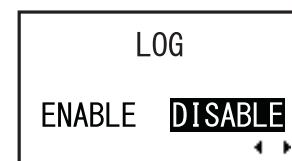


LOG

Enable or disable the log function to record the RFID data.

The log data can record up to 100 tags of information.

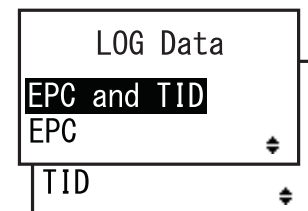
- **ENABLE:** Enable the log function to record the RFID data.
- **DISABLE:** Disable the log function to record the RFID data.



LOG Data

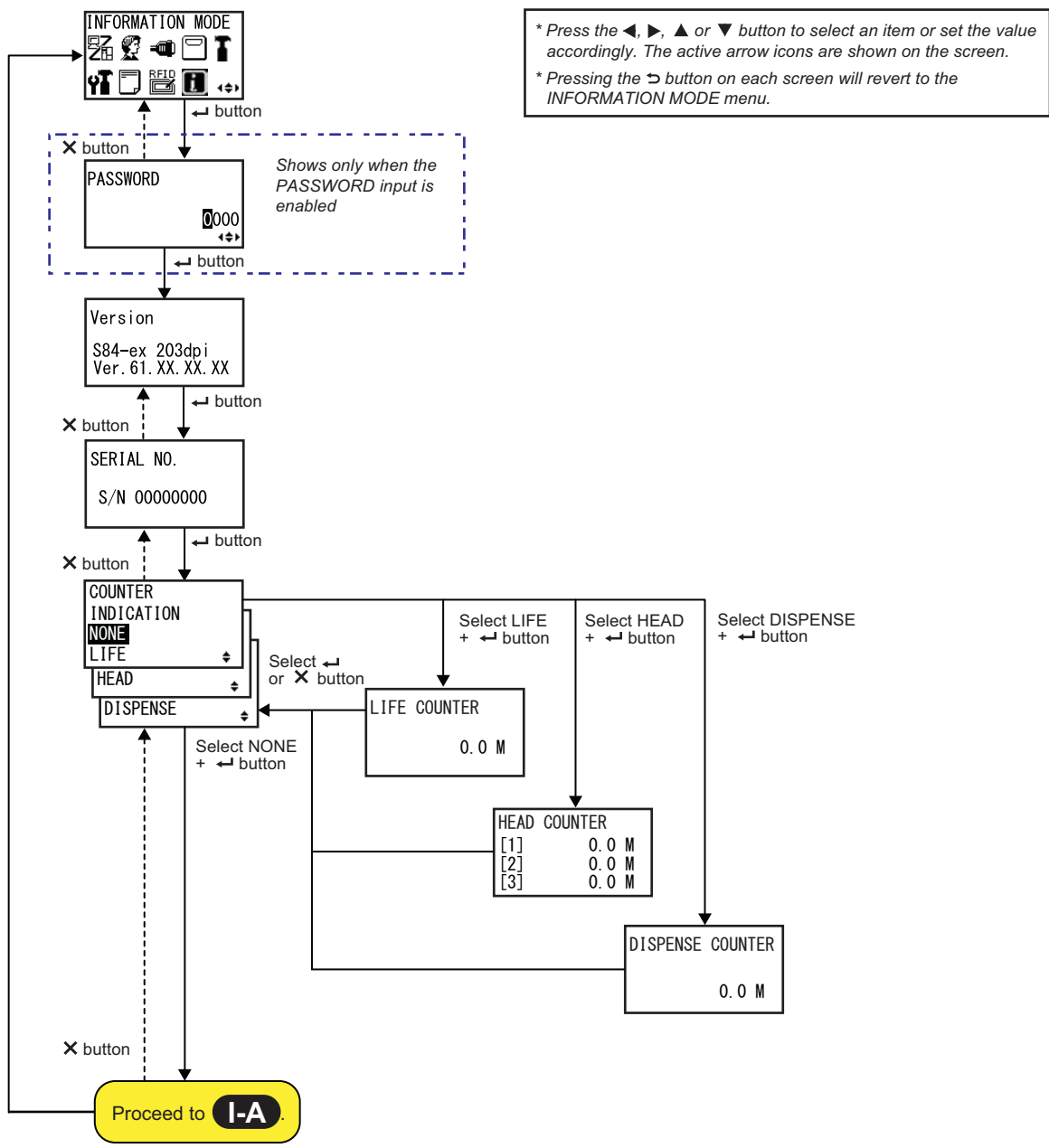
Set the data to be recorded in the log when LOG is enabled.

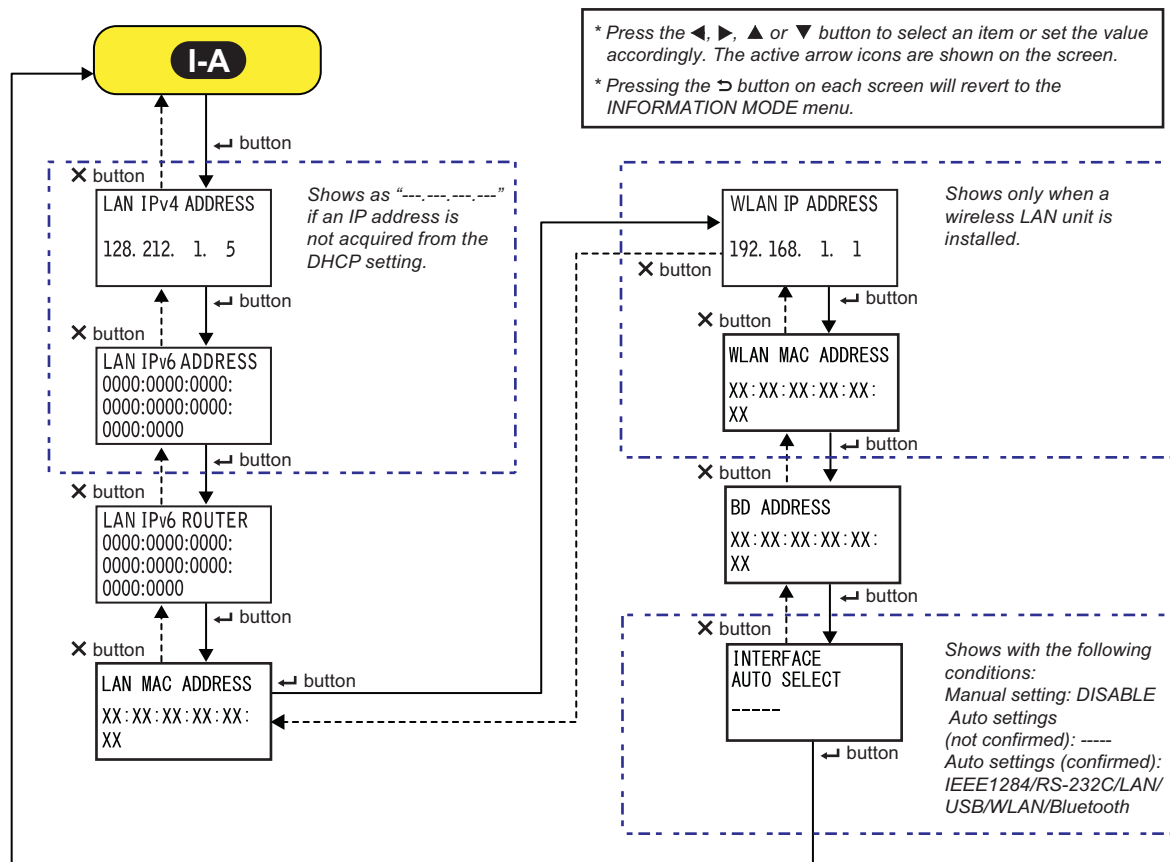
- **EPC and TID:** Store the EPC and TID data.
- **EPC:** Store the EPC data.
- **TID:** Store the TID data.



4.2.16 Information Mode

The flowchart shows the sequence of the setting screens for the information mode. The table describes each setting screen in detail.





Version

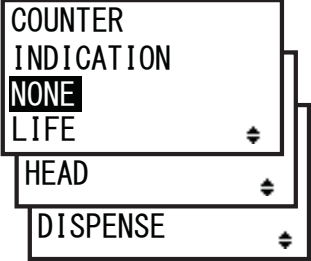
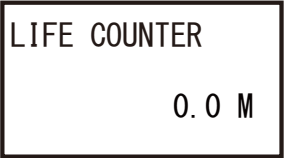
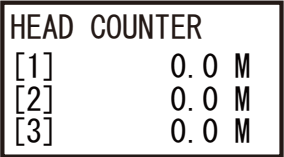
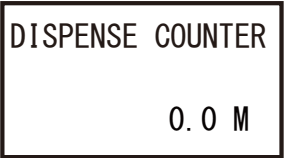
Shows the model name and firmware version of this printer.

Version
S84-ex 203dpi
Ver. 61.00.00.00

SERIAL NO.

Shows the serial number of the control board in this printer.

SERIAL NO.
S/N 00000000

COUNTER INDICATION	
Shows the counter information. Select one of the followings. • NONE: Do not show any counter information. • LIFE: Show the life counter. • HEAD: Show the head counter. • DISPENSE: Show the dispense counter. Note The default selection is NONE.	
LIFE COUNTER	
Shows the life count value saved in the printer.	
HEAD COUNTER	
Shows the head count value saved in the printer.	
DISPENSE COUNTER	
Shows the dispense count value saved in the printer.	

LAN IPv4 ADDRESS

Shows the IPv4 address of the LAN.

Note

If the IP address is not acquired from DHCP, it will be shown as "----.---.---.---".

LAN IPv4 ADDRESS

128. 212. 1. 5

LAN IPv6 ADDRESS

Shows the IPv6 address of the LAN.

Note

If the IP address is not acquired from DHCP, it will be shown as "-----:-----:-----:-----:-----:-----".

LAN IPv6 ADDRESS0000:0000:0000:
0000:0000:0000:
0000:0000**LAN IPv6 ROUTER**

Shows the IPv6 router information for the LAN.

LAN IPv6 ROUTER0000:0000:0000:
0000:0000:0000:
0000:0000**LAN MAC ADDRESS**

Shows the MAC address of the LAN.

LAN MAC ADDRESSXX:XX:XX:XX:XX:
XX

WLAN IP ADDRESS

Shows the IP address of the wireless LAN.

Note

- This screen shows only if a wireless LAN unit is installed.
- DHCP should be enabled to acquire the WLAN IP address.
- The IP address is shown as “---.---.---.---” before it is acquired.
- The dynamic IP address will be shown after it is acquired.
- When the printer fails to acquire the IP address or DHCP is disabled, the static IP address will be shown.

WLAN IP ADDRESS

192.168. 1. 1

WLAN MAC ADDRESS

Shows the MAC address of the wireless LAN.

Note

This screen shows only if a wireless LAN unit is installed.

WLAN MAC ADDRESS

XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:
XX

BD ADDRESS

Shows the BD address.

BD ADDRESS

XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:
XX

INTERFACE AUTO SELECT

Shows the interface auto detection status.

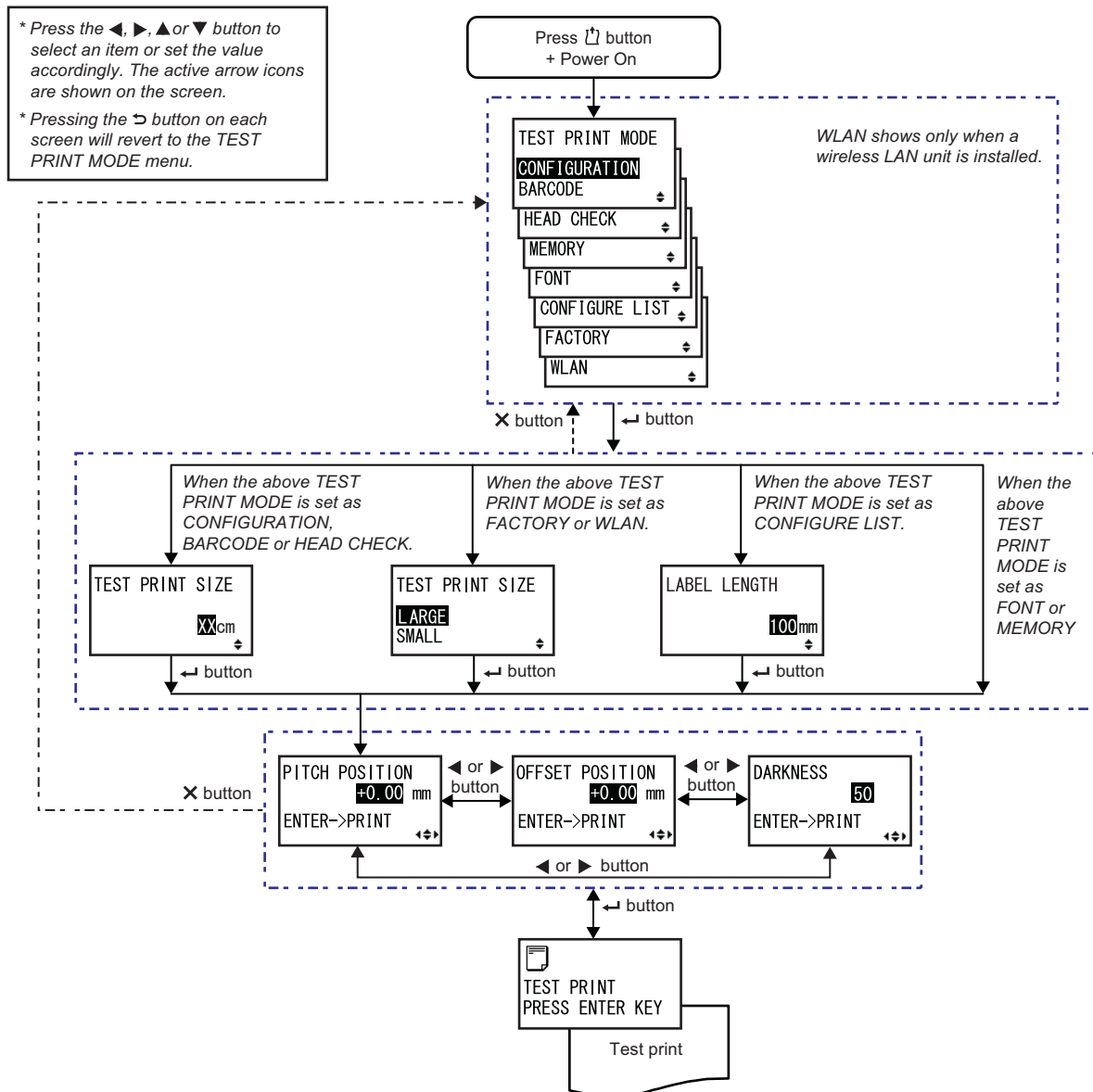
Note

- “-----” shows when the interface is not detected.
- DISABLE shows that the INTERFACE AUTO SELECT function is disabled (manual setting).
- IEEE1284, RS-232C, LAN, USB, WLAN or Bluetooth shows the detected interface.

INTERFACE
AUTO SELECT

4.2.17 Test Print Mode

The flowchart shows the sequence of the setting screens for the test print mode. The table describes each setting screen in detail.



Note

- When EXTERNAL SIGNAL in the ADVANCED MODE menu is set to ENABLE, the printer is unable to perform the test print correctly.
Make sure that the EXTERNAL SIGNAL is set to DISABLE before perform test print.
- When RFID mode is enabled, RFID related information is printed on the second page of the CONFIGURATION test print.

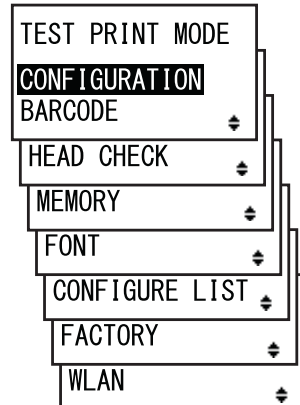
TEST PRINT MODE

Select the test print contents.

- **CONFIGURATION**: Print the configuration settings of the printer.
- **BARCODE**: Print the barcodes installed in this printer.
- **HEAD CHECK**: Print the head check pattern of the selected media size area.
- **MEMORY**: Print the contents of the memory in this printer.
- **FONT**: Print the contents of the fonts installed in this printer.
- **CONFIGURE LIST**: Print the configure list of the printer.
- **FACTORY**: Perform the factory test print.
- **WLAN**: Print the wireless LAN settings of the printer.

Note

WLAN shows only if a wireless LAN unit is installed.



TEST PRINT SIZE

Set the width of the test print in 1 cm steps.

The setting range varies depending on the model as follows:

Model Name	Setting Range (cm)	Default Value (cm)
S84-ex	04-10	10
S86-ex	05-16	16

Note

Shows only if TEST PRINT MODE is set to CONFIGURATION, BARCODE or HEAD CHECK.



TEST PRINT SIZE

Select the width of the test print from LARGE or SMALL.

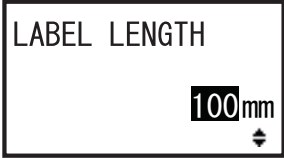
The available width varies depending on the model as follows:

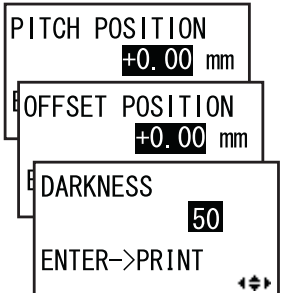
Model Name	LARGE (cm)	SMALL (cm)
S84-ex	10	4
S86-ex	16	5

Note

Shows only if TEST PRINT MODE is set to FACTORY or WLAN.



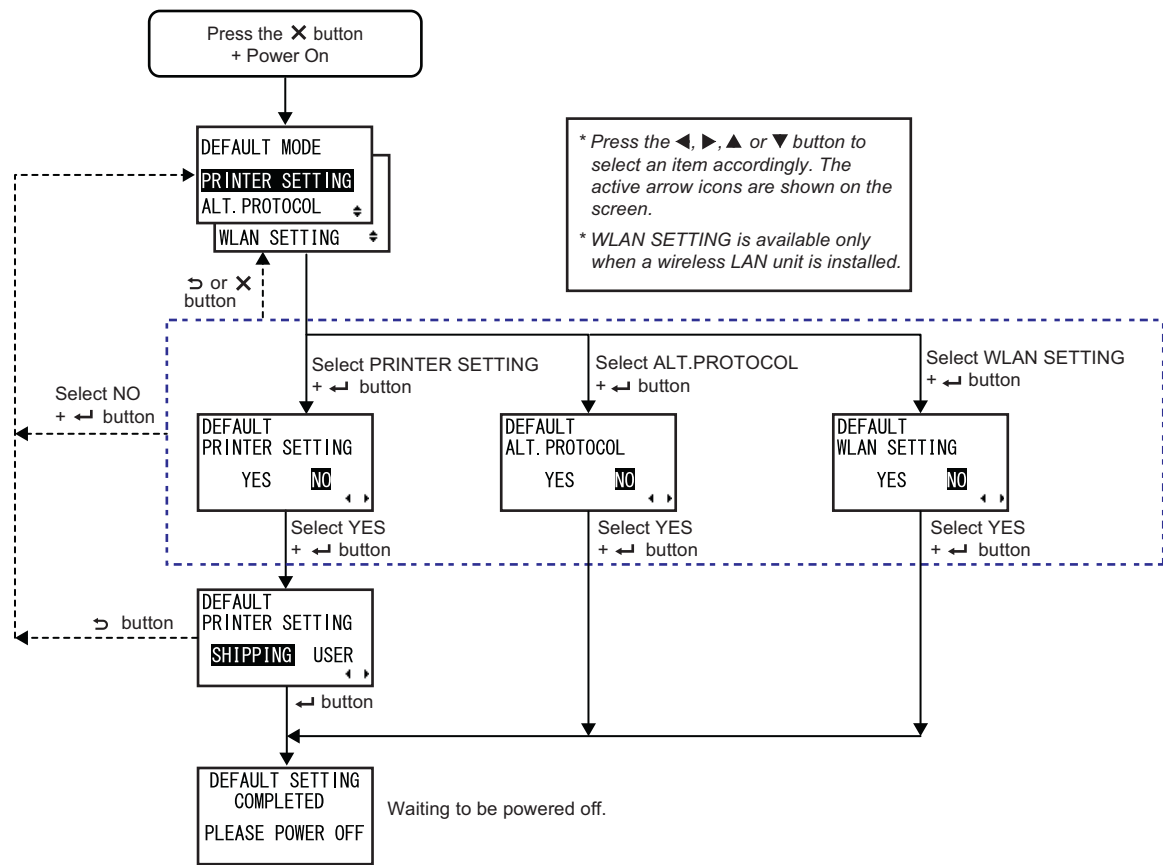
LABEL LENGTH	
Set the length of the test print. The setting range is from 50 mm to 200 mm and is adjustable by 10 mm. Note Shows only if TEST PRINT MODE is set to CONFIGURE LIST.	

PITCH POSITION/OFFSET POSITION/DARKNESS	
Adjust the print position, offset position and print darkness. The setting range for both PITCH POSITION and OFFSET POSITION is ± 3.75 mm (± 0.15") and is adjustable by 0.25 mm (0.01"). The setting range for DARKNESS is from 00 to 99. Note Press the ↵ ENTER button to start the test print.	

TEST PRINT PRESS ENTER KEY	
The test print is in progress. Press the ↵ ENTER button while printing to pause the test print operation. Press the ↵ ENTER button again to continue.	

4.2.18 Default Setting Mode

The printer can be reset to the default setting as in the factory preset. The flowchart shows the sequence of the setting screens for the default setting mode. The table describes each setting screen in detail.



DEFAULT MODE	
Select the item to be initialized. • PRINTER SETTING: Initialize the printer setting. • ALT. PROTOCOL: Initialize the protocol code. • WLAN SETTING: Initialize the WLAN setting. Note WLAN SETTING shows only if a wireless LAN unit is installed.	

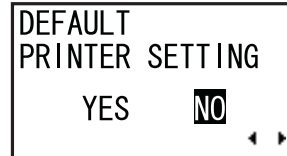
DEFAULT PRINTER SETTING

Select whether or not to initialize the printer setting.

- **YES:** Initialize the printer setting.
- **NO:** Cancel and return to the DEFAULT MODE screen.

Note

Shows only if DEFAULT MODE is set to PRINTER SETTING.

**DEFAULT PRINTER SETTING SHIPPING USER**

Select the initialization type.

- **SHIPPING:** Initialize the printer to the shipping state.
- **USER:** Initialize the printer to the state with the SAVE USER DEF setting.

Note

- Shows only if DEFAULT PRINTER SETTING is set to YES.
- If you have selected USER when the SAVE USER DEF is not registered, the printer will be initialized to the shipping state.

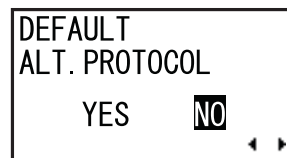
**DEFAULT ALT. PROTOCOL**

Select whether or not to initialize the protocol code.

- **YES:** Initialize the protocol code.
- **NO:** Cancel and return to the DEFAULT MODE screen.

Note

Shows only if DEFAULT MODE is set to ALT. PROTOCOL.

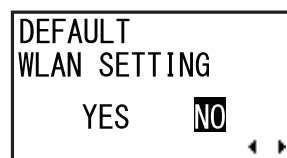
**DEFAULT WLAN SETTING**

Select whether or not to initialize the WLAN setting.

- **YES:** Initialize the WLAN setting.
- **NO:** Cancel and return to the DEFAULT MODE screen.

Note

Shows only if DEFAULT MODE is set to WLAN SETTING.



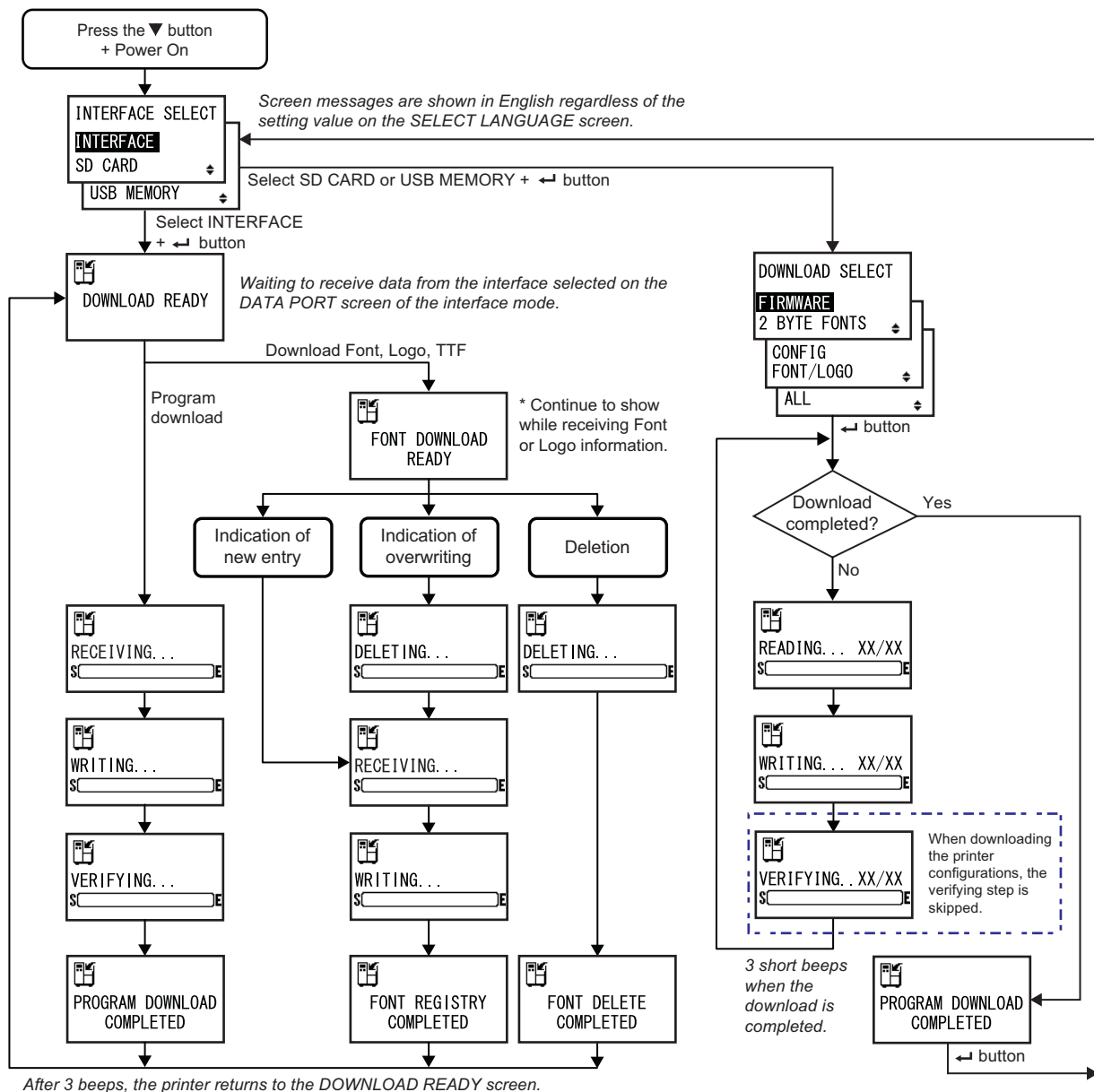
DEFAULT SETTING COMPLETED	
Shows when the initialization has been completed.	DEFAULT SETTING COMPLETED PLEASE POWER OFF
Note The setting will be effective only if you power on the printer again.	

4.2.19 Download Mode

This download feature allows the operator to download data (firmware, font/logo, TrueType font, configuration) from the host computer through the interface, SD card or USB memory and write in the Flash ROM memory. When downloading is complete, the LCD screen will return to the original screen after three seconds. If an error occurs, an error message will show and the reason will be identified. The flowchart shows the sequence of the setting screens for the download mode. The table describes each setting screen in detail.

⚠ CAUTION

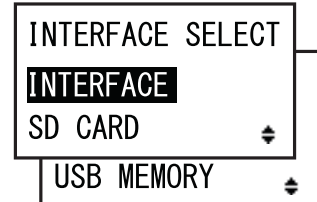
Be sure to perform a virus check for the USB memory or SD card before connecting it to the printer. SATO Corporation shall not be held responsible for a malfunction of the printer caused by a virus infection through the USB memory or SD card.



INTERFACE SELECT

Select the download method.

- **INTERFACE:** Download the program from the interface.
- **SD CARD:** Download the program from an SD card.
- **USB MEMORY:** Download the program from a USB memory.



DOWNLOAD READY

The printer is waiting to receive download data from the interface selected on the DATA PORT screen in the interface mode.
The following data will be received from the PC and written to the main ROM.

- (1) Firmware data
- (2) Font/logo data
- (3) TrueType font

When firmware data is received, it goes to the RECEIVING... screen.
When font, logo and TrueType font are received, it goes to the FONT DOWNLOAD READY screen.

Note

Shows only if INTERFACE SELECT is set to INTERFACE.



FONT DOWNLOAD READY

The printer is waiting to receive font data.
When downloading the font for the first time, it goes to the RECEIVING... screen.
When overwriting or deleting existing font data, it goes to the DELETING... screen.

Note

Shows only if INTERFACE SELECT is set to INTERFACE.

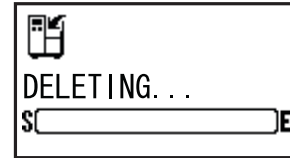


DELETING . .

The printer is deleting the existing font data.
 The bar on the lower portion of the screen indicates the data deletion progress.
 When overwriting font data after deleting, it goes to the RECEIVING... screen.
 When just deleting font data, it goes to the FONT DELETE COMPLETED screen.

Note

Shows only if INTERFACE SELECT is set to INTERFACE.

**RECEIVING . .**

The printer is receiving downloaded data.
 The bar on the lower portion of the screen indicates the data reception progress.
 After receiving downloaded data, it goes to the WRITING... screen.

Note

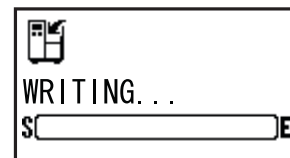
Shows only if INTERFACE SELECT is set to INTERFACE.

**WRITING . .**

The printer is writing downloaded data.
 The bar on the lower portion of the screen indicates the data writing progress.
 After writing downloaded data, it goes to the FONT REGISTRY COMPLETED screen.

Note

Shows only if INTERFACE SELECT is set to INTERFACE.

**VERIFYING . .**

The printer is verifying the firmware data.
 The bar on the lower portion of the screen indicates the data verification progress.
 After verifying the firmware data, it goes to the PROGRAM DOWNLOAD COMPLETED screen.

Note

Shows only if INTERFACE SELECT is set to INTERFACE.



PROGRAM DOWNLOAD COMPLETED

This screen shows the completion of the download.
Three beeps will sound when the program download is completed.
If downloading through INTERFACE, it will return to the DOWNLOAD READY screen.
If downloading through SD CARD or USB MEMORY, press the **← ENTER** button to return to the INTERFACE SELECT screen.

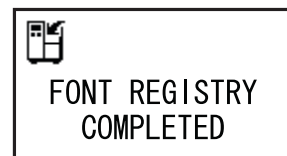


FONT REGISTRY COMPLETED

This screen shows the completion of the font registry.
Three beeps will sound when the font registry is completed.
The printer returns to the DOWNLOAD READY screen.

Note

Shows only if INTERFACE SELECT is set to INTERFACE.



FONT DELETE COMPLETED

This screen shows the completion of the font deletion.
Three beeps will sound when the font deletion is completed.
The printer returns to the DOWNLOAD READY screen.

Note

Shows only if INTERFACE SELECT is set to INTERFACE.



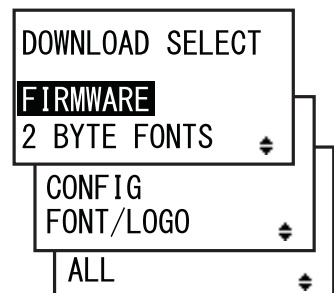
DOWNLOAD SELECT

Select the item to be downloaded.

- **FIRMWARE:** Download "Firmware", "2 byte fonts" and "Outline font".
- **2 BYTE FONTS:** Download "2 byte fonts" and "Outline font".
- **CONFIG:** Download printer configurations.
- **FONT/LOGO:** Download font/logo data.
- **ALL:** Download all data.

Note

Shows only if INTERFACE SELECT is set to SD CARD or USB MEMORY.

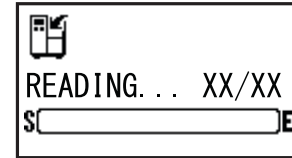


READING. . . XX/XX (DOWNLOAD)

The printer is reading the downloaded data.
 The bar on the lower portion of the screen indicates the data reading progress.
 XX/XX shows the file number being read and total number of files.
 After reading the data, it goes to the WRITING... screen.

Note

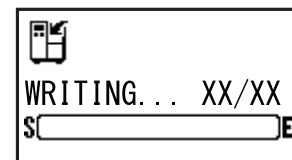
Shows only if INTERFACE SELECT is set to SD CARD or USB MEMORY.

**WRITING. . . XX/XX (DOWNLOAD)**

The printer is writing the downloaded data.
 The bar on the lower portion of the screen indicates the data writing progress.
 XX/XX shows the file number being written and total number of files.
 After writing the data, it goes to the VERIFYING... screen.

Note

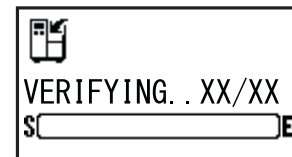
Shows only if INTERFACE SELECT is set to SD CARD or USB MEMORY.

**VERIFYING. . . XX/XX (DOWNLOAD)**

The printer is verifying the downloaded data.
 The bar on the lower portion of the screen indicates the data verification progress.
 XX/XX shows the file number being verified and total number of files.
 After verifying the data, it goes to the PROGRAM DOWNLOAD COMPLETED screen.

Note

Shows only if INTERFACE SELECT is set to SD CARD or USB MEMORY.

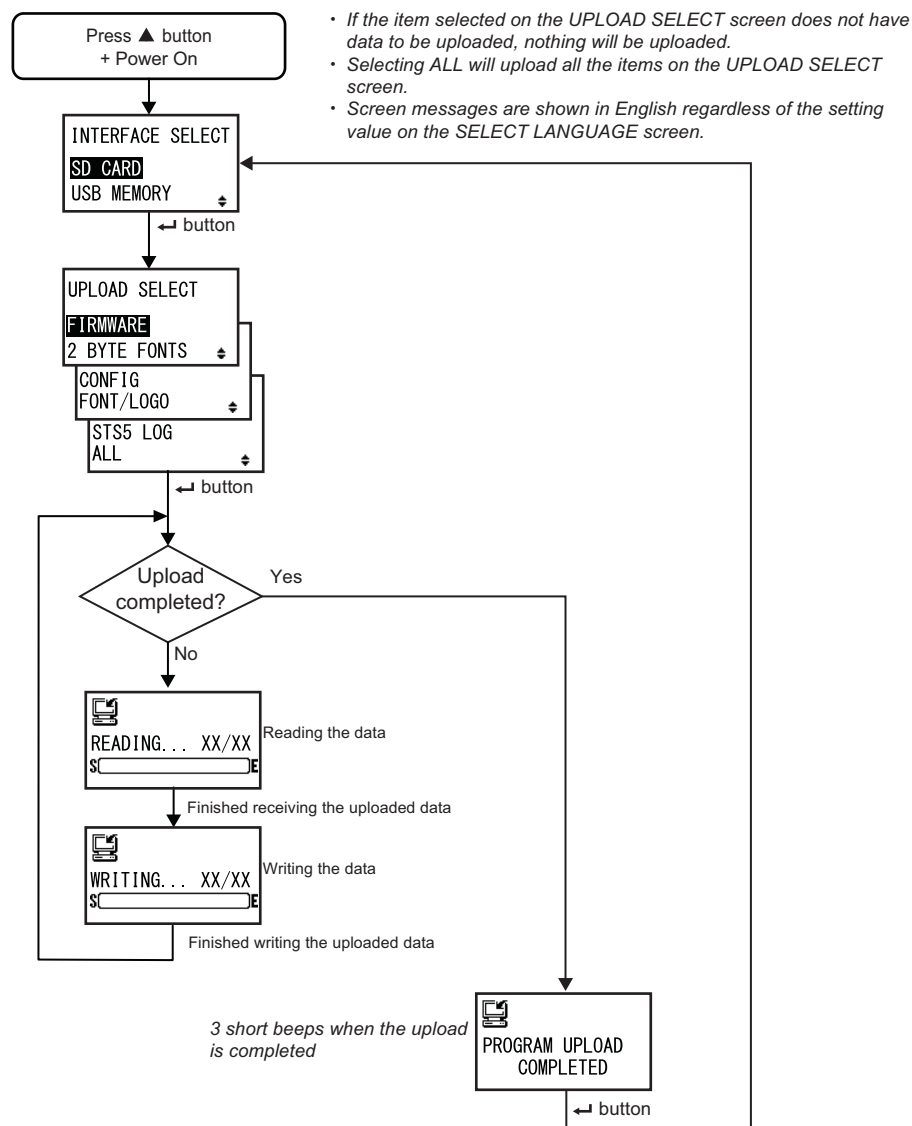


4.2.20 Upload Mode

The upload feature allows the operator to upload data (firmware, font/logo, TrueType font, configuration, status5 log) from the printer and write it to an SD card or USB memory. When uploading is complete, the LCD screen will return to the original screen after three seconds. If an error occurs, an error message will show and the reason will be identified.

CAUTION

Be sure to perform a virus check for the USB memory or SD card before connecting it to the printer. SATO Corporation shall not be held responsible for a malfunction of the printer caused by a virus infection through the USB memory or SD card.



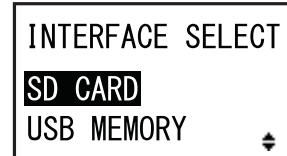
INTERFACE SELECT

Select the upload method.

- **SD CARD**: Upload data to an SD card.
- **USB MEMORY**: Upload data to a USB memory.

Note

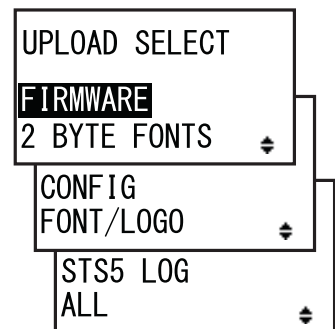
The setting information of the wireless LAN is saved only if the wireless LAN is connected.



UPLOAD SELECT

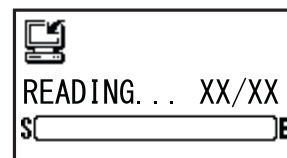
Select the item to be uploaded.

- **FIRMWARE**: Upload "Firmware".
- **2 BYTE FONTS**: Upload "2 byte fonts" and "Outline font".
- **CONFIG**: Upload printer configurations.
- **FONT/LOGO**: Upload font/logo data.
- **STS5 LOG**: Upload Status5 log.
- **ALL**: Upload all data.



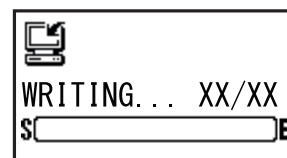
READING . . XX/XX (UPLOAD)

The printer is reading the uploaded data.
The bar on the lower portion of the screen indicates the data reading progress.
XX/XX shows the file number being read and total number of files.
After reading the data, it goes to the WRITING... screen.



WRITING . . XX/XX (UPLOAD)

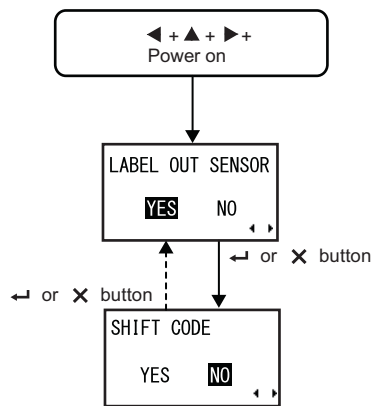
The printer is writing the uploaded data.
The bar on the lower portion of the screen indicates the data writing progress.
XX/XX shows the file number being written and total number of files.



PROGRAM UPLOAD COMPLETED	
This screen shows the completion of the upload. Three beeps will sound when the program upload is completed. Press the ↩ ENTER button to return to the INTERFACE SELECT screen.	 PROGRAM UPLOAD COMPLETED

4.2.21 Hidden Setting Mode

This mode allows the operator access to set the label out sensor status and work shift mode status. The flowchart shows the sequence of the setting screens for the hidden setting mode. The table describes each setting screen in detail.



LABEL OUT SENSOR	
Enable or disable the paper end detection. • YES: Enable the paper end detection. • NO: Disable the paper end detection.	LABEL OUT SENSOR YES NO ↩ ▶

SHIFT CODE	
Enable or disable the work shift setting mode. • YES: Enable the work shift setting mode. • NO: Disable the work shift setting mode. Note For details on the work shift setting mode, refer to Section 4.2.6 Work Shift Setting Mode.	SHIFT CODE YES NO ↩ ▶

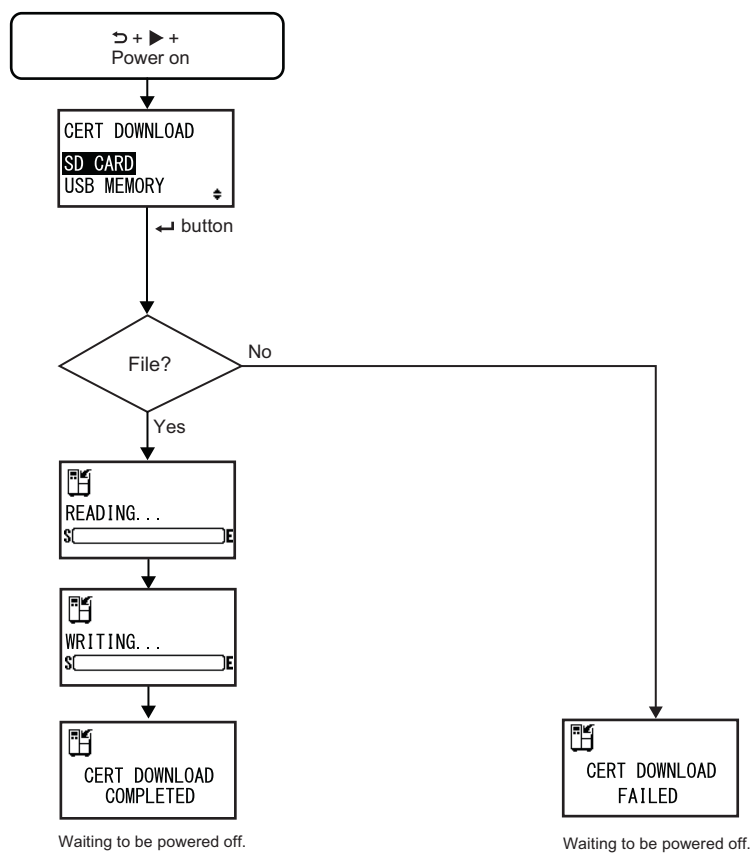
4.2.22 Wireless LAN Certificate Download Mode

This mode allows the user to download the wireless LAN certification data.

The flowchart shows the sequence of the setting screens for the wireless LAN certificate download mode. The table describes each setting screen in detail.

CAUTION

Be sure to perform a virus check for the USB memory or SD card before connecting it to the printer. SATO Corporation shall not be held responsible for a malfunction of the printer caused by a virus infection through the USB memory or SD card.



CERT DOWNLOAD

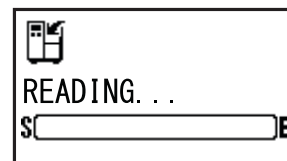
Select the download method of the certification data.

- **SD CARD**: Download data from an SD card.
- **USB MEMORY**: Download data from a USB memory.



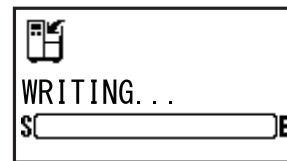
READING. . . (CERT DOWNLOAD)

The printer is reading the certification data.
The bar on the lower portion of the screen indicates the certification data reading progress.



WRITING. . . (CERT DOWNLOAD)

The printer is writing the certification data.
The bar on the lower portion of the screen indicates the certification data writing progress.



CERT DOWNLOAD COMPLETED

This screen shows when the certification data download is completed.

Note

The setting will be effective only if you power on the printer again.



CERT DOWNLOAD FAILED

This screen shows when the certification data download has failed.
Power on the printer and try again.

Note

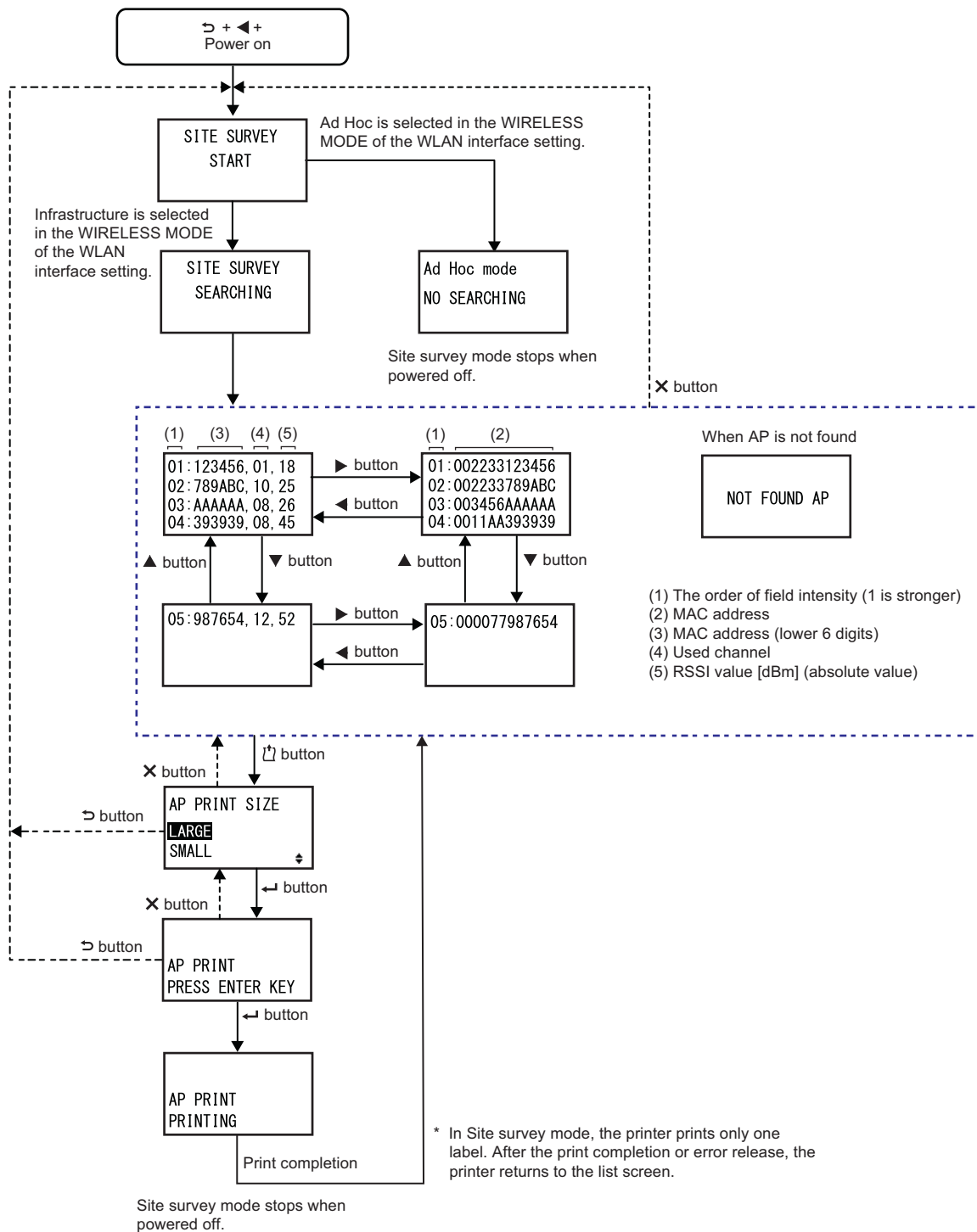
Make sure that there are certification files in the SD card or USB memory.



4.2.23 Site Survey Mode

This mode allows you to acquire the information of access points.

The flowchart shows the sequence of the setting screens for the site survey mode. The table describes each setting screen in detail.



SITE SURVEY START

This is the initial screen of the site survey mode.

Press the **↵ ENTER** button to start the site survey.

If Infrastructure is selected in the WIRELESS MODE of the WLAN interface setting, the printer goes to the SITE SURVEY SEARCHING screen.

If Ad Hoc is selected in the WIRELESS MODE of the WLAN interface setting, the printer goes to the Ad Hoc mode screen.

SITE SURVEY
START

SITE SURVEY SEARCHING

The printer is acquiring information necessary for the site survey.

The field intensity, channel and MAC address for a maximum of sixty-four access points will be searched.

After acquiring the information, the printer automatically goes to the next screen.

Note

Shows only if the WIRELESS MODE of the WLAN interface setting is set to Infrastructure.

SITE SURVEY
SEARCHING

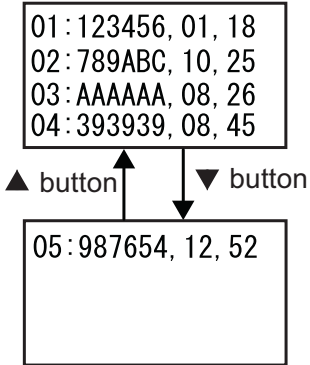
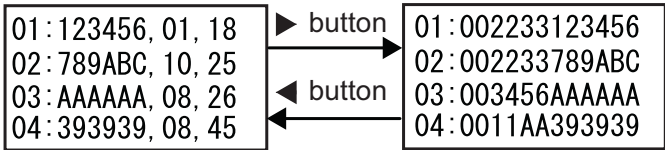
Ad Hoc mode NO SEARCHING

This is a warning screen when the site survey mode is started if the WIRELESS MODE of the WLAN interface setting is set to Ad Hoc. Power on the printer again.

Ad Hoc mode
NO SEARCHING

SITE SURVEY INFORMATION

These screens show the information of the site survey.
In the first line on the upper screen to the right, 01 indicates the strongest field density, 123456 indicates the last six digits of the MAC address, 01 indicates the channel in use and 18 indicates the absolute RSSI value in dBm.
Each screen shows four access points. You can use the ▲/▼ buttons to toggle between screens.
A maximum of sixty-four access points can be shown.
You can show the full MAC address (twelve digits) by pressing the ◀/▶ buttons as shown below.



NOT FOUND AP

This screen shows when the printer cannot find an access point.

Note

Press the ✕ **CANCEL** button to return to the SITE SURVEY START screen and try again.



AP PRINT SIZE

Select the print size for the site survey information.

- **LARGE**: Print the information with a width of 10 cm.
- **SMALL**: Print the information with a width of 4 cm.



AP PRINT PRESS ENTER KEY

The printer is ready to perform printing.
Press the ↵ **ENTER** button to start the test print of the site survey.



AP PRINT PRINTING	
The test print of the site survey is in progress. Note In site survey mode, the printer prints only one label. After the print completion or error release, the printer returns to the list screen.	AP PRINT PRINTING

4.3 Web Configuration

The printer can be operated through a web configuration page using any browser.

With an Ethernet LAN or WLAN connection, users can remotely get information from the printer or perform the printer configuration.

You need the printer IP address to access the web configuration page. Refer to [Section 4.2.16 Information Mode](#) for the printer IP address.

If the printer IP address is 192.168.143.123, open up browser and enter the following URL:
192.168.143.123

When a security certificate is prompted, you must acknowledge and click Continue.

The web configuration page will be shown as follows.

On the upper right of each page, the model name, current resolution and MAC address are shown. Display Status section shows specific information or status of the printer while Printer Configuration section allows users to perform adjustments and other printer operations.

You can view Information, External signal Status and Sensor level pages without logging in.

However, login is required to view Printer Configuration pages such as Adjustment mode and etc.

4.3.1 Information

Information is the default page of web configuration.

The Information page is shown as follows.

Refer to [Section 4.2.16 Information Mode](#).



Ceaseless Creativity for a Sustainable World

Model: **S84-ex 203dpi**
Resolution: 203dpi r(8 dpm)
MAC Address: XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX

Information		Version	Date
Display Status			
Information	Firmware	61.XX.XX.XX	17.04.20
External signal Status	Font		-----
Sensor level			
Printer Configuration	KB Firmware	55.XX.XX.XX	11.08.08
Adjustment mode	Emu Loader	61.XX.XX.XX	15.07.07
User mode	Emu SZPL	61.XX.XX.XX	17.05.08
Interface mode	Emu SDPL	61.XX.XX.XX	17.04.20
Interface mode(SNMP)	Emu SIPL	61.XX.XX.XX	17.04.19
WLAN Setting			
WLAN Certificate			
Memory mode			
Service mode			
Advanced mode			
RFID mode			
Emulation mode	Printer Status	Online	
Printer Config(Read)	Serial number	00000000	
Printer Config(Write)	LAN IPv4 Address	10. 65. 2. 50	
System/Others	LAN IPv6 Address	fe80:0000:0000:0000:0219:98ff:fe11:d771	
Test Print	WLAN IP Address	192.168. 1. 1	
Restart Printer	WLAN MAC Address	00:80:92:62:b4:73	
	BD Address	00:01:90:D8:F7:29	
	INTERFACE AUTO SELECT	LAN	

Life counter	265.2 M
Head1 counter	18.6 M
Head2 counter	0.0 M
Head3 counter	0.0 M

4.3.2 External Signal Status

The External signal Status page is shown as follows.

Refer to [Section 8.5 Input/Output Signal of the External Signal](#).



Model: S84-ex 203dpi
Resolution: 203dpi (8 dpmmm)
MAC Address: XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX

Display Status	External signal Status
Information	
External signal Status	Output information
Sensor level	3PIN 0
	16PIN 1
Printer Configuration	4PIN 1
Adjustment mode	17PIN 1
User mode	5PIN 1
Interface mode	18PIN 0
Interface mode(SNMP)	6PIN 1
WLAN Setting	19PIN 1
WLAN Certificate	
Memory mode	
Service mode	Input information
Advanced mode	7PIN 1
RFID mode	20PIN 1
Emulation mode	8PIN 1
Printer Config(Read)	21PIN 1
Printer Config(Write)	9PIN 1
System/Others	22PIN 1
Test Print	10PIN 1
Restart Printer	23PIN 1

4.3.3 Sensor Level

The Sensor level page is shown as follows.

Refer to [Sensor Level Adjustments on page 122](#).



Ceaseless Creativity for a Sustainable World

Model: S84-ex 203dpi
Resolution: 203dpi (8 dpm)

Display Status

- Information
- External signal Status
- Sensor level

Printer Configuration

- Adjustment mode
- User mode
- Interface mode
- Interface mode(SNMP)
- WLAN Setting
- WLAN Certificate
- Memory mode
- Service mode
- Advanced mode
- RFID mode
- Emulation mode
- Printer Config(Read)
- Printer Config(Write)
- System/Others
- Test Print
- Restart Printer

Sensor level		
I-MARK(E) ADJUST LEVEL		2
I-MARK(R) ADJUST LEVEL		103
I-MARK(R) SLICE LEVEL		0.0[v]
GAP(E) ADJUST LEVEL		2
GAP(R) ADJUST LEVEL		102
GAP(R) SLICE LEVEL		1.4[v]

4.3.4 Adjustment Mode

Login is required to view this page. Enter the correct user name and password to log in.
The default user name and password are as follows:
User Name:admin
Password:admin

Authentication Required

The server http://10.45.2.1:8080 requires a username and password. The server says: S86-ex 203dpi .

User Name:

Password:

Log In

Cancel

After logging in, the Adjustment mode page is shown as follows.
Refer to [Section 4.2.5 Adjustment Mode](#).


Ceaseless Creativity for a Sustainable World

Model: S84-ex 203dpi
Resolution: 203dpi (8 dpm)
MAC Address: XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX

Display Status

Information

External signal Status

Sensor level

Printer Configuration

Adjustment mode

User mode

Interface mode

Interface mode(SNMP)

WLAN Setting

WLAN Certificate

Memory mode

Service mode

Advanced mode

RFID mode

Emulation mode

Printer Config(Read)

Printer Config(Write)

System/Others

Test Print

Restart Printer

Adjustment mode

PITCH POSITION

0

[-3.75 - 3.75]

OFFSET POSITION

0

[-3.75 - 3.75]

DARKNESS

50

[0 - 99]

Submit

4.3.5 User Mode

Login is required to view this page. Enter the correct user name and password to log in as shown in [Section 4.3.4 Adjustment Mode](#).

After logging in, the User mode page is shown as follows.

Refer to [Section 4.2.9 User Mode](#).



Ceaseless Creativity for a Sustainable World

Model: S84-ex 203dpi
Resolution: 203dpi (8 dpm)
MAC Address: XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX

Display Status

Information

External signal Status

Sensor level

Printer Configuration

Adjustment mode

User mode

Interface mode

Interface mode(SNMP)

WLAN Setting

WLAN Certificate

Memory mode

Service mode

Advanced mode

RFID mode

Emulation mode

Printer Config(Read)

Printer Config(Write)

System/Others

Test Print

Restart Printer

User mode

PRINT SPEED

PRINT DARKNESS

PITCH OFFSET

CHARACTER CODE

2 BYTE FONTS

(ONLY GB18030)

NOTICE FUNCTION(CLEAN PRINTER)

NOTICE FUNCTION

NOTICE DISTANCE

m

NOTICE FUNCTION(CHANG ROLLER)

NOTICE FUNCTION

NOTICE DISTANCE

km

NOTICE FUNCTION(CHANG HEAD)

NOTICE FUNCTION

NOTICE DISTANCE

km

4.3.6 Interface Mode

Login is required to view this page. Enter the correct user name and password to log in as shown in [Section 4.3.4 Adjustment Mode](#).

After logging in, the Interface mode page is shown as follows.

Refer to [Section 4.2.10 Interface Mode](#).

Model: S84-ex 203dpi
 Resolution: 203dpi (8 dpmm)
 MAC Address: XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX



Ceaseless Creativity for a Sustainable World

Display Status

Information

External signal Status

Sensor level

Interface mode

INTERFACE AUTO SELECT ENABLE ▼

IGNORE CR/LF NO ▼

IGNORE CAN/DLE NO ▼

PORT SELECT(DATA PORT) LAN ▼

PORT SELECT(SUB PORT) NONE ▼

LAN(DATA PORT/SUB PORT)

DHCPv4 SETTING ENABLE ▼

IPv4 ADDRESS 192.168.1.1

IPv4 SUBNET MASK 255.255.255.0

IPv4 GATEWAY ADDRESS 0.0.0.0

IPv6 RESOLUTION AUTO ▼

IPv6 ADDRESS 0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000

Prefix 064

DEFAULT ROUTER 0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000

PORT NUMBER1 01024

[1 - 65535]

PORT NUMBER2 01025

[1 - 65535]

PORT NUMBER3 09100

[1 - 65535]

PROTOCOL STATUS5 ▼

STATUS REPLY TIMING ENQ ▼

ITEM NO.CHECK DISABLE ▼

BCC CHECK DISABLE ▼

LEGACY STATUS FOR PORT 9100 DISABLE ▼

SNTP

SNTP FUNCTION DISABLE ▼

IPv4/6 select IPv4 ▼

NTP IPv4 ADDRESS 0.0.0.0

NTP IPv6 ADDRESS 0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000

TIME ZONE

HOUR 0 ▼ MINUTE 0 ▼

ERROR NOTICE DISABLE ▼

Submit Note : Reapply the setting data update after the system reboots.

4.3.7 Interface Mode (SNMP)

Login is required to view this page. Enter the correct user name and password to log in as shown in [Section 4.3.4 Adjustment Mode](#).

After logging in, the Interface mode (SNMP) page is shown as follows (continued to the next page). Refer to [SNMP FUNCTION on page 84](#).

 Ceaseless Creativity for a Sustainable World		Model: S84-ex 203dpi Resolution: 203dpi (8 dpm) MAC Address: XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX	
Display Status Information External signal Status Sensor level		Interface mode(SNMP)	
		SNMP	
		SNMP FUNCTION DISABLE ▼	
		PRINTER INFORMATION	
		NAME	SATO S84-ex
		LOCATION	
		CONTACT	
		ENGINE ID	999999990500199811D7712E5361746F
		SNMP setting	
		Community 1	
		COMMUNITY	public
		WRITE	DISABLE ▼
		Community 2	
		COMMUNITY	
		WRITE	DISABLE ▼
		SNMPv3 User 1	
		USER NAME	
		AUTH PROTOCOL	NONE ▼
		AUTH KEY	
		PRIVACY PROTOCOL	NONE ▼
		PRIVACY KEY	
		WRITE	DISABLE ▼
		SNMPv3 User 2	
		USER NAME	
		AUTH PROTOCOL	NONE ▼
		AUTH KEY	
		PRIVACY PROTOCOL	NONE ▼
		PRIVACY KEY	
		WRITE	DISABLE ▼

Display Status	SNMP Trap setting		
	Trap 1		
	FUNCTION	DISABLE ▼	
	TYPE SELECT	SNMPv2c ▼	
	COMMUNITY/USER NAME		
	AUTH PROTOCOL	NONE ▼	
	AUTH KEY		
	PRIVACY PROTOCOL	NONE ▼	
	PRIVACY KEY		
	IPv4/6 SELECT	IPv4 ▼	
	IP Address	0.0.0.0	
Printer Configuration	Trap 2		
	FUNCTION	DISABLE ▼	
	TYPE SELECT	SNMPv2c ▼	
	COMMUNITY/USER NAME		
	AUTH PROTOCOL	NONE ▼	
	AUTH KEY		
	PRIVACY PROTOCOL	NONE ▼	
	PRIVACY KEY		
	IPv4/6 SELECT	IPv4 ▼	
		IP Address	0.0.0.0
	Trap 3		
	FUNCTION	DISABLE ▼	
	TYPE SELECT	SNMPv2c ▼	
	COMMUNITY/USER NAME		
	AUTH PROTOCOL	NONE ▼	
	AUTH KEY		
	PRIVACY PROTOCOL	NONE ▼	
	PRIVACY KEY		
	IPv4/6 SELECT	IPv4 ▼	
	IP Address	0.0.0.0	
Submit Note : Reapply the setting data update after the system reboots.			

4.3.8 WLAN Setting

Login is required to view this page. Enter the correct user name and password to log in as shown in [Section 4.3.4 Adjustment Mode](#).

After logging in, the WLAN Setting page is shown as follows (continued to the next page).

Refer to [Section 8.1.14 Wireless LAN Setting](#).

 Ceaseless Creativity for a Sustainable World		Model: S86-ex 203dpi Resolution: 203dpi (8 dpm) MAC Address: XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX		
Display Status Information External signal Status Sensor level Printer Configuration Adjustment mode User mode Interface mode Interface mode(SNMP) WLAN Setting WLAN Certificate Memory mode Service mode Advanced mode RFID mode Emulation mode Printer Config(Read) Printer Config(Write) System/Others Test Print Restart Printer	WLAN Setting			
	TCP/IP Config			
	IP ADDRESS	192.168.1.1		
	SUBNET MASK	255.255.255.0		
	GATEWAY ADDRESS	192.168.1.2		
	DHCP/BOOTP PROTOCOL	DISABLE		▼
	Wireless LAN Config			
	WIRELESS MODE	AdHoc		▼
	SSID	SATO_PRINTER		⌵
	CHANNEL	6		▼
Network Authentication	Open System		▼	
WEP Key Config				
Use WEP	DISABLE		▼	
KEY INDEX	1		▼	
KEY1				
KEY2				
KEY3				
KEY4				
WPA/WPA2 Config				
WPA MODE	PSK		▼	
Encryption	TKIP		▼	
Pre-Shared Key				

802.1x Config	
802.1x Authentication	DISABLE ▼
Authentication Mode	EAP-TLS ▼
USER NAME	
PASSWORD	
WPA 802.1x Config	
Authentication Mode	EAP-TLS ▼
USER NAME	
PASSWORD	
802.1x Pre-Authentication	DISABLE ▼
802.1x - TTLS Config	
Inner Authentication	PAP ▼
Server Auth Enable	OFF ▼
802.1x - PEAP Config	
Inner Authentication	MSCHAPv2 ▼
Server Auth Enable	OFF ▼
802.1x - FAST Config	
PAC auto-provisioning	OFF ▼
Submit Note : Reapply the setting data update after the system reboots.	

4.3.9 WLAN Certificate

Login is required to view this page. Enter the correct user name and password to log in as shown in [Section 4.3.4 Adjustment Mode](#).

After logging in, the WLAN Certificate page is shown as follows.

Refer to [Section 4.2.22 Wireless LAN Certificate Download Mode](#).



Ceaseless Creativity for a Sustainable World

Model: S86-ex 203dpi
Resolution: 203dpi (8 dpmm)
MAC Address: XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX

Display Status

Information

External signal Status

Sensor level

Printer Configuration

Adjustment mode

User mode

Interface mode

Interface mode(SNMP)

WLAN Setting

WLAN Certificate

Memory mode

Service mode

Advanced mode

RFID mode

Emulation mode

Printer Config(Read)

Printer Config(Write)

System/Others

Test Print

Restart Printer

WLAN Certificate

1. Select a file type, input the password, and press "Select".

Select a file type ▼

Client Certificate

PASSWORD

Secret Key File

PASSWORD

PAC File

PASSWORD Select

2. Select a file and press "Submit".

Selected file type

Select a file Choose File No file chosen Submit

4.3.10 Memory Mode

Login is required to view this page. Enter the correct user name and password to log in as shown in [Section 4.3.4 Adjustment Mode](#).

After logging in, the Memory mode page is shown as follows.

Refer to [Section 4.2.11 Memory Mode](#).



Model: S86-ex 203dpi
Resolution: 203dpi (8 dpmm)
MAC Address: XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX

Display Status

Information
External signal Status
Sensor level

Printer Configuration

Adjustment mode
User mode
Interface mode
Interface mode(SNMP)
WLAN Setting
WLAN Certificate
Memory mode
Service mode
Advanced mode
RFID mode
Emulation mode
Printer Config(Read)
Printer Config(Write)
System/Others
Test Print
Restart Printer

Memory mode

CARD SLOT SELECT SLOT0
CARD SLOT SELECT SLOT1
CARD SLOT SELECT SLOT2

RAM

FROM

SD

Submit

4.3.11 Service Mode

Login is required to view this page. Enter the correct user name and password to log in as shown in [Section 4.3.4 Adjustment Mode](#).

After logging in, the Service mode page is shown as follows (continued to the next page).

Refer to [Section 4.2.12 Service Mode](#).



Model: S86-ex 203dpi
 Resolution: 203dpi (8 dpmm)
 MAC Address: XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX

Display Status

Information

External signal Status

Sensor level

Printer Configuration

Adjustment mode

User mode

Interface mode

Interface mode(SNMP)

WLAN Setting

WLAN Certificate

Memory mode

Service mode

Advanced mode

RFID mode

Emulation mode

Printer Config(Read)

Printer Config(Write)

System/Others

Test Print

Restart Printer

Service mode

Module Firmware Setting

MODULE FIRMWARE

STD FIRMWARE ▼

Setting

AUTO ONLINE FEED	NO ▼
FEED ON ERROR	YES ▼
FUNCTION KEY	NONE ▼
REPRINT W/FEED	NO ▼
CALENDER REPRINT	YES ▼
FORWARD/BACKFEED DISTANCE	000
	[0 - 255]
DEFAULT	DEFAULT ▼
EXT 9PIN SELECT	MODE1 ▼
BACKFEED SPEED	FAST ▼
EURO CODE	D5
	[0 - FF]
SELECT LANGUAGE	ENGLISH ▼
PRIORITY SETTING	COMMAND ▼
RIBBON NEAR END	ENABLE ▼
LABEL RE-DETECT	ENABLE ▼
SET PASSWORD	OFF ▼
PASSWORD NO.	0000
LEGACY COMMAND SUPPORT	OFF ▼
COMPATIBLE MODE HEAD SIZE	NORMAL ▼
COMPATIBLE MODE DARKNESS	ENABLE ▼
COMPATIBLE MODE DARKNESS(MODEL)	M8485/90/60/65Se ▼

MEDIA LENGTH	0178
TRACE MODE	DISABLE ▼
SAVE PRINT LOG	DISABLE ▼
MEMORY SELECT	SD ▼
OUTPUT PRINT LOG FROM SUBPORT	DISABLE ▼
RIBBON TENSION ADJUSTMENT	12 [0 - 15]
THROUGHPUT	NORMAL ▼
FEED OFFSET	000 [0 - 250]
BACKFEED OFFSET	000 [0 - 250]
TOTAL QTY DISPLAY	NO ▼
PLUG & PLAY	ENABLE ▼
REGION CODE	US ▼
REPLY PERIOD	NORMAL ▼
ENQ REPLY DELAY TIME	0000 [0 - 9999]
FONT SELECT GB18030	YES ▼
FONT SELECT BIG5	YES ▼
FONT SELECT KSX1001	YES ▼
HEAD SELECT(S86-ex)	KPJ-168-8SA08- ▼

Please verify via label on print head, prior to making any changes to this setting.

Note : Reapply the setting data update after the system reboots.

4.3.12 Advanced Mode

Login is required to view this page. Enter the correct user name and password to log in as shown in [Section 4.3.4 Adjustment Mode](#).

After logging in, the Advanced mode page is shown as follows (continued to the next two pages). Refer to [Section 4.2.13 Advanced Mode](#).



Model: S86-ex 203dpi
 Resolution: 203dpi (8 dpmm)
 MAC Address: XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX

Display Status

Information

External signal Status

Sensor level

Printer Configuration

Adjustment mode

User mode

Interface mode

Interface mode(SNMP)

WLAN Setting

WLAN Certificate

Memory mode

Service mode

Advanced mode

RFID mode

Emulation mode

Printer Config(Read)

Printer Config(Write)

System/Others

Test Print

Restart Printer

Advanced mode

PRINTER TYPE	DISPENSER ▼
BACKFEED MOTION(DISPENSER)	BEFORE ▼
PRINT METHOD	TRANSFER ▼
PITCH SENSOR(CONTINUOUS)	ENABLE ▼
SENSOR TYPE(DISPENSER)	GAP ▼
COMMAND ERROR	DISABLE ▼
HEAD CHECK(ENABLE/DISABLE)	DISABLE ▼
HEAD CHECK(NORMAL/BARCODE)	NORMAL ▼
HEAD CHECK MODE	ALL ▼
HEAD CHECK PAGE NO.	000001
	[1 - 999999]
EXTERNAL SIGNAL(ENABLE/DISABLE)	DISABLE ▼
EXTERNAL SIGNAL(TYPE1-TYPE4)	TYPE4 ▼
EXTERNAL REPRINT	DISABLE ▼
CONTINUOUS PRINT	DISABLE ▼
ENHANCED REPRINT	DISABLE ▼
INPUT SIGNAL PRINT START	20PIN ▼
INPUT SIGNAL REPRINT	8PIN ▼
INPUT SIGNAL LABEL NEAR	7PIN ▼
INPUT SIGNAL FEED	21PIN ▼
INPUT SIGNAL DISPENSE IN	9PIN ▼
OUTPUT SIGNAL PAPER END	17PIN ▼
OUTPUT SIGNAL RIBBON END	16PIN ▼
OUTPUT SIGNAL MACHINE ERR	4PIN ▼
OUTPUT SIGNAL PRINT END	5PIN ▼
OUTPUT SIGNAL ONLINE	6PIN ▼
OUTPUT SIGNAL RIBBON NEAR	18PIN ▼
OUTPUT SIGNAL HOME POS.	3PIN ▼
ZERO SLASH	YES ▼
AUTO ONLINE	YES ▼

Display Status	PRINT OFFSET	V	0000
Information	PRINT OFFSET	H	0000
External signal Status	HEAD DOT DENSITY		300 ▼
Sensor level	CALENDER (YEAR)		17
	(MONTH)		06
	(DAY)		06
	(HOUR)		09
	(MIN)		25
Printer Configuration	CALENDER DAY OF WEEK CODE (SUNDAY)		1 ▼
Adjustment mode	CALENDER DAY OF WEEK CODE (MONDAY)		2 ▼
User mode	CALENDER DAY OF WEEK CODE (TUESDAY)		3 ▼
Interface mode	CALENDER DAY OF WEEK CODE (WEDNESDAY)		4 ▼
Interface mode(SNMP)	CALENDER DAY OF WEEK CODE (THURSDAY)		5 ▼
WLAN Setting	CALENDER DAY OF WEEK CODE (FRIDAY)		6 ▼
WLAN Certificate	CALENDER DAY OF WEEK CODE (SATURDAY)		7 ▼
Memory mode	CALENDER MONTH CODE (JANUARY)		A ▼
Service mode	CALENDER MONTH CODE (FEBRUARY)		B ▼
Advanced mode	CALENDER MONTH CODE (MARCH)		C ▼
RFID mode	CALENDER MONTH CODE (APRIL)		D ▼
Emulation mode	CALENDER MONTH CODE (MAY)		E ▼
Printer Config(Read)	CALENDER MONTH CODE (JUNE)		F ▼
Printer Config(Write)	CALENDER MONTH CODE (JULY)		G ▼
System/Others	CALENDER MONTH CODE (AUGUST)		H ▼
Test Print	CALENDER MONTH CODE (SEPTEMBER)		J ▼
Restart Printer	CALENDER MONTH CODE (OCTOBER)		K ▼
	CALENDER MONTH CODE (NOVEMBER)		L ▼
	CALENDER MONTH CODE (DECEMBER)		M ▼
	CALENDER CASE FORMAT		MIXED ▼
	CALENDER CHECK		DISABLE ▼

CHARACTER PITCH	PROPORTIONAL ▼
PROTOCOL CODE	STANDARD ▼
RIBBON SAVER	DISABLE ▼
RIBBON SAVER ENABLED ON FEED	NO ▼
MODE SELECT	SBPL ▼
JOB MODIFICATION	DISABLE ▼
ROTATE LABEL	0 ▼
LABEL SIZE ADJ WIDTH	0832
LABEL SIZE ADJ HEIGHT	20000
IGNORE A1	NO ▼
LCD POWER SAVING	00 MIN [0 - 15]
LED INDICATION	ON ▼
ERROR INDICATION	NONE ▼

Submit

4.3.13 RFID Mode

Login is required to view this page. Enter the correct user name and password to log in as shown in [Section 4.3.4 Adjustment Mode](#).

After logging in, the RFID mode page is shown as follows.

Refer to **Section 2.1.4 RFID Mode** of the S84-ex/S86-ex service manual.



Ceaseless Creativity for a Sustainable World

Model: S86-ex 203dpi
 Resolution: 203dpi (8 dpmm)
 MAC Address: XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX

Display Status

Information

External signal Status

Sensor level

Printer Configuration

Adjustment mode

User mode

Interface mode

Interface mode(SNMP)

WLAN Setting

WLAN Certificate

Memory mode

Service mode

Advanced mode

RFID mode

Emulation mode

Printer Config(Read)

Printer Config(Write)

System/Others

Test Print

Restart Printer

RFID mode

RFID LABEL DATA		RETRY ▾
MAX ERR COUNT		1
		[0 - 9]
RFID ERR SLASH		YES ▾
RFID ERR OUTPUT		LEVEL ▾
LENGTH OF PULSE		100 ▾
RFID TAG OFFSET		0
		[0 - 240]
WRITE POWER		10.0
		[0.0 - 24.0]
READ POWER		10.0
		[0.0 - 24.0]
LOG		DISABLE ▾
LOG DATA		EPC and TID ▾
PREND TYPE 3/4		NORMAL ▾

MCS

MCS		DISABLE ▾
Pre-Encoded Tag		DISABLE ▾
Chip Manufacture		IMPINJ ▾
MCS Prefix		AUTO ▾
MCS Prefix Digit		0 ▾
MCS Prefix Data		-
		Prefix Digit 1 [0 - 1]
		Prefix Digit 2 [00 - 11]
		Prefix Digit 3 [000 - 111]

Submit

4.3.14 Emulation Mode

Login is required to view this page. Enter the correct user name and password to log in as shown in [Section 4.3.4 Adjustment Mode](#).

After logging in, the Emulation mode page is shown as follows (continued to the next page).

Refer to [Section 5.2 SZPL Emulation Mode](#), [Section 5.3 SDPL Emulation Mode](#) or [Section 5.4 SIPL Emulation Mode](#).



Model: S86-ex 203dpi
 Resolution: 203dpi (8 dpm)
 MAC Address: XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX

Display Status

Information

External signal Status

Sensor level

Printer Configuration

Adjustment mode

User mode

Interface mode

Interface mode(SNMP)

WLAN Setting

WLAN Certificate

Memory mode

Service mode

Advanced mode

RFID mode

Emulation mode

Printer Config(Read)

Printer Config(Write)

System/Others

Test Print

Restart Printer

Emulation Mode

SZPL Emulation

ROTATE LABEL		0 ▼
SIZE MODE		AUTO ▼
LABEL WIDTH		1340
		[0 - 1340]
LABEL HEIGHT		01424
		[0 - 09992]
LABEL SHIFT		0000
		[-1340 - 1340]
LABEL TOP		0000
		[-120 - 120]
HEAD CHECK		0000
		[0 - 9999]
PROTOCOL		NONE ▼
RS-485 NETWORK ID		000
		[0 - 999]
CONTROL HEADER		126
		[0 - 255]
COMMAND HEADER		094
		[0 - 255]
DELIMITER		044
		[0 - 255]

SDPL Emulation

CTRL CODE TYPE		STANDARD ▼
USER CODE (SOH)		01
		[00 - FF]
USER CODE (STX)		02
		[00 - FF]

Display Status	Information	USER CODE (CR)	0D
	External signal Status		[00 - FF]
	Sensor level	USER CODE (CNTBY)	5E
			[00 - FF]
Printer Configuration			
Adjustment mode	LABEL ROTATION	90	▼
User mode	SOP EMULATION	AUTO	▼
Interface mode	COMPATIBILITY(TTF)	DISABLE	▼
Interface mode(SNMP)	COMPATIBILITY(GRAPHICS)	ENABLE	▼
WLAN Setting	BLANK ITEM FEED	DISABLE	▼
WLAN Certificate	SOH COMMANDS	ENABLE	▼
Memory mode	PRIORITY (FORMAT ATTRIBUTE)	COMMAND	▼
Service mode	FORMAT ATTRIBUTE	XOR	▼
Advanced mode	PRIORITY(PAUSE MODE)	COMMAND	▼
RFID mode	PAUSE MODE	DISABLE	▼
Emulation mode	PRIORITY(1-BYTE CODEPAGE)	LCD/WEB	▼
Printer Config(Read)	1-BYTE CODEPAGE	UTF-8	▼
Printer Config(Write)	PRIORITY(MEASURE UNIT)	COMMAND	▼
System/Others	MEASURE UNIT	mm	▼
Test Print	PRIORITY(TTF STYLE)	LCD/WEB	▼
Restart Printer	BOLD STYLE	ENABLE	▼
	ITALIC STYLE	DISABLE	▼
	PRIORITY(SENSOR)	LCD/WEB	▼
	PRIORITY(PRINTER FEEDBACK)	LCD/WEB	▼
	PRINTER FEEDBACK	DISABLE	▼
SIPL Emulation			
	FORMAT STORE	Disable	▼
	0 SLASH	Off	▼
	FONT c20 PITCH	Fixed	▼
	CODEPAGE	850	▼
Submit			

4.3.15 Printer Configuration (Read)

Login is required to view this page. Enter the correct user name and password to log in as shown in [Section 4.3.4 Adjustment Mode](#).

After logging in, the Printer Config(Read) page is shown as follows. All the current printer configurations are shown in the text box.

Click **reload** button to refresh the data in the text box.

To export the current printer configurations, select all the text in the text box and save it as text file.



Model: S86-ex 203dpi
 Resolution: 203dpi (8 dpm)
 MAC Address: XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX

Display Status

Information

External signal Status

Sensor level

Printer Configuration

Adjustment mode

User mode

Interface mode

Interface mode(SNMP)

WLAN Setting

WLAN Certificate

Memory mode

Service mode

Advanced mode

RFID mode

Emulation mode

Printer Config(Read)

Printer Config(Write)

System/Others

Test Print

Restart Printer

Printer Config(Read)

reload

```

[SYSTEM]
MODEL=S86-ex
SERIAL_NO=00000000
CONT_NO=KGCZ0023
PCB_REV=1.0
PLD_VER=0.8
FIRMVER=61.00.00.09
FIRMDATE=17.04.20
FIRM_CSUM_IPL=0E9B
FIRM_CSUM_PROG=9DCB
FIRM_CSUM_2BYTE_FONTS=5BD5
FIRM_CSUM_ALL=083B
KBVER=55.TP.01.00A
KBDATE=14.05.16
KBFIRM_CSUM=07AA
DIPSW=00010000
FONT_VER=04.00(G)
EMULoader_VER=61.01.00.02A
EMULoader_DATE=15.07.07
EMULoader_CSUM=5249
SZPL_VER=61.02.00.01K
SZPL_DATE=17.04.19
SZPL_CSUM=7B03
SDPL_VER=61.03.00.00H
SDPL_DATE=17.04.20
SDPL_CSUM=3F71
SIPL_VER=61.04.00.00E
SIPL_DATE=17.04.19
SIPL_CSUM=F794
LCDVER_ENG=00.10
          
```


4.3.16 Printer Configuration (Write)

Login is required to view this page. Enter the correct user name and password to log in as shown in [Section 4.3.4 Adjustment Mode](#).

After logging in, the Printer Config(Write) page is shown as follows.

To import printer configurations

- 1 Click **Choose file** button and select a printer configuration file.

- 2 Then click **Submit** button to import the selected printer configuration to the printer.

Note

While writing is in progress, do not switch to other pages.

- 3 The page shows “Setting Successfully Completed” when the setting is completed.

4.3.17 System/Others

Login is required to view this page. Enter the correct user name and password to log in as shown in [Section 4.3.4 Adjustment Mode](#).

After logging in, the System/Others page is shown as follows.



Ceaseless Creativity for a Sustainable World

Model: S86-ex 203dpi
Resolution: 203dpi (8 dpm)
MAC Address: XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX

Display Status

Information

External signal Status

Sensor level

Printer Configuration

Adjustment mode

User mode

Interface mode

Interface mode(SNMP)

WLAN Setting

WLAN Certificate

Memory mode

Service mode

Advanced mode

RFID mode

Emulation mode

Printer Config(Read)

Printer Config(Write)

System/Others

Test Print

Restart Printer

System/Others

Sysytem

Web Configuration

USER NAME

PASSWORD

Display Option

LCD BRIGHTNESS
[0 - 32]

BUZZER SOUND
[0 - 3]

Others

hidden setting

LABEL OUT SENSOR

SHIFT CODE

work shift

SELECT SHIFT

SHIFT1

ENTER SHIFT TIME
HOUR
MINUTE

ENTER SHIFT NAME

SHIFT2

ENTER SHIFT TIME
HOUR
MINUTE

ENTER SHIFT NAME

SHIFT3

ENTER SHIFT TIME
HOUR
MINUTE

ENTER SHIFT NAME

4.3.18 Test Print

Login is required to view this page. Enter the correct user name and password to log in as shown in [Section 4.3.4 Adjustment Mode](#).

After logging in, the page is shown as follows.



Model: **S84-ex 203dpi**
Resolution: 203dpi (8 dpmm)
MAC Address: XX:XX:XX:XX:XX

Display Status
Information
External signal Status
Sensor level

Printer Configuration
Adjustment mode
User mode
Interface mode
Interface mode(SNMP)
WLAN Setting
WLAN Certificate
Memory mode
Service mode
Advanced mode
RFID mode
Emulation mode
Printer Config(Read)
Printer Config(Write)
System/Others
Test Print
Restart Printer

Test Print
Test Print

Select a print type

Submit

Print Data
Files of up to 10 KB can be transferred.

Select a file No file chosen

Submit

4.3.19 Restart Printer

Login is required to view this page. Enter the correct user name and password to log in as shown in [Section 4.3.4 Adjustment Mode](#).

After logging in, the page is shown as follows.



Model: S86-ex 203dpi
Resolution: 203dpi (8 dpmm)
MAC Address: XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX

Display Status

Information
External signal Status
Sensor level

Printer Configuration

Adjustment mode
User mode
Interface mode
Interface mode(SNMP)
WLAN Setting
WLAN Certificate
Memory mode
Service mode
Advanced mode
RFID mode
Emulation mode
Printer Config(Read)
Printer Config(Write)
System/Others
Test Print
Restart Printer

Are you sure to restart this printer?
You can't connect this printer while it's rebooting!

YES

NO

This page is intentionally left blank.

5

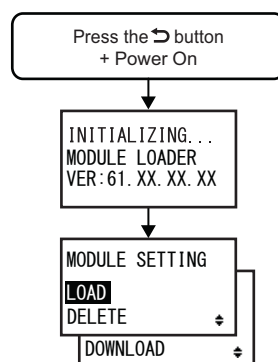
Emulation Mode

The emulation mode allows the S84-ex/S86-ex printer to function in virtually all legacy external party programming language environment without requiring modification to host data stream.

5.1 Emulation Module Loader

When the printer is started up with the emulation loader, user can load or delete the selected emulation module, or download emulation module.

The flowchart shows the sequence of the setting screens for the emulation loader.



- 1 Press and hold the **FUNCTION** button and power on the printer. Release the **FUNCTION** button when the buzzer beeps.

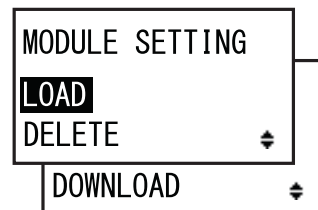
MODULE SETTING

Select the module loader function using the ▲/▼ buttons and then press the **ENTER** button.

- **LOAD**: Load the standard firmware or emulation firmware.
- **DELETE**: Delete the selected emulation module.
- **DOWNLOAD**: Download the emulation firmware to the printer.

Note

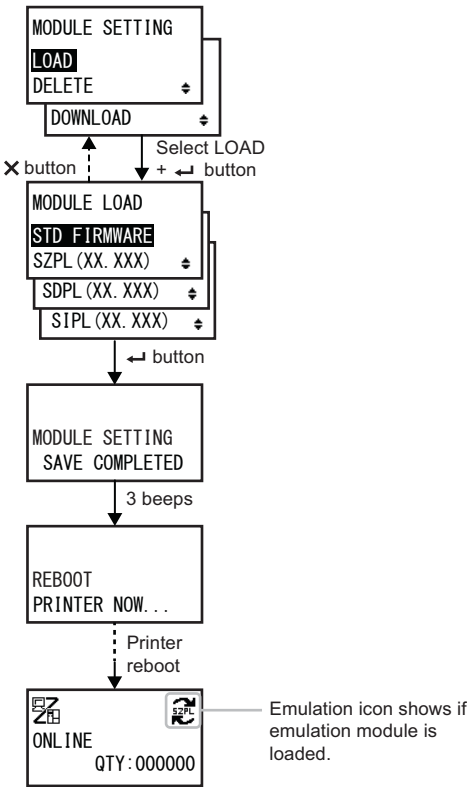
If there is no emulation module downloaded to the printer memory, you cannot select the DELETE function.



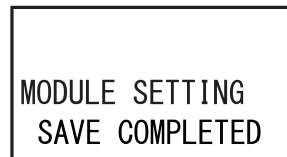
5.1.1 Loading the Emulation Module

In the emulation module loader, user can select to load the standard or emulation module. The valid downloaded emulation module is listed on the display. A total of four emulation modules can be downloaded to the printer memory. However, it is subject to the download area availability and other prevailing condition. The printer will not support SBPL command data printing while using the emulation module.

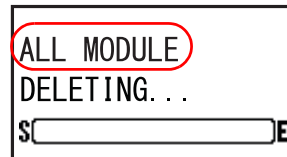
The flowchart shows the sequence of the setting screens for loading the emulation module. The table describes each setting screen in detail.



MODULE LOAD	
Select the module to be loaded to the printer using the ▲/▼ buttons and then press the ↵ ENTER button. • STD FIRMWARE: Load the standard firmware. • SZPL (XX.XXX): Load the downloaded SZPL emulation firmware. • SDPL (XX.XXX): Load the downloaded SDPL emulation firmware. • SIPL (XX.XXX): Load the downloaded SIPL emulation firmware. Note The XX.XXX is the module version information.	

MODULE SETTING SAVE COMPLETED	
This screen shows the completion of saving the module setting and three beeps will sound.	

REBOOT PRINTER NOW...	
This screen shows the printer starts rebooting and start up the printer with the selected firmware loaded.	

ALL MODULE DELETING...	
The printer is deleting the selected emulation module. The bar on the lower portion of the screen indicates the module deletion progress. If ALL is selected in the previous screen, ALL MODULE is shown. Otherwise, the screen shows the selected emulation module name. For example, SZPL(XX.XXX) or SDPL(XX.XXX). The XX.XXX is the module version information.	
MODULE DELETE COMPLETED	
This screen shows the completion of deleting the selected emulation module and three beeps will sound. If there is emulation module in the printer memory, the printer shows the MODULE DELETE menu. If all the emulation module has been deleted, the printer shows the MODULE SETTING menu.	

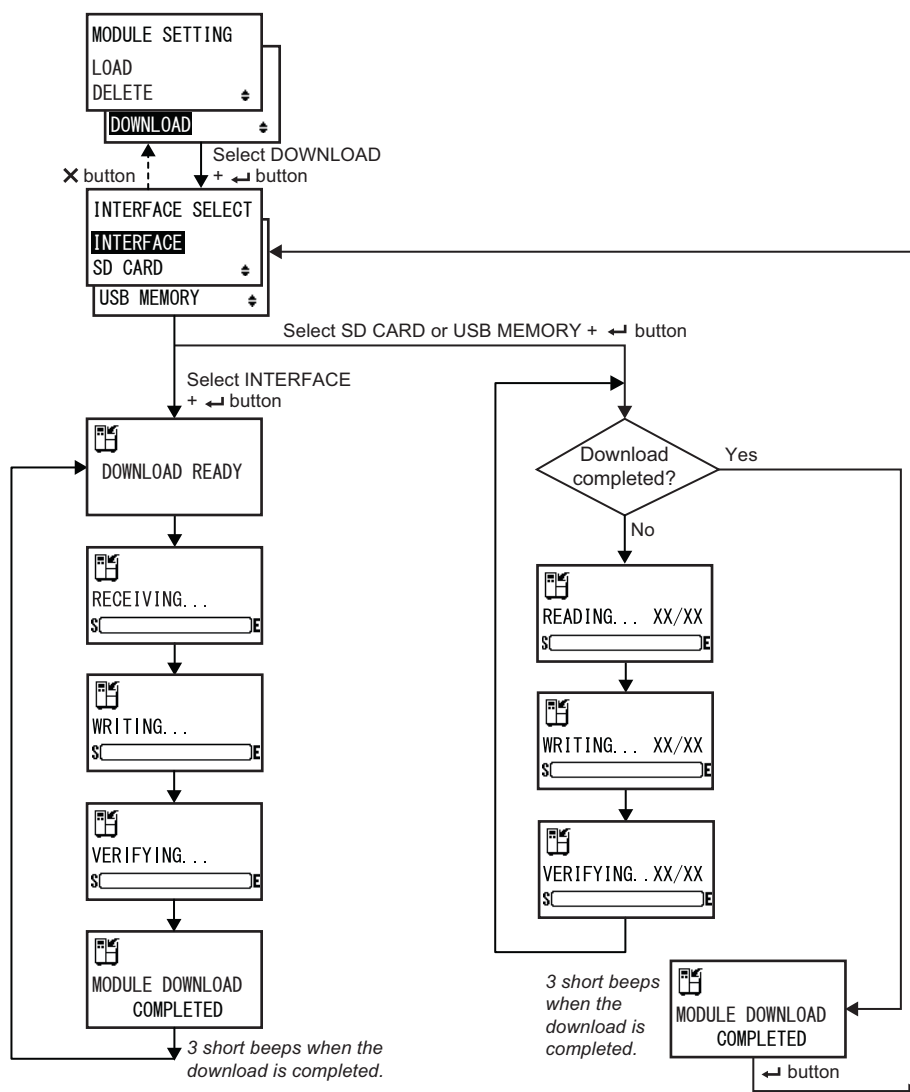
5.1.3 Downloading the Emulation Module

In the emulation module loader, user can download the emulation module. A total of four emulation modules can be downloaded to the printer memory.

The flowchart shows the sequence of the setting screens for loading the emulation module. The table describes each setting screen in detail.

CAUTION

Be sure to perform a virus check for the USB memory or SD card before connecting it to the printer. SATO Corporation shall not be held responsible for a malfunction of the printer caused by a virus infection through the USB memory or SD card.



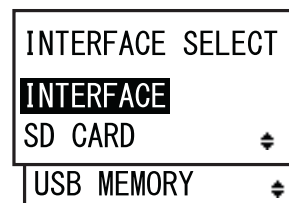
Note

Firmware download may fail if there is insufficient download area for the emulation modules. Delete the unnecessary emulation module from the printer memory to free up memory space for the new emulation module download.

INTERFACE SELECT

Select the download method.

- **INTERFACE:** Download the emulation module from the interface.
- **SD CARD:** Download the emulation module from an SD card.
- **USB MEMORY:** Download the emulation module from a USB memory.

**DOWNLOAD READY**

The printer is waiting to receive module data using the selected interface, which set by DATA PORT in the Interface mode menu.

Note

Shows only if INTERFACE SELECT is set to INTERFACE.

**RECEIVING...**

The printer is receiving the module data.
The bar on the lower portion of the screen indicates the data reception progress.
After receiving the module data, it goes to the WRITING... screen.

Note

Shows only if INTERFACE SELECT is set to INTERFACE.

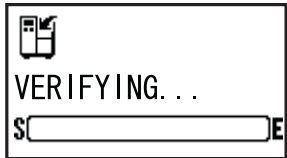
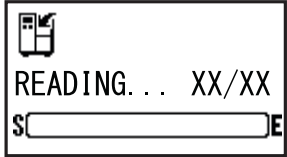
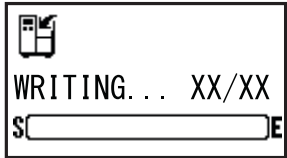
**WRITING...**

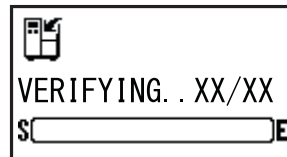
The printer is writing the module data.
The bar on the lower portion of the screen indicates the data writing progress.
After writing the module data, it goes to the VERIFYING... screen.

Note

Shows only if INTERFACE SELECT is set to INTERFACE.



VERIFYING...	
The printer is verifying the module data. The bar on the lower portion of the screen indicates the data verification progress. After verifying the module data, it goes to the MODULE DOWNLOAD COMPLETED screen. Note Shows only if INTERFACE SELECT is set to INTERFACE.	
MODULE DOWNLOAD COMPLETED	
This screen shows the completion of the download. Three beeps will sound when the module download is completed. If downloading through INTERFACE, it will return to the DOWNLOAD READY screen. If downloading through SD CARD or USB MEMORY, press the ← ENTER button to return to the INTERFACE SELECT screen.	
READING... XX/XX	
The printer is reading the module data. The bar on the lower portion of the screen indicates the data reading progress. XX/XX shows the file number being read and total number of files. After reading the module data, it goes to the WRITING... screen. Note Shows only if INTERFACE SELECT is set to SD CARD or USB MEMORY.	
WRITING... XX/XX	
The printer is writing the module data. The bar on the lower portion of the screen indicates the data writing progress. XX/XX shows the file number being read and total number of files. After writing the module data, it goes to the VERIFYING... screen. Note Shows only if INTERFACE SELECT is set to SD CARD or USB MEMORY.	

VERIFYING... XX/XX	
The printer is verifying the module data. The bar on the lower portion of the screen indicates the data verification progress. XX/XX shows the file number being read and total number of files. After verifying the module data, it goes to the MODULE DOWNLOAD COMPLETED screen. Note Shows only if INTERFACE SELECT is set to SD CARD or USB MEMORY.	

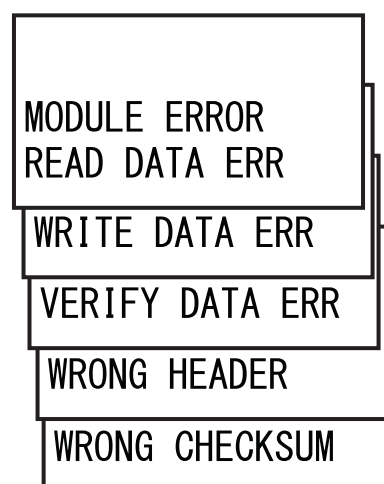
5.1.4 Emulation Module Error

If error occurred during module loading or deleting process, the screen shows the error message, MODULE ERROR and the cause of the error as listed below.

- READ DATA ERR
- WRITE DATA ERR
- VERIFY DATA ERR
- WRONG HEADER
- WRONG CHECKSUM

When read data error, write data error or verify data error occurred, update the emulation loader firmware or change the FLASH ROM device.

When wrong header or wrong checksum error occurred, delete the emulation module and then download the emulation module firmware again.



If error occurred during module downloading, the screen shows the error message, DOWNLOAD DATA ERROR.

The possible causes of module download error are:

- Module header error.
- Not enough memory space or the module size is too big.

When the module download error occurred,

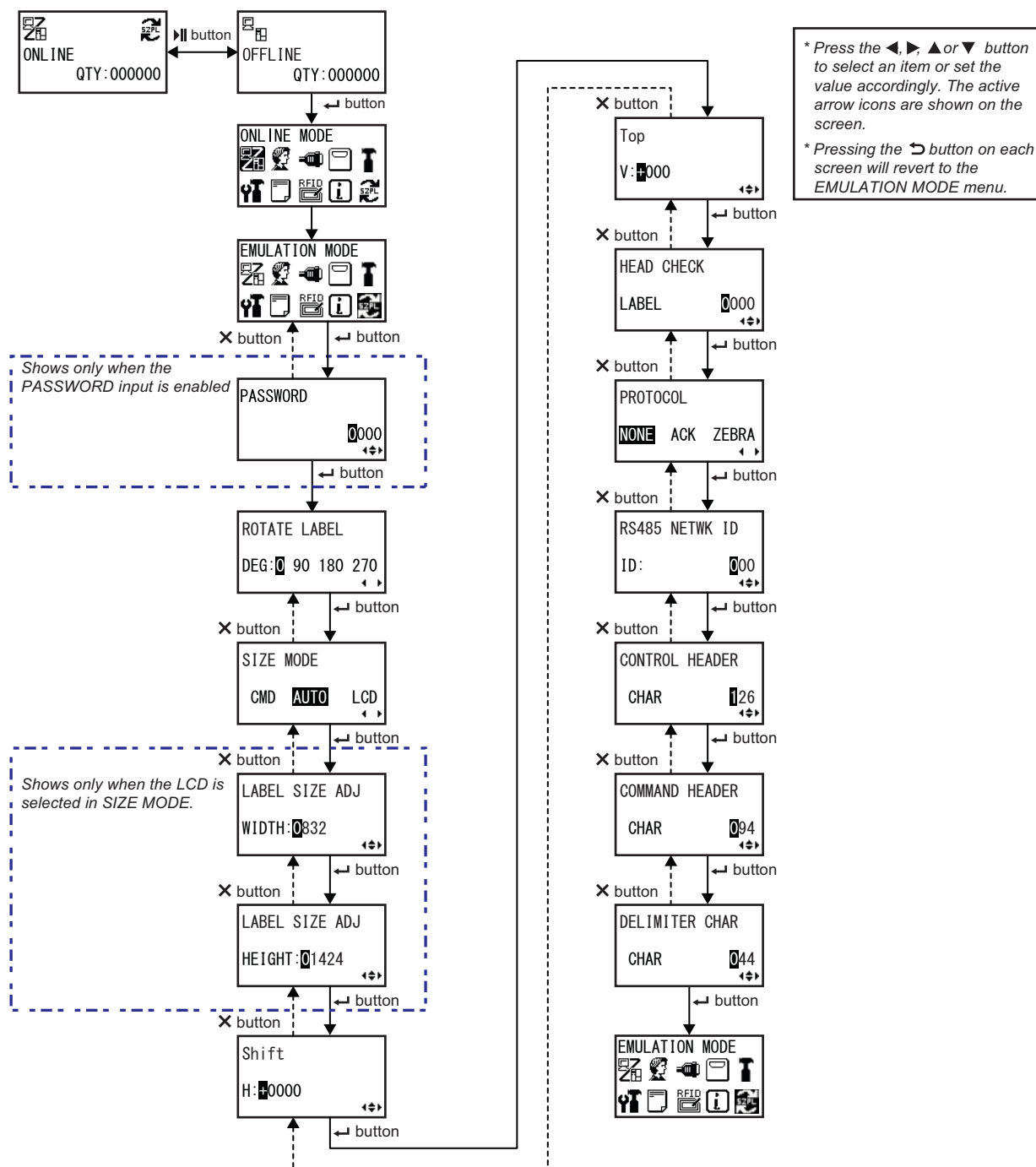
- Check the module header information.
- Delete the old module.
- Delete the unused module.



5.2 SZPL Emulation Mode

The SZPL Emulation Mode is available when the printer is loaded with SZPL Emulation firmware. The RFID option for SZPL is supported in this emulation firmware.

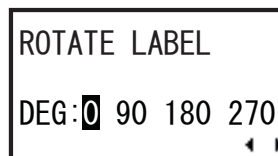
The flowchart shows the sequence of the setting screens for the SZPL emulation firmware. The table describes each setting screen in detail.



ROTATE LABEL

Set the rotation for printing.

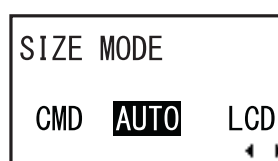
- **0**: Print the media as usual without rotation.
- **90**: Print the media with 90 degree rotation.
- **180**: Print the media with 180 degree rotation.
- **270**: Print the media with 270 degree rotation.



SIZE MODE

Set the label size adjustment control.

- **CMD**: The label size is set by command.
- **AUTO**: The label size is measured automatically by the printer.
- **LCD**: The label size is set by the following screen.



Note

When AUTO is selected, the printer will automatically feed two blank labels to check the label size. The printer will perform the checking function when SZPL emulation mode active in the following scenarios:

- Printer power on (Initial feed setting must be enabled in Service mode).
- After head open error clearance.
- When switching from SBPL mode to SZPL emulation mode.
- When change the size mode to AUTO from other mode.

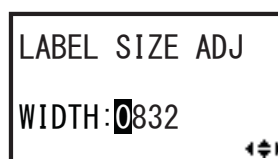
If AUTO ONLINE FEED under Service mode is set to NO, SIZE MODE will switch to CMD automatically. The label size setting will be override by the Label Width ^PW or Label Length ^LL Zebra command if it is specify within the data stream regardless of the current Size Mode setting (for example AUTO/LCD).

LABEL SIZE ADJ WIDTH

Set the width of the media.

The setting range varies depending on the following model:

Model	Setting Range (dot)
S84-ex (203 dpi)	0000 to 0832
S84-ex (305 dpi)	0000 to 1248
S84-ex (609 dpi)	0000 to 2496
S86-ex (203 dpi)	0000 to 1340
S86-ex (305 dpi)	0000 to 2010



Note

Shows only if SIZE MODE is set to LCD.

LABEL SIZE ADJ HEIGHT

Set the height of the media.

The setting range varies depending on the following model:

Model	Setting Range (dot)
S84-ex (203 dpi)	00000 to 20000
S84-ex (305 dpi)	00000 to 18000
S84-ex (609 dpi)	00000 to 09600
S86-ex (203 dpi)	00000 to 09992
S86-ex (305 dpi)	00000 to 14988

Note

Shows only if SIZE MODE is set to LCD.

LABEL SIZE ADJ

HEIGHT: 01424



Shift

Set the shift offset position of the label.

The setting range varies depending on the following model:

Model	Setting Range (dot)
S84-ex (203 dpi)	-0832 to +0832
S84-ex (305 dpi)	-1248 to +1248
S84-ex (609 dpi)	-2496 to +2496
S86-ex (203 dpi)	-1340 to +1340
S86-ex (305 dpi)	-2010 to +2010

Shift

H: 0000



Top

Set the top offset position of the label.

The setting range is from -120 to +120.

The measurement unit is in dot.

Top

V: 000



HEAD CHECK	
Specify the number of media between each head check. The setting range is from 0000 to 9999. The head check function is disabled when the value is set to 0000.	HEAD CHECK LABEL 0000

PROTOCOL	
Set the SZPL communication protocol. • NONE • ACK • ZEBRA	PROTOCOL NONE ACK ZEBRA

RS485 NETWK ID	
Set the RS485 network ID. The setting range is from 000 to 999. The network is not in used when the ID is set to 000.	RS485 NETWK ID ID: 000

CONTROL HEADER	
Set the control header character. The setting range is from 000 (00H) to 255 (FFH).	CONTROL HEADER CHAR 126

COMMAND HEADER	
Set the command header character. The setting range is from 000 (00H) to 255 (FFH).	COMMAND HEADER CHAR 094

DELIMIT CHAR	
Set the delimit character. The setting range is from 000 (00H) to 255 (FFH).	DELIMITER CHAR CHAR 044

5.2.1 Auto Emulation Mode Switching Function

Auto emulation mode switching function is added to the SZPL emulation firmware to allow users to easily switch modes from SBPL to SZPL and vice-versa. The printer will automatically detect the type of data stream it received from the user and automatically switch to the appropriate mode (SBPL mode or SZPL mode). The auto emulation mode switching function can be disabled by using the <EMU> command.

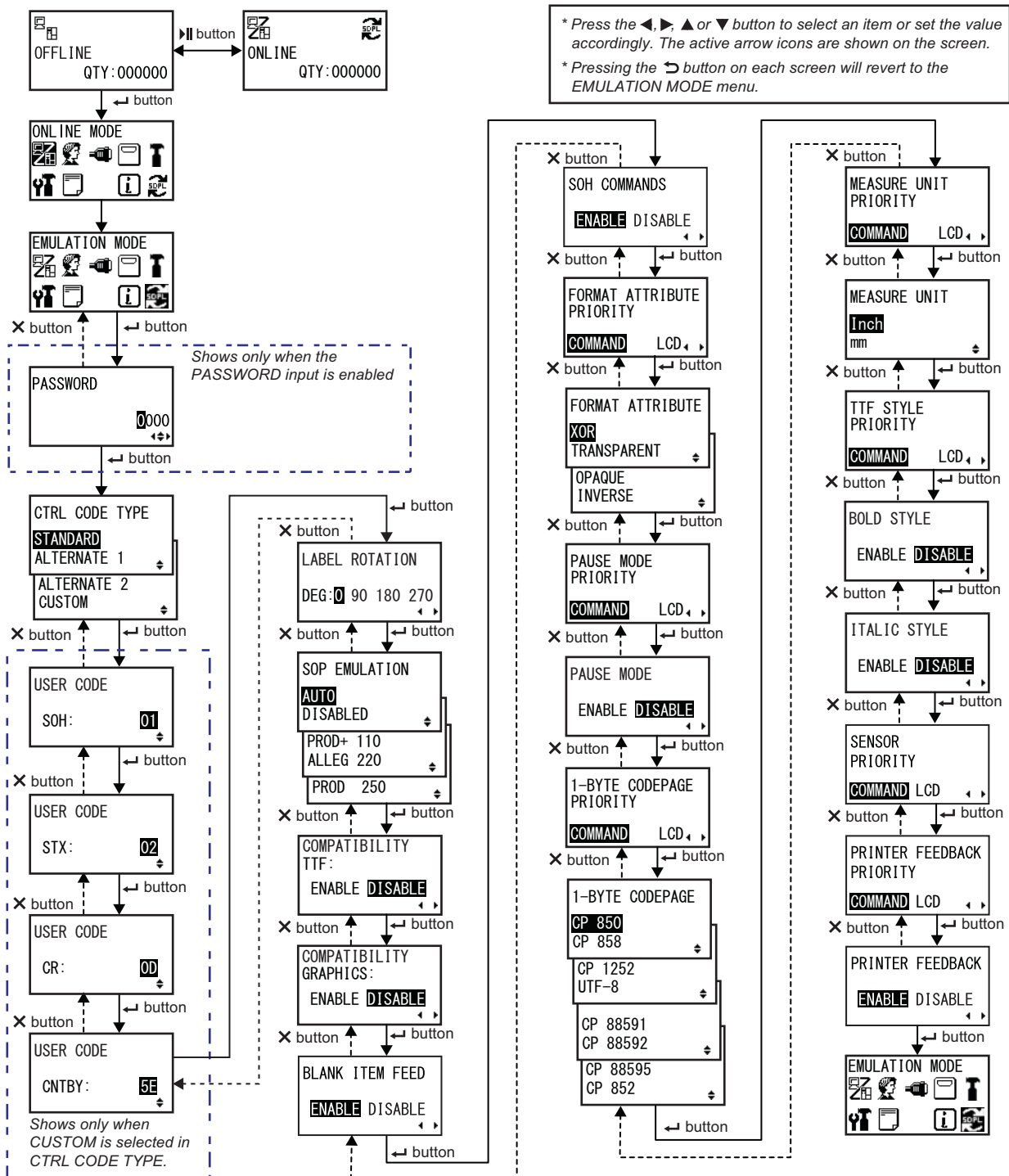
Note

Due to the S84-ex/S86-ex emulation module design, the standard SBPL functionality have been removed and the firmware only support minimum set of commands such as ENQ, SOH commands or Test print commands to work with the AIOT printer management tool continuously. If full functionality is required, select the STD firmware module from emulation module loader.

5.3 SDPL Emulation Mode

The SDPL Emulation Mode is available when the printer is loaded with SDPL Emulation firmware. The RFID option for SDPL is not supported in this emulation firmware.

The flowchart shows the sequence of the setting screens for the SDPL emulation firmware. The table describes each setting screen in detail.



CTRL CODE TYPE

Set the control code type.
The options are as follows:

- **STANDARD**
- **ALTERNATE 1**
- **ALTERNATE 2**
- **CUSTOM**

STANDARD, ALTERNATE 1, and ALTERNATE 2 have control codes preset. User can set the value for control codes if CUSTOM is selected.

CTRL CODE TYPE	
STANDARD	↓
ALTERNATE 1	↓
ALTERNATE 2	↓
CUSTOM	↓

USER CODE SOH

Set the SOH code.

The setting range is from 00 to FF (hexadecimal).
Three beeps will sound, indicating error, if the value is identical with other codes (STX, CR, CNTBY).

Note

Shows only if CTRL CODE TYPE is set to CUSTOM.

USER CODE	
SOH:	01 ↓

USER CODE STX

Set the STX code.

The setting range is from 00 to FF (hexadecimal).
Three beeps will sound, indicating error, if the value is identical with other codes (SOH, CR, CNTBY).

Note

Shows only if CTRL CODE TYPE is set to CUSTOM.

USER CODE	
STX:	02 ↓

USER CODE CR

Set the CR code.

The setting range is from 00 to FF (hexadecimal).
Three beeps will sound, indicating error, if the value is identical with other codes (SOH, STX, CNTBY).

Note

Shows only if CTRL CODE TYPE is set to CUSTOM.

USER CODE	
CR:	0D ↓

USER CODE CNTBY

Set the CNTBY code.

The setting range is from 00 to FF (hexadecimal).

Three beeps will sound, indicating error, if the value is identical with other codes (SOH, STX, CR).

Note

Shows only if CTRL CODE TYPE is set to CUSTOM.

USER CODE

CNTBY:

5E



LABEL ROTATION

Set the page orientation of label printing.

- **0**: Print the media as usual without rotation.
- **90**: Print the media with 90 degree rotation.
- **180**: Print the media with 180 degree rotation.
- **270**: Print the media with 270 degree rotation.

LABEL ROTATION

DEG: **0** 90 180 270



SOP EMULATION

Set the types of Start of Print (SOP) emulation.

The options are as follows:

- **AUTO**: Auto selection based on the value set in <STX>O command.
- **DISABLED**: <STX>O command is ignored.
- **PROD+ 110**: Offset will be set by minus 110.
- **ALLEG 220**: Offset will be set by minus 220.
- **PROD 250**: Offset will be set by minus 250.

SOP EMULATION

AUTO

DISABLED



PROD+ 110

ALLEG 220



PROD 250



COMPATIBILITY TTF

Set whether to allow the use of TrueType font compatible mode.

- **ENABLE**: Allow the use of TrueType fonts.
- **DISABLE**: Do not allow the use of TrueType fonts.

By enabling the TrueType font compatible mode, the bold TrueType font will be printed in smaller pitch.

COMPATIBILITY
TTF:

ENABLE

DISABLE



COMPATIBILITY GRAPHICS

Set whether to allow the use of graphic compatible mode.

- **ENABLE**: Allow the use of graphic.
- **DISABLE**: Do not allow the use of graphic.

By enabling the graphic compatible mode, the native graphic 'F' can be printed with line terminator omitted.

COMPATIBILITY
GRAPHICS:
ENABLE **DISABLE** ◀ ▶

BLANK ITEM FEED

Set whether to feed the blank label when the printer receives a label-format that does not contain any printable field.

- **ENABLE**: Feed the blank label.
- **DISABLE**: Do not feed the blank label.

BLANK ITEM FEED
ENABLE DISABLE ◀ ▶

SOH COMMANDS

Set whether to ignore all <SOH> commands.

- **ENABLE**: Ignore all <SOH> commands.
- **DISABLE**: Do not ignore <SOH> commands.

SOH COMMANDS
ENABLE DISABLE ◀ ▶

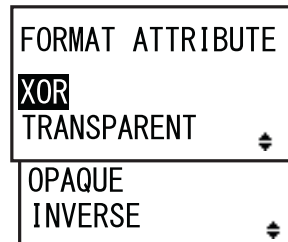
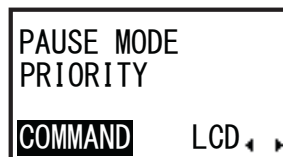
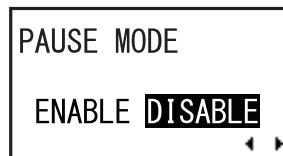
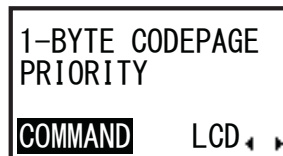
FORMAT ATTRIBUTE PRIORITY

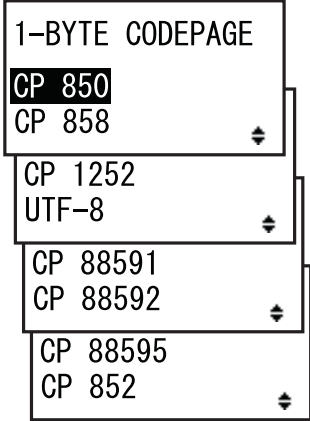
Set the priority of the format attribute.

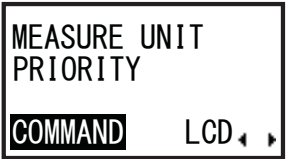
Two options can be selected as follows:

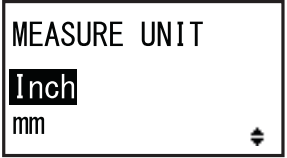
- **COMMAND**: The setting is according to SDPL command.
- **LCD**: The setting is according to FORMAT ATTRIBUTE screen.

FORMAT ATTRIBUTE
PRIORITY
COMMAND LCD ◀ ▶

FORMAT ATTRIBUTE	
Set the format attribute. The options are as follows: • XOR • TRANSPARENT • OPAQUE • INVERSE Note Shows only if FORMAT ATTRIBUTE PRIORITY is set to LCD.	
PAUSE MODE PRIORITY	
Set the priority of the pause mode. Two options can be selected as follows: • COMMAND: The setting is according to SDPL command. • LCD: The setting is according to PAUSE MODE screen.	
PAUSE MODE	
Enable or disable the pause mode. • ENABLE: Enable the pause mode. The printer enters offline mode after every print job if priority setting is set to LCD. It has the same effect as <STX>J. • DISABLE: Disable the pause mode. Note Shows only if PAUSE MODE PRIORITY is set to LCD.	
1-BYTE CODEPAGE PRIORITY	
Set the priority of the 1-byte codepage. Two options can be selected as follows: • COMMAND: The setting is according to SDPL command. • LCD: The setting is according to 1-BYTE CODEPAGE screen.	

1-BYTE CODEPAGE	
Select the code page to be used for 1-byte characters from the list. The options are as follows: • CP 850 • CP 858 • CP 1252 • UTF-8 • CP 88591 • CP 88592 • CP 88595 • CP 852	
Note Shows only if 1-BYTE CODEPAGE PRIORITY is set to LCD.	

MEASURE UNIT PRIORITY	
Set the priority of SDPL measure unit. Two options can be selected as follows: • COMMAND: The setting is according to SDPL command. • LCD: The setting is according to MEASURE UNIT screen.	

MEASURE UNIT	
Set the measurement unit. • Inch • mm	
Note Shows only if MEASURE UNIT PRIORITY is set to LCD.	

TTF STYLE PRIORITY	
Set the priority of the TrueType font style. Two options can be selected as follows: • COMMAND: The setting is according to SDPL command. • LCD: The setting is according to BOLD STYLE screen.	

BOLD STYLE

Set whether or not to print the scalable TrueType font in bold style.

- **ENABLE**: The scalable TrueType font is always printed in bold style.
- **DISABLE**: The scalable TrueType font is not printed in bold style.

Note

Shows only if TTF STYLE PRIORITY is set to LCD.

BOLD STYLE

ENABLE **DISABLE**

ITALIC STYLE

Set whether or not to print the scalable TrueType font in italic style.

- **ENABLE**: The scalable TrueType font is always printed in italic style.
- **DISABLE**: The scalable TrueType font is not printed in italic style.

Note

Shows only if TTF STYLE PRIORITY is set to LCD.

ITALIC STYLE

ENABLE **DISABLE**

SENSOR PRIORITY

Set the priority of SDPL sensor.

Two options can be selected as follows:

- **COMMAND**: The setting is according to SDPL command.
- **LCD**: The setting is according to PRINTER FEEDBACK PRIORITY screen. Commands <STX>c, <STX>e and <STX>r are ignored.

SENSOR
PRIORITY

COMMAND LCD

PRINTER FEEDBACK PRIORITY

Set the priority of printer feedback.

Two options can be selected as follows:

- **COMMAND**: The setting is according to <STX>a command. This command is effective until you restart the printer
- **LCD**: The setting is according to PRINTER FEEDBACK screen.

PRINTER FEEDBACK
PRIORITY

COMMAND LCD

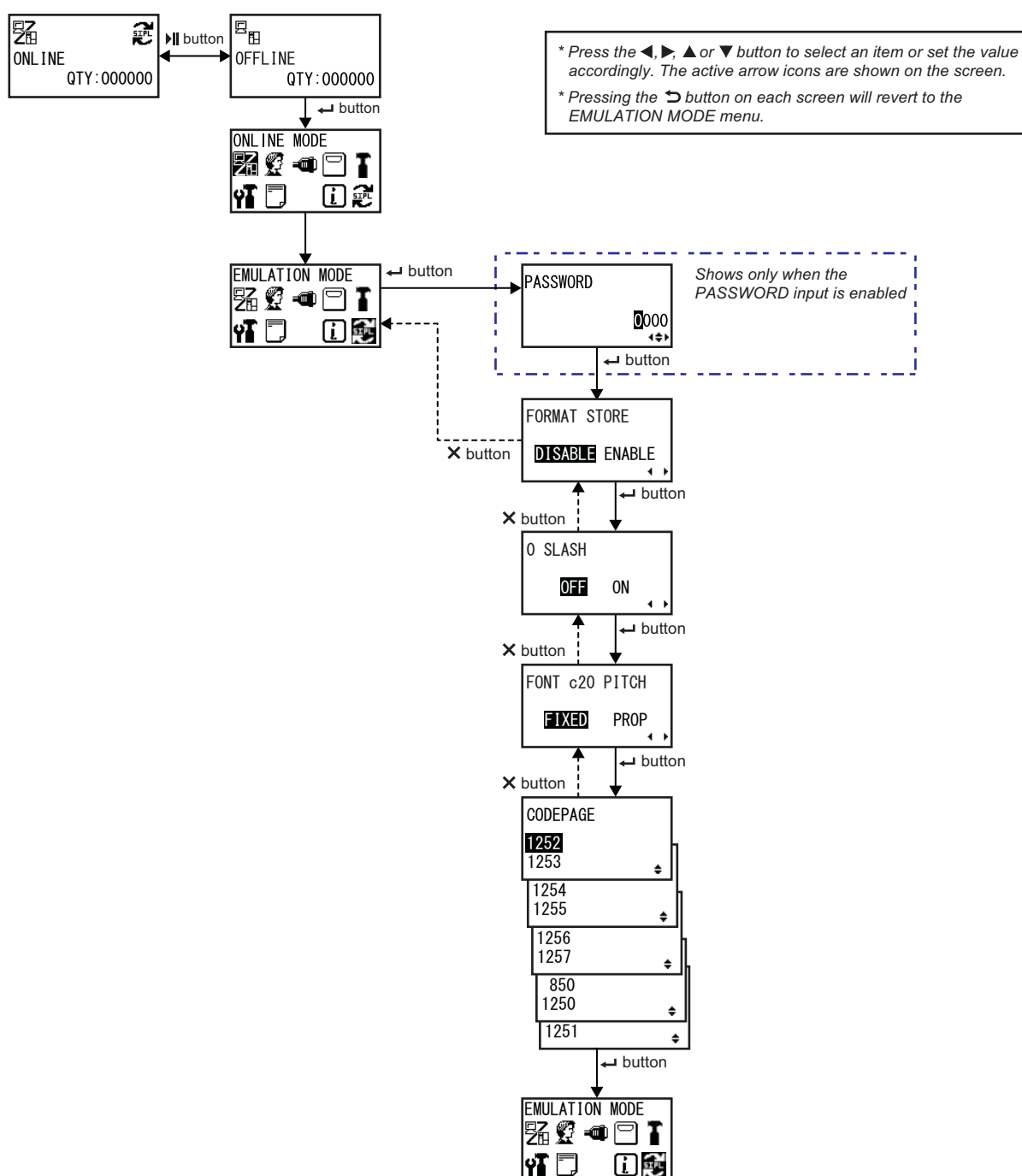
PRINTER FEEDBACK	
Set whether to send the printer feedback. Two options can be selected as follows: • ENABLE: Always send the printer feedback characters to the host. • DISABLE: Do not send the printer feedback characters to the host except for the power reset signal.	PRINTER FEEDBACK ENABLE DISABLE ◀▶
Note Shows only if PRINTER FEEDBACK PRIORITY is set to LCD.	

5.4 SIPL Emulation Mode

The SIPL Emulation Mode is available when the printer is loaded with SIPL Emulation firmware. The RFID option for SIPL is not supported in this emulation firmware.

The flowchart shows the sequence of the setting screens for the SIPL emulation firmware. The table describes each setting screen in detail.

You can print the label with rotation while in SIPL Emulation Mode. This can be achieved by using **ROTATE LABEL** in [Section 4.2.13 Advanced Mode](#).



FORMAT STORE

Set whether to save the user format data registered at printing in the printer.

The options are as follows:

- **DISABLE**: Do not save the user format data registered at printing in the printer. The user format data remains in the printer memory until the printer is powered off. You need to register a user format again after reboot.
- **ENABLE**: Save the user format data registered at printing in the printer.

**0 SLASH**

Set whether to print the number zero (0) with or without a slash (/).

The options are as follows:

- **OFF**: Print zero without a slash.
- **ON**: Print zero with a slash.

**FONT c20 PITCH**

Set whether to print each character using a fixed pitch or proportional pitch spacing.

The options are as follows:

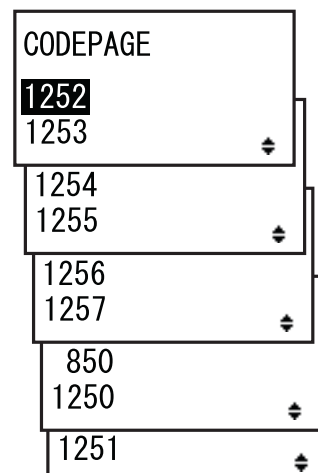
- **FIXED**: Print all characters with the fixed pitch.
- **PROP**: Print each character with proportional pitch spacing.

**CODEPAGE**

Select the code page to be used from the list.

The options are as follows:

- 1252
- 1253
- 1254
- 1255
- 1256
- 1257
- 850
- 1250
- 1251



6

Cleaning and Performing Printer Adjustments

6.1 Maintenance

A dirty print head or platen roller not only affects the print quality but also causes errors. Use a cleaning kit or cleaning sheet to clean the printer regularly.

CAUTION

- Do not touch the power switch, connect or disconnect the power cord while your hands are wet. Doing so could cause an electric shock.
 - Disconnect the power cord from the AC outlet before you begin cleaning.
The print head and its surroundings are hot after printing. Wait until the printer cools down.
 - Touching the edge of the print head with your bare hand could cause injury.
 - Use a cleaning pen, cotton swab or cotton cloth from a cleaning kit to clean. Do not clean with a hard object. Doing so could cause damage.
 - Remove the media and ribbon before cleaning.
-

Note

You can purchase a cleaning kit or cleaning sheet from a SATO reseller or technical service center.

6.2 Maintenance of the Print Head and Platen Roller

Maintenance should be performed at the following regular intervals:

- After you print one media roll or print media for one hundred and fifty meters.
Use the cleaning kit to clean these parts:
 - Print head
 - Platen roller
 - Media sensors
 - Media guide
- After you print six media rolls or print media for nine hundred meters.
Use the cleaning sheet to clean these parts:
 - Print head
 - Platen roller
Use the cleaning kit to clean these parts:
 - Media guide
 - Feed roller
 - Media route
 - Ribbon route

Note

The above maintenance intervals are only for reference. Perform the cleaning when necessary.

6.2.1 Maintenance using the Cleaning Kit

The maintenance procedure using the cleaning kit is as follows:

Note

For details on the cleaning kit, refer to the manual attached to the cleaning kit.

1 Make sure that the printer is in power off mode, then disconnect the power cord from the AC outlet.

2 Open the **top cover**.



CAUTION

Open the top cover fully to prevent accidental drop of the cover.

- 3** Turn the **head lock lever** ① clockwise to unlock the print head.

⚠ CAUTION

- The print head and its surroundings are hot after printing. Be careful not to touch it, to avoid being burned.
- Touching the edge of the print head with your bare hand could cause injury.

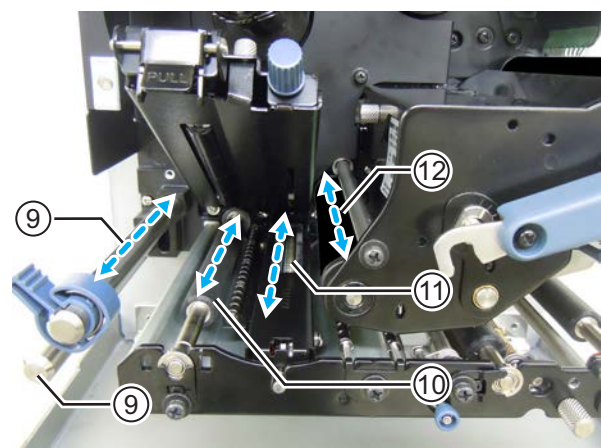
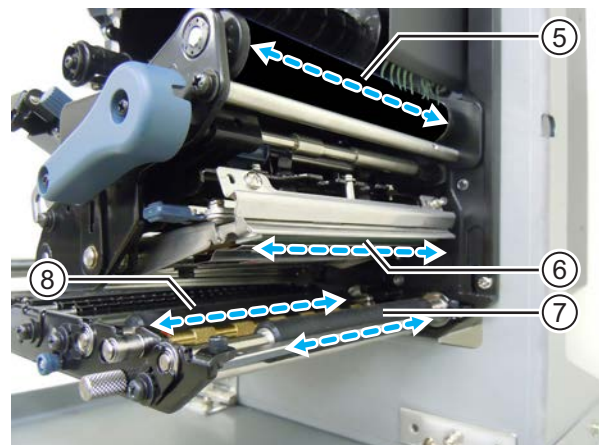
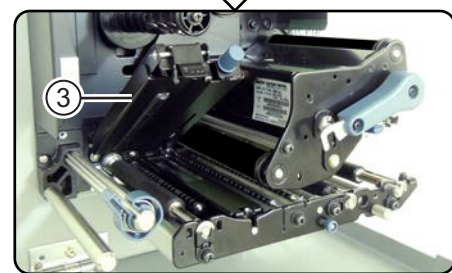
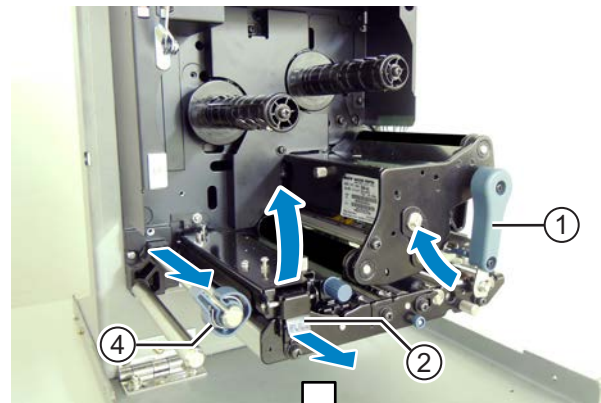
- 4** Pull the **feed lock latch** ② to unlock the **feed roller** and **media sensor assembly** ③.

The feed roller and media sensor assembly flipped open.

- 5** Pull the **media guide** ④ away from the printer.

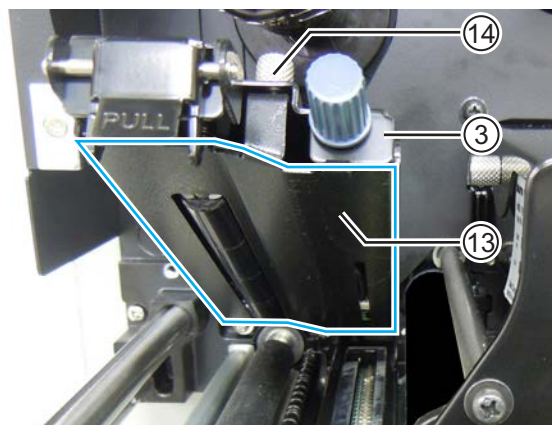
- 6** Clean the dirt on the **ribbon roller** ⑤, **print head** ⑥, **platen roller** ⑦ and **pressure roller** ⑧ using a cleaning pen or a cotton swab/cloth dabbed with cleaning liquid.

- 7** Clean the dirt on the **media shafts** ⑨, **feed roller** ⑩, **media sensor** ⑪ and **ribbon roller** ⑫ using a cleaning pen or a cotton swab/cloth dabbed with cleaning liquid.

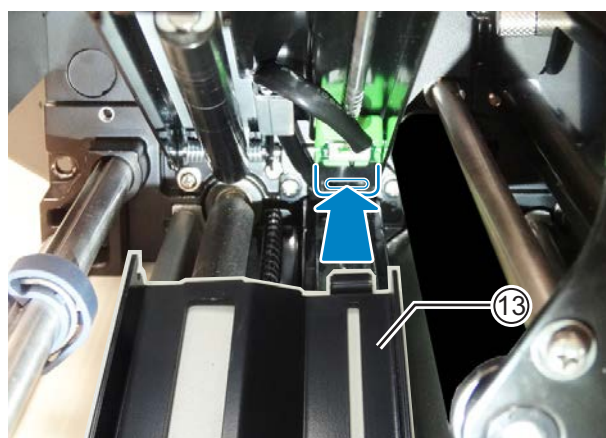


8 Clean the bottom of the **feed roller** and **media sensor assembly** ③ using the cotton cloth dabbed with cleaning liquid.

9 You can remove the **media sensor cover** ⑬ to clean the surface easily. Remove the **thumbscrew** ⑭ attached to the **media sensor cover**.

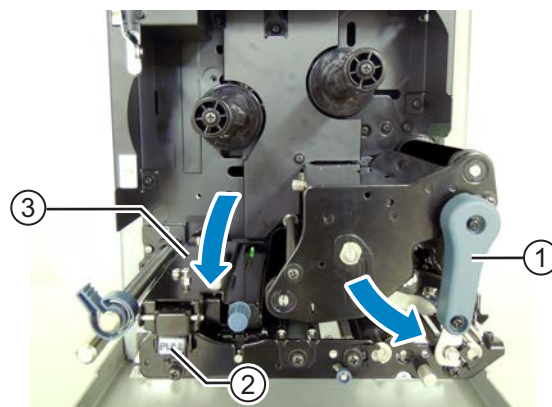


10 To assemble the **media sensor cover** ⑬, make sure that you insert the tab of the **media sensor cover** ⑬ to the slot as shown. Then, attach the **media sensor cover** ⑬ using the **thumbscrew** ⑭.



11 Turn the **head lock lever** ① counterclockwise to lock the print head.

12 Press the **feed roller** and **media sensor assembly** ③ down until the **feed lock latch** ② is locked.



6.2.2 Maintenance using the Cleaning Sheet

The maintenance procedure using the cleaning sheet is as follows:

1 Make sure that the printer is in power off mode, then disconnect the power cord from the AC outlet.

2 Open the **top cover**.

CAUTION

Open the top cover fully to prevent accidental drop of the cover.

3 Turn the **head lock lever** ① clockwise to unlock the print head.

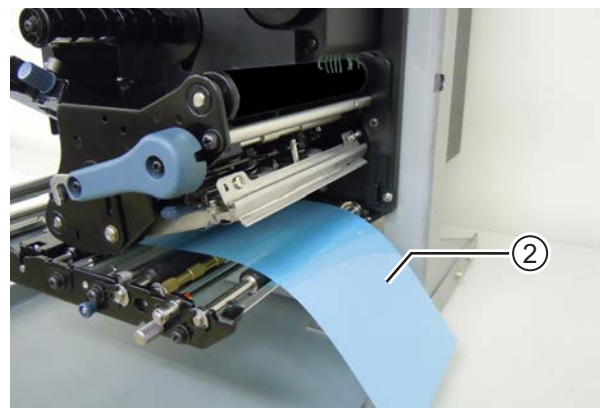
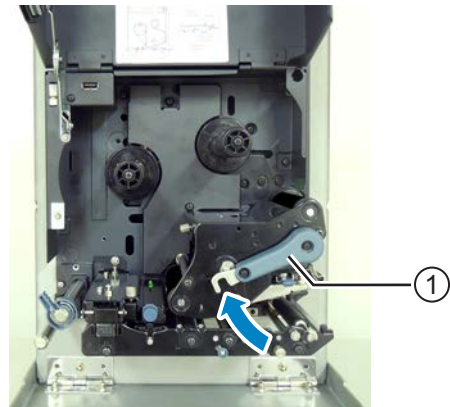
CAUTION

- The print head and its surroundings are hot after printing. Be careful not to touch it, to avoid being burned.
- Touching the edge of the print head with your bare hand could cause injury.

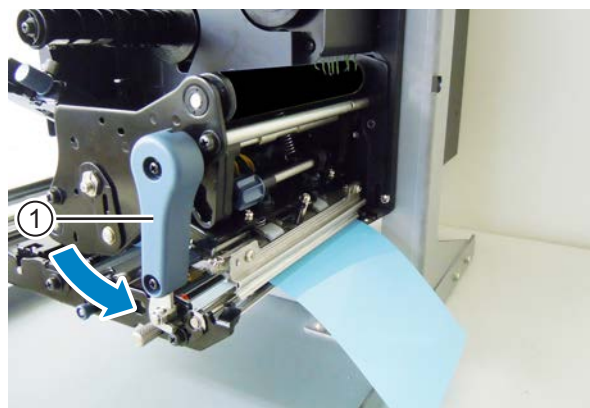
4 Place the **cleaning sheet** ② between the **print head** and the **platen roller**.

Note

Align the rough side of the cleaning sheet adjacent to the print head.



- 5** Turn the **head lock lever** ① counterclockwise to lock the print head.



- 6** Using two hands, pull the **cleaning sheet** away from the printer.

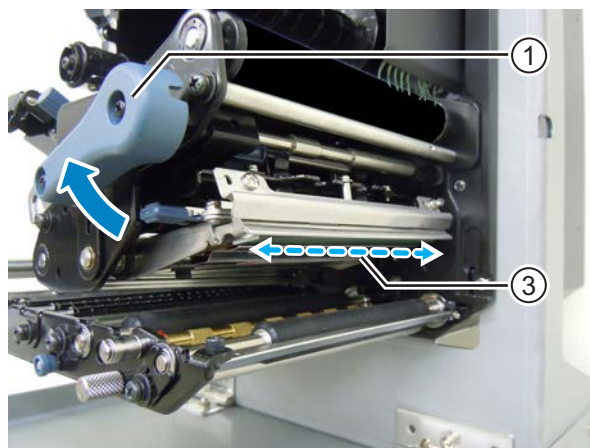
- 7** After you pull out the cleaning sheet, repeat steps 4 through 6, two or three more times.

When no more dirt appears on the cleaning sheet after you have pulled it out, stop repeating these steps.



- 8** Turn the **head lock lever** ① clockwise to unlock the **print head**.

- 9** Use a **cleaning pen** to clean the dirt on the **print head** ③.

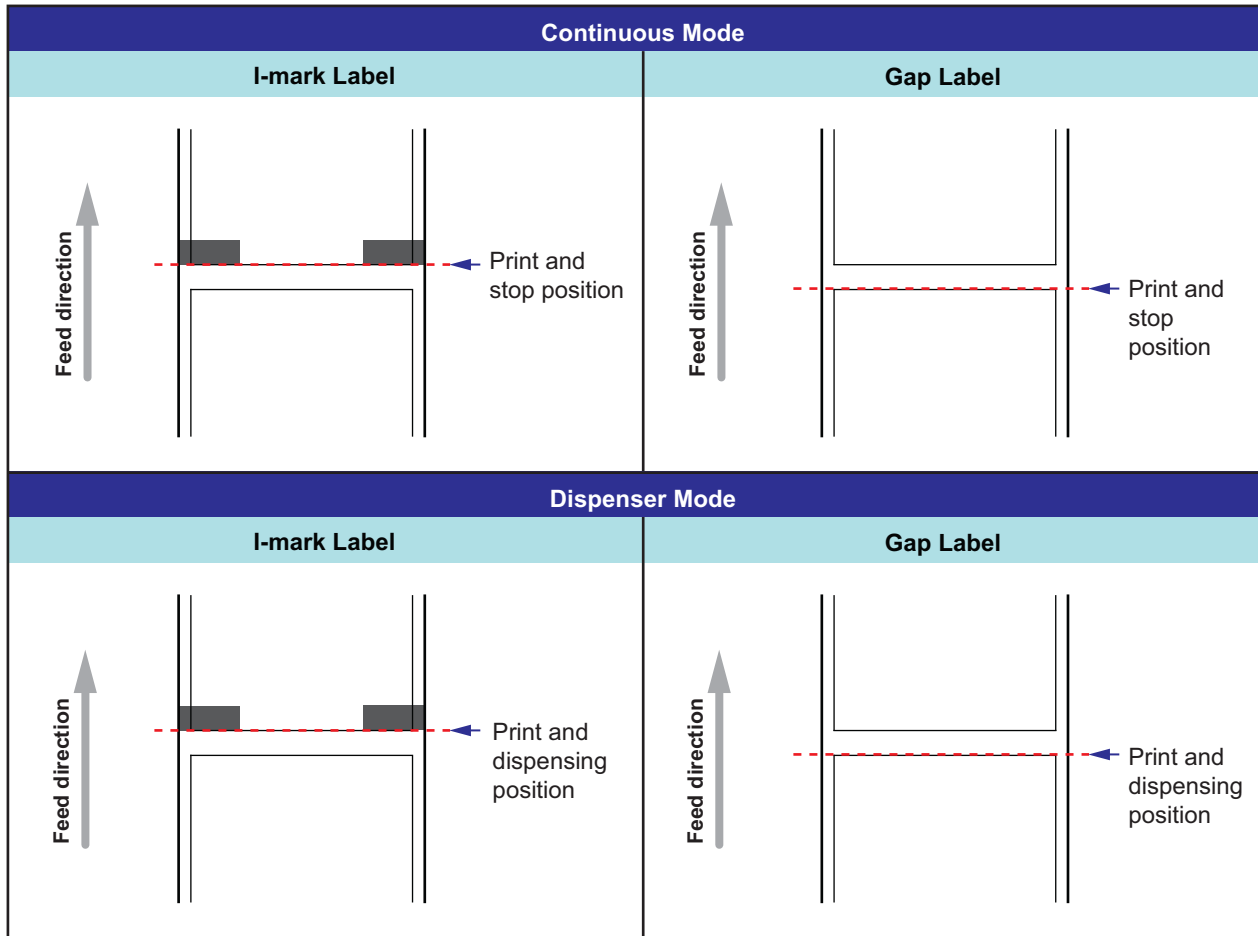


6.3 Adjusting the Base Reference Point

6.3.1 About the Base Reference Point

The base reference point is the point at which one determines the print position and stop/dispensing position.

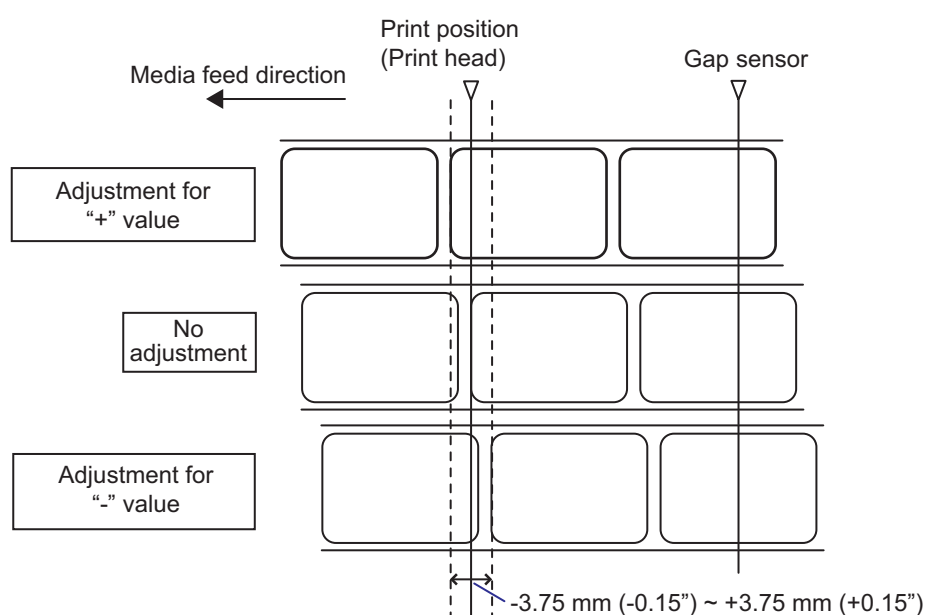
The base reference point differs depending on the operation mode or media sensor you use.



6.3.2 Adjusting the Print Position

Adjustment Location	Adjustment Range
Adjustment Mode: Pitch Position	+3.75 mm to -3.75 mm (+0.15" to -0.15")

Print position is adjustable within the range of +3.75 mm to -3.75 mm (+0.15" to -0.15") in the adjustment mode described above. The shift experienced by the media, ribbon or print layout can be offset with the adjustment of the pitch position.



Note

The above base reference point (print position) will be the stop position when the sensor type is set to Gap sensor.

Adjust the print position using the following procedure:

- 1** Make sure that the printer is in online mode or offline mode.
- 2** Press the ▲ and ▼ buttons for one second to enter the adjustment mode.
PITCH POSITION shows on the screen.



3 Change the setting value. Press the ▲/▼ buttons to set the desired value.

Set the offset value with '+' to move the print position opposite the feed direction, and value with '-' to move the print position in the feed direction.

The setting value is adjustable by 0.25 mm (0.01") regardless of print resolution.

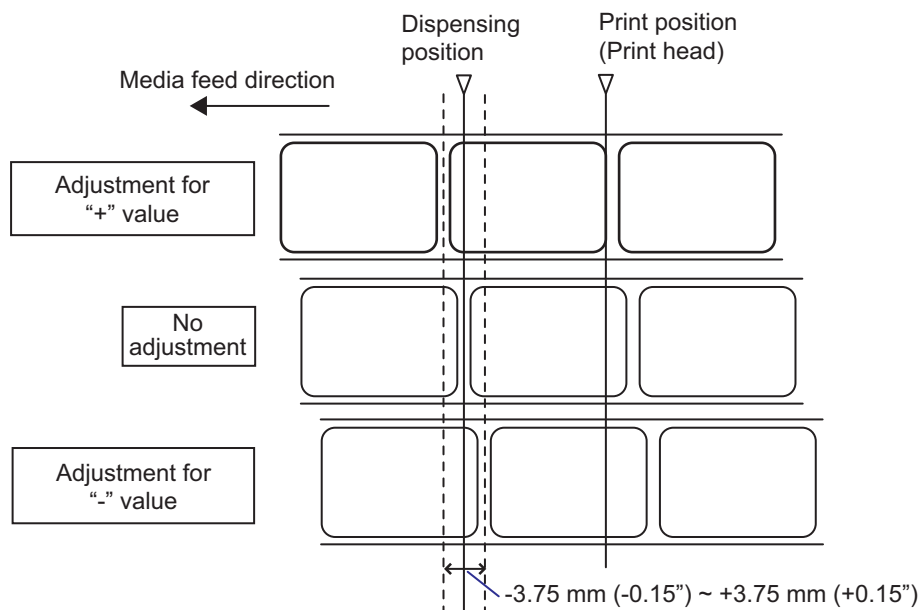
The setting range is from -3.75 mm (-0.15") to +3.75 mm (+0.15").

4 Press the ↵ ENTER button to save the setting and go to the next adjustment screen.

6.3.3 Adjusting the Media Stop Position

Adjustment Location	Adjustment Range
Adjustment Mode: Offset Position	+3.75 mm to -3.75 mm (+0.15" to -0.15")

The stop position for options (such as Dispenser) is adjustable within the range of +3.75 mm to -3.75 mm (+0.15" to -0.15") in the adjustment mode described above.



Note

The above dispensing position for printing indicates the label stop position when the media sensor is set to Gap sensor.

Adjust the stop position using the following procedure:

1 Make sure that the printer is in online mode or offline mode.

2 Press the ▲ and ▼ buttons for one second to enter the adjustment mode.

PITCH POSITION shows on the screen.



3 Press the ↵ **ENTER** button to go to the next adjustment screen.

OFFSET POSITION shows on the screen.



4 Change the setting value. Press the ▲ / ▼ buttons to set the desired value.

Set the offset value with '+' to move the stop position opposite the feed direction, and value with '-' to move the stop position in the feed direction.

The setting value is adjustable by 0.25 mm (0.01") regardless of print resolution.

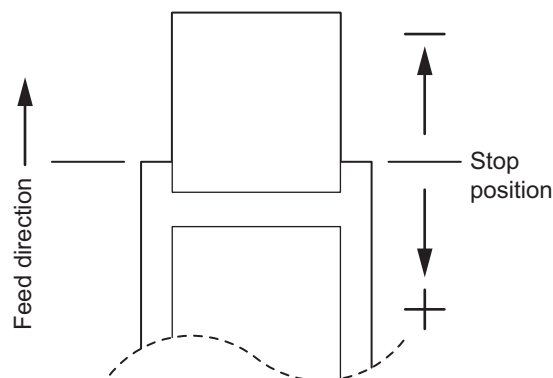
The setting range is from -3.75 mm (-0.15") to +3.75 mm (+0.15").

5 Press the ↵ **ENTER** button to save the setting and proceed to the next adjustment screen.

6.3.4 More about the Media Stop Position

Stop position of the label in dispenser mode.

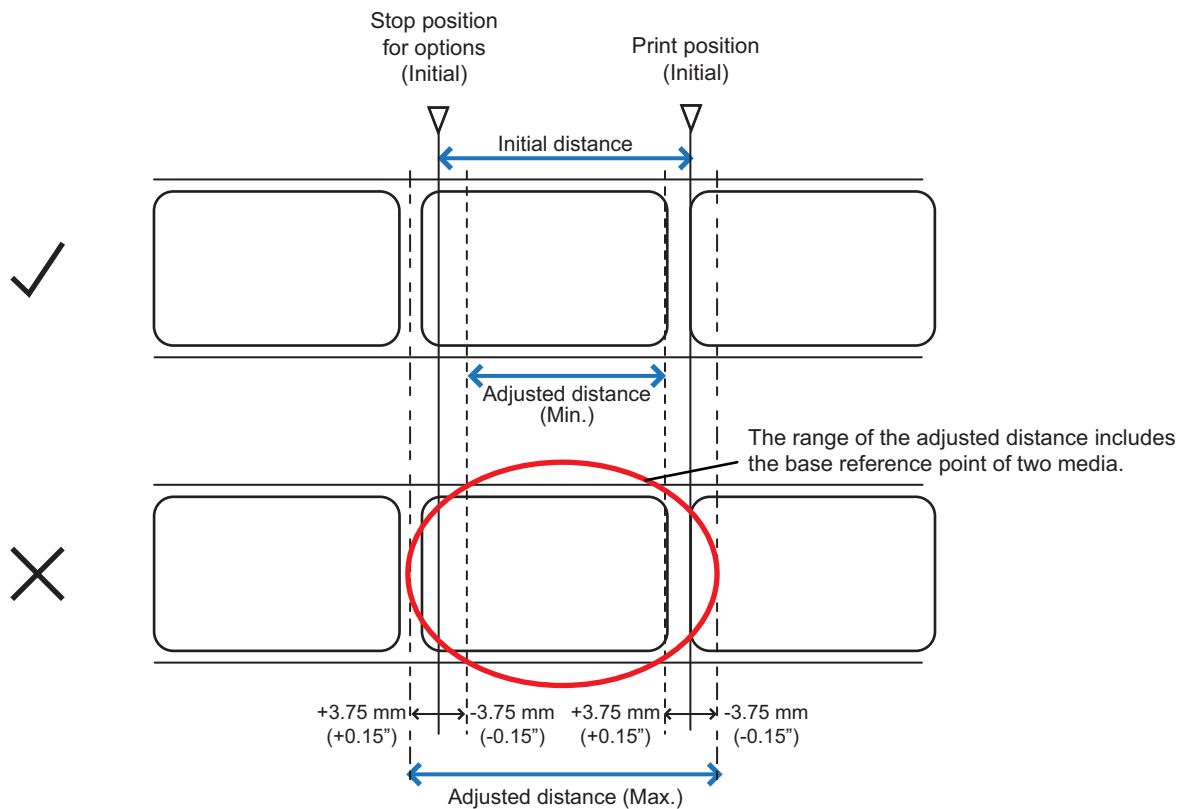
The regular position is to let the label stay about 1 mm (0.04") on the liner.



6.3.5 Limitation on Base Reference Point Adjustment

After adjusting the print position and stop position, the distance between these two positions should not exceed one pitch size (including liner) of the media.

Refer to the figure and table below for the adjustment range of the distance between the print position and the stop position for options.



Adjustment range of the distance between the print position and the stop position for options:

Types of Options	Adjusted Distance (Min.)	Initial Distance	Adjusted Distance (Max.)
Dispenser	7.5 mm (0.3")	15.0 mm (0.6")	22.5 mm (0.9")

6.4 Adjusting the Print Quality

You can adjust the print quality by adjusting the print darkness and print speed.

6.4.1 Adjustment of the Print Darkness

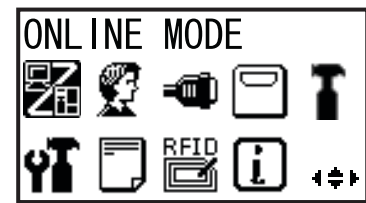
The adjustment procedure for the print darkness is as follows:

Note

You can fine tune the print darkness by setting the **DARKNESS** in the adjustments mode. Refer to [Section 4.2.5 Adjustment Mode](#) for details.

1 When the printer is in online mode, press the **LINE** button to change the printer to offline mode.

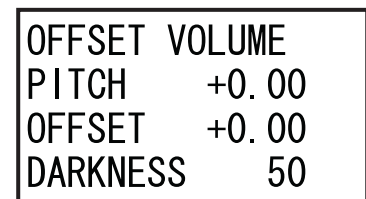
2 Press the **ENTER** button.
The printer changes to setting mode menu.



3 Select the **USER MODE** using the **▲/▼/◀/▶** buttons.
USER MODE shows on the screen and the icon is highlighted in reverse.



4 Press the **ENTER** button to enter the user mode.
OFFSET VOLUME shows on the screen.



Note

If password function is enabled, PASSWORD is shown on the screen instead. In this case, enter the password first.

5 Press the **↵ ENTER** button again until PRINT DARKNESS shows on the screen.

6 Press the **▲/▼** buttons to select a value.

The setting range is from 1 to 10. 1 is the lightest and 10 is the darkest.

7 Press the **↵ ENTER** button to save the setting.

8 Press the **↩ FUNCTION** button to return to the setting mode menu.



6.4.2 Adjusting the Print Speed

The adjustment of the print speed not only changes the speed of printing but also affects the print quality. The setting range of the print speed varies depending on the following print resolution:

Model	Print Resolution	Print Speed Setting Range
S84-ex	203 dpi (8 dots/mm)	4 to 16 (inches/sec)
S84-ex	305 dpi (12 dots/mm)	4 to 14 (inches/sec)
S84-ex	609 dpi (24 dots/mm)	2 to 6 (inches/sec)
S86-ex	203 dpi (8 dots/mm)	4 to 14 (inches/sec)
S86-ex	305 dpi (12 dots/mm)	4 to 12 (inches/sec)

The adjustment procedure for the print speed is as follows:

1 When the printer is in online mode, press the **▶|| LINE** button to change the printer to offline mode.

2 Press the **↵ ENTER** button.

The printer changes to setting mode menu.



3 Select the **USER MODE** using the **▲/▼/◀/▶** buttons.

USER MODE shows on the screen and the icon is highlighted in reverse.



- 4** Press the **↵ ENTER** button to enter the user mode.

OFFSET VOLUME shows on the screen.

Note

If password function is enabled, PASSWORD is shown on the screen instead. In this case, enter the password first.

OFFSET VOLUME	
PITCH	+0.00
OFFSET	+0.00
DARKNESS	50

- 5** Press the **↵ ENTER** button again until PRINT SPEED shows on the screen.

- 6** Press the **▲/▼** buttons to select a value.

- 7** Press the **↵ ENTER** button to save the setting.

- 8** Press the **↶ FUNCTION** button to return to the setting mode menu.

PRINT SPEED	
06 IPS	
⬆	

6.5 Adjusting the Media Sensors

You can check the media sensor condition and adjust the media sensor level for optimum performance.

6.5.1 Adjusting the Media Sensor Automatically

The automatic adjustment procedure for the media sensor is as follows:

- 1 When the printer is in online mode, press the **LINE** button to change the printer to offline mode.
- 2 Press the **ENTER** button.
The printer changes to setting mode menu.



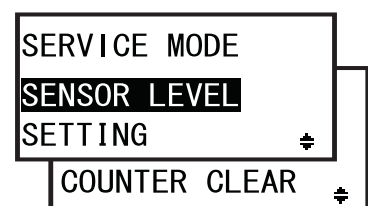
- 3 Select the **SERVICE MODE** using the **▲/▼/◀/▶** buttons and then press the **ENTER** button.
SERVICE MODE setting screen shows.



Note

If password function is enabled, PASSWORD is shown on the screen instead. Enter the password to continue.

- 4 Select the **SENSOR LEVEL** using the **▲/▼** buttons and then press the **ENTER** button.
SENSOR LEVEL shows on the screen.



- 5 Select **AUTO** using the **▲/▼** buttons and then press the **ENTER** button.
SENSOR SELECT shows on the screen.



- 6** Press the ▲/▼ buttons to select the type of sensor to be adjusted and then press the ↵ **ENTER** button.

The instruction of placing the media shows.



When I-MARK is selected



When GAP is selected



- 7** Open the **top cover** and unlock the **media feed** and **media sensor assembly** ①.

- 8** Place the **media/liner** ② on the media sensor.

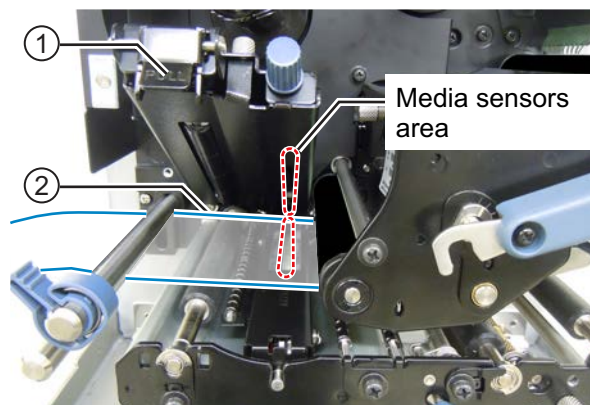
To adjust the **I-mark sensor**, place the white area of media under the media sensor.

To adjust the **gap sensor**, peel off the label and place the liner under the media sensor.

- 9** Press the **media feed** and **media sensor assembly** ① down to lock it.

To get the correct adjustment result, perform the adjustment after you have closed the **media sensor assembly**.

- 10** Press the ↵ **ENTER** button to start the sensor adjustment.



- 11** The sensor adjustment result shows.
CALIBRATION COMPLETE shows when the automatic adjustment has succeeded.
CALIBRATION FAILED shows when the automatic adjustment has failed.

A rectangular screen with a black border. The text is arranged in three lines: "CALIBRATION" at the top, "COMPLETE" in the middle, and "PRESS ENTER KEY" at the bottom.

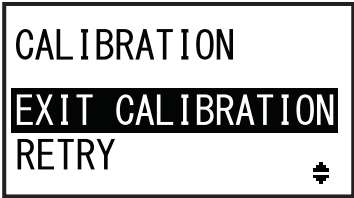
CALIBRATION
COMPLETE
PRESS ENTER KEY

- 12** Press the **↵** **ENTER** button to proceed to next screen.

A rectangular screen with a black border. The text is arranged in three lines: "CALIBRATION" at the top, "FAILED" in the middle, and "PRESS ENTER KEY" at the bottom.

CALIBRATION
FAILED
PRESS ENTER KEY

- 13** Press the **▲/▼** buttons to select the following function and then press the **↵** **ENTER** button.
- **EXIT CALIBRATION:** Exit the automatic sensor adjustment mode.
Select **EXIT CALIBRATION** if COMPLETE is shown in step 11. The printer returns to SERVICE MODE setting screen.
 - **RETRY:** Retry the automatic sensor adjustment.
Select **RETRY** if FAILED is shown in step 11. The printer goes to SENSOR SELECT screen and repeat steps 6 through 12.

A rectangular screen with a black border. The text is arranged in three lines: "CALIBRATION" at the top, "EXIT CALIBRATION" in the middle (highlighted with a black background), and "RETRY" at the bottom. A small printer icon is in the bottom right corner.

CALIBRATION
EXIT CALIBRATION
RETRY

Note

If CALIBRATION FAILED shows in step 11, clean the media sensor and repeat the above steps for auto adjustment. Select RETRY in step 13. If the problem persists, adjust the media sensor sensitivity level manually. Refer to the following procedures for manual adjustment.

6.5.2 Adjusting the I-mark Sensor Level Manually

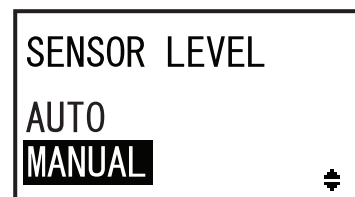
The adjustment procedure for the I-mark sensor level is as follows:

- 1 Go to the SENSOR LEVEL setting screen of SERVICE MODE.

Perform steps 1 through 4 of [Section 6.5.1 Adjusting the Media Sensor Automatically](#).

- 2 Select **MANUAL** using the ▲/▼ buttons and then press the ↵ **ENTER** button.

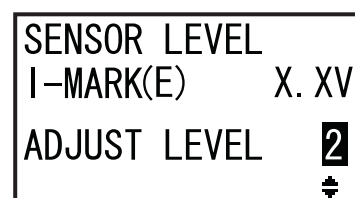
The light emission level adjustment of the I-mark sensor is shown.



- 3 On the SENSOR LEVEL I-MARK(E) screen, press the ▲/▼ buttons to set ADJUST LEVEL to 2 and then press the ↵ **ENTER** button.

The adjustment range of ADJUST LEVEL is from 0 to 3.

We recommend using the initial value which is 2. The light reception level adjustment of the I-mark sensor is shown.



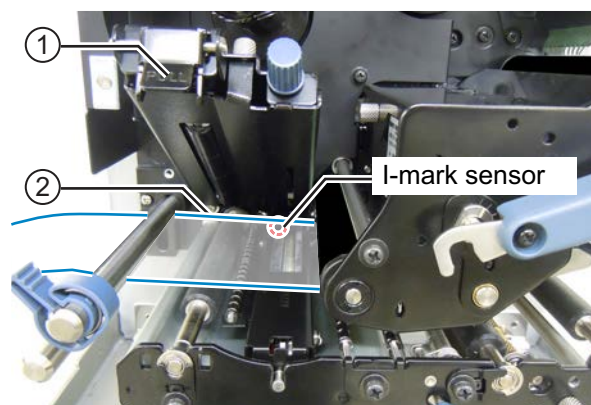
First, adjust the “Low” reception level (voltage) of the I-mark sensor.

- 4 Open the **top cover** and unlock the **media feed** and **media sensor assembly** ①.

- 5 Physically place the media ②, with the portion without the I-mark resting over the I-mark sensor.

- 6 Press the **media feed** and **media sensor assembly** ① down to lock it.

To get the correct adjustment result, close the **media sensor assembly** before performing the adjustment.



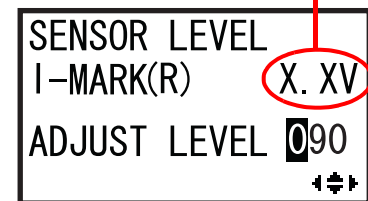
- 7** Press the $\blacktriangle/\blacktriangledown$ buttons to change ADJUST LEVEL until the I-MARK(R) value is 1.0 V or lower.

The adjustment range of ADJUST LEVEL is from 0 to 127.

Note

The ADJUST LEVEL manipulates the potentiometer which will be, therefore, reset to 90, the default value when replacing the PCB or initializing the settings.

Low level: $\leq +1.0\text{V}$



- 8** Take a note of the I-MARK(R) value from the above procedure. This is the “Low” level value for the I-mark sensor.

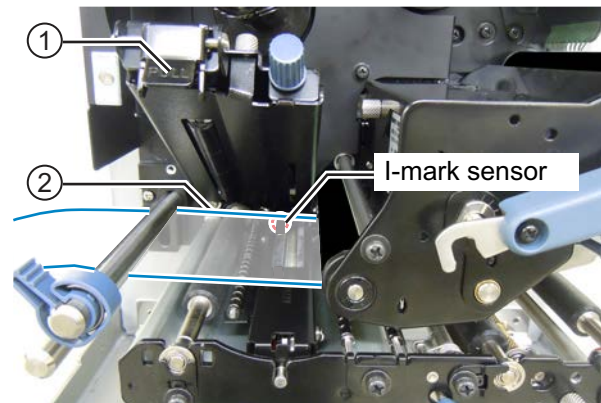
Next, check the “High” level (voltage) of the I-mark sensor.

- 9** Unlock the **media feed** and **media sensor assembly** ①.

- 10** Physically place the I-mark media ② again, so that the media sensor can sense the I-mark.

- 11** Press the **media feed** and **media sensor assembly** ① down to lock it.

To get the correct adjustment result, close the **media sensor assembly** before performing the adjustment.

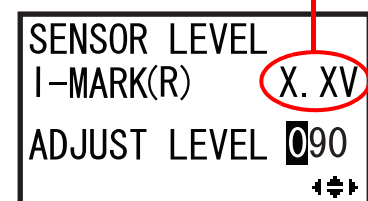


- 12** Check the new I-MARK(R) value. This is the “High” level value for the I-mark sensor.

If the difference between the “High” and the “Low” level values is 1.0 V or more, then the adjustment has satisfied the criteria.

If the difference between the “High” and the “Low” level values is less than 1.0 V, repeat the procedure from steps 4 through 12.

High level



Criteria for Adjustment:

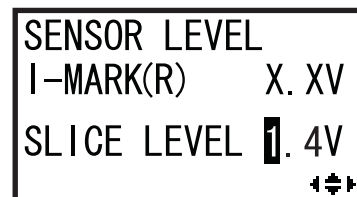
Low level (portion without I-mark):	$\leq +1.0\text{ V}$
High level (I-mark position) - Low level:	$\geq +1.0\text{ V}$

- 13** Press the **↵ ENTER** button to confirm the setting and proceed to slice level adjustment screen.

Note

If you are having difficulties in adjusting the sensor level properly, clean the media sensor portion. If the problem persists, contact your SATO reseller or technical support center to replace the media sensor.

- 14** Press the **▲/▼** buttons to change the SLICE LEVEL and then press the **↵ ENTER** button.
- The slice level can be set to 0.0 V, or from 0.3 V to 2.9 V. (adjustable in increments of 0.1 V)
If you set the SLICE LEVEL to 0.0 V, the printer sets the slice level automatically.



- 15** If you completed with I-mark sensor level adjustment, press the **↵ FUNCTION** button to return to the SERVICE MODE menu. Otherwise, continue with the Gap sensor level adjustment.

Proceed to step 2 of [Section 6.5.3 Adjusting the Gap Sensor Level Manually](#).

6.5.3 Adjusting the Gap Sensor Level Manually

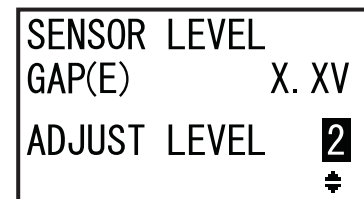
The adjustment procedure for the Gap sensor level is as follows:

- 1** Continue the procedure from step 15 of [Section 6.5.2 Adjusting the I-mark Sensor Level Manually](#).
If you only want to adjust the Gap sensor level, after selecting MANUAL in SENSOR LEVEL screen, press **← ENTER** button repeatedly until SENSOR LEVEL GAP(E) screen is shown.
- 2** On the SENSOR LEVEL GAP(E) screen, press the **▲/▼** buttons to set ADJUST LEVEL to 2 and then press the **← ENTER** button.

The adjustment range of ADJUST LEVEL is from 0 to 3.

We recommend using the initial value which is 2.

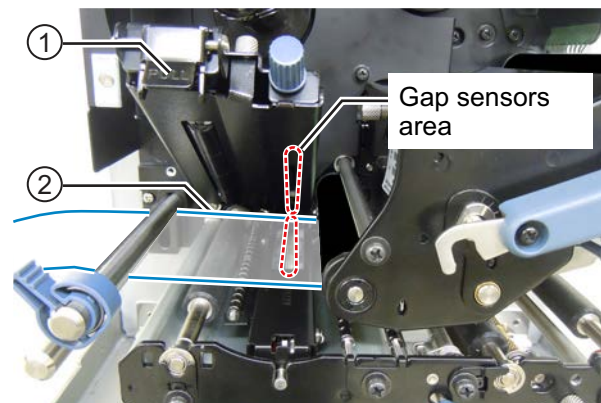
The light reception level adjustment of the Gap sensor is shown.



First, adjust the “Low” reception level (voltage) of the Gap sensor.

- 3** Open the **top cover** and unlock the **media feed** and **media sensor assembly** ①.
- 4** Physically place the liner ② without the label resting over the Gap sensor.
- 5** Press the **media feed** and **media sensor assembly** ① down to lock it.

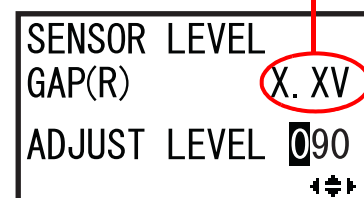
To get the correct adjustment result, close the **media sensor assembly** before performing the adjustment.



- 6** Press the **▲/▼** buttons to change ADJUST LEVEL until the GAP(R) value is 1.0 V or lower.

The adjustment range of ADJUST LEVEL is from 0 to 127.

Low level: $\leq +1.0V$



Note

The ADJUST LEVEL manipulates the potentiometer which will be, therefore, reset to 90, the default value when replacing the PCB or initializing the settings.

- 7** Take a note of the GAP(R) value from the above procedure. This is the “Low” level value for the Gap sensor.

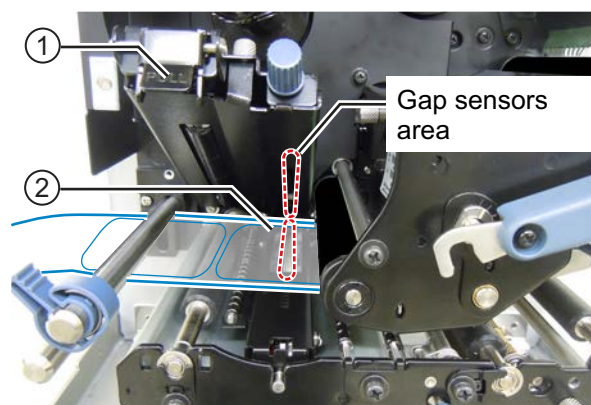
Next, check the “High” level (voltage) of the Gap sensor.

- 8** Unlock the **media feed and media sensor assembly** ①.

- 9** Physically place the label ② resting over the Gap sensor.

- 10** Press the **media feed and media sensor assembly** ① down to lock it.

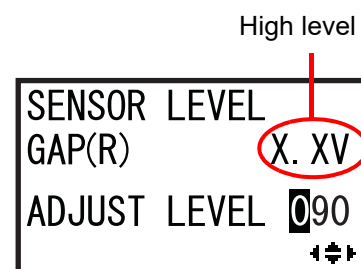
To get the correct adjustment result, close the **media sensor assembly** before performing the adjustment.



- 11** Check the new GAP(R) value. This is the “High” level value for the Gap sensor.

If the difference between the “High” and the “Low” level values is 1.0 V or more, then the adjustment has satisfied the criteria.

If the difference between the “High” and the “Low” level values is less than 1.0 V, repeat the procedure from steps 3 through 11.



Criteria for Adjustment:

Low level (liner portion):	$\leq +1.0 \text{ V}$
High level (label portion) - Low level:	$\geq +1.0 \text{ V}$

- 12** Press the **↵ ENTER** button to confirm the setting and proceed to slice level adjustment screen.

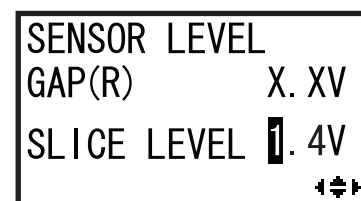
Note

If you are having difficulties in adjusting the sensor level properly, clean the media sensor portion. If the problem persists, contact your SATO reseller or technical support center to replace the media sensor.

- 13** Press the **▲/▼** buttons to change the SLICE LEVEL and then press the **↵ ENTER** button.

The slice level can be set to 0.0 V, or from 0.3 V to 2.9 V. (adjustable in increments of 0.1 V)

If you set the SLICE LEVEL to 0.0 V, the printer sets the slice level automatically.

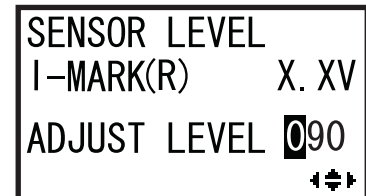


6.5.4 Adjusting the Paper End Sensor

This printer uses an I-mark sensor to sense the Paper end error.

The checking and adjustment procedures for the Paper end (I-mark) sensor level are as follows:

- 1 Go to the SENSOR LEVEL I-MARK(R) setting screen of SERVICE MODE.



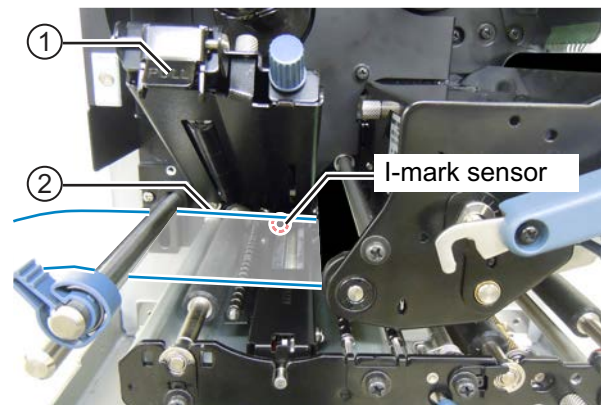
First, check the I-MARK(R) value (voltage) of the Paper end (I-mark) sensor when the liner is placed on the sensor.

- 2 Open the **top cover** and unlock the **media feed and media sensor assembly** ①.

- 3 Physically place the liner ② without the label resting over the I-mark sensor.

- 4 Press the **media feed and media sensor assembly** ① down to lock it.

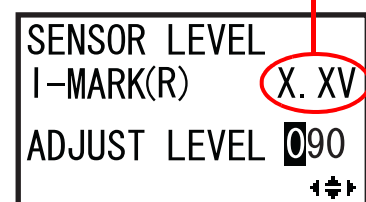
To get the correct adjustment result, close the **media sensor assembly** before performing the adjustment.



- 5 Check if the I-MARK(R) value is 2.0 V or lower.

If not, change ADJUST LEVEL using the ▲ / ▼ buttons until the I-MARK(R) value is 2.0 V or lower.

I-MARK(R) level: $\leq +2.0V$



Next, check the I-MARK(R) value (voltage) of the Paper end (I-mark) sensor when no media is placed on the sensor.

6 Unlock the **media feed and media sensor assembly** ①.

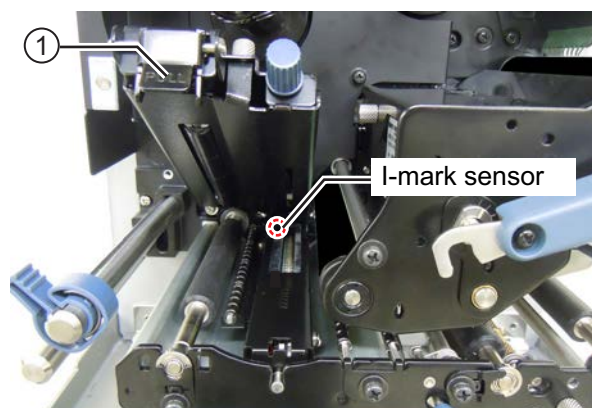
7 Remove all the media from the media sensor.

8 Press the **media feed and media sensor assembly** ① down to lock it.

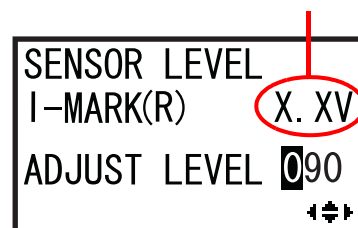
To get the correct adjustment result, close the **media sensor assembly** before performing the adjustment.

9 Check if the new I-MARK(R) value is 2.2 V or higher.

If not, change ADJUST LEVEL using the ▲ / ▼ buttons until the I-MARK(R) value is 2.2 V or higher.



I-MARK(R) level $\geq +2.2V$



Criteria for Adjustment:

I-MARK(R) value (liner without label):	$\leq +2.0 V$
I-MARK(R) value (without any media):	$\geq +2.2 V$

10 Press the **↵ ENTER** button to confirm the setting.

11 Press the **↶ FUNCTION** button to return to the SERVICE MODE menu.

6.6 Adjusting the Head Pressure Balance

Print head balance refers to the equalization of pressure between the print head and the platen roller. If the print head balance is out of adjustment, the printed image will be darker on one side of the media than the other and the media will be prone to travel in the direction of greater pressure.

Setting the Criteria of the Head Pressure Balance

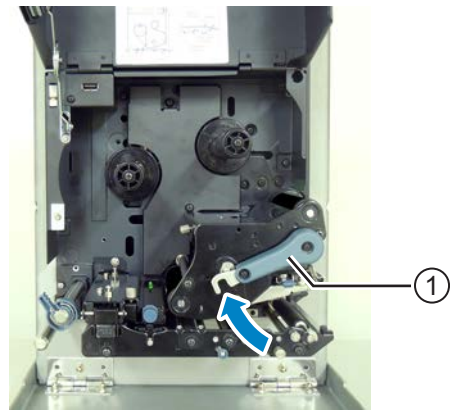
- Set the pressure balance according to the media width.
- Set the head pressure according to the media thickness, including the liner.

Required tool:

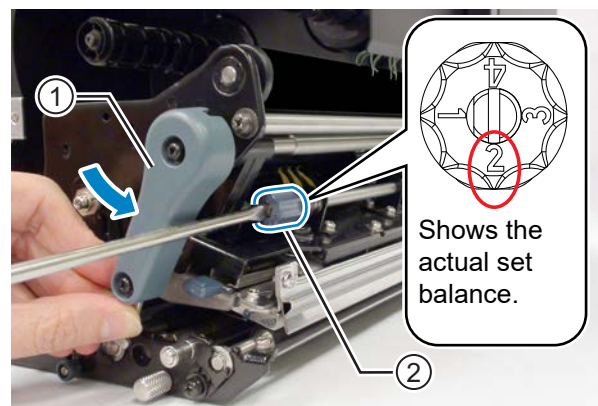
Slotted screw driver

The adjustment procedure for the pressure balance is as follows:

- 1 Open the **top cover** of the printer.
- 2 Turn the **head lock lever** ① clockwise to unlock the print head.



- 3 Then, turn the **head lock lever** ① back before it locks. You can find the **adjustment dial** ② beside the **head lock lever** as shown.



- 4** Use the slotted screw driver to turn the **adjustment dial** ②. Set the pressure balance according to the media width and media thickness.

Media Thickness		0.05 to 0.20 mm (0.002" to 0.0079") Thin paper/normal label, etc.		0.20 to 0.31 mm (0.0079" to 0.30122") Thick paper/tag, etc.	
Media Width	S84-ex	30 to 128 mm (1.18" to 5.04")	10 to <30 mm (0.39" to <1.18")	30 to 128 mm (1.18" to 5.04")	10 to <30 mm (0.39" to <1.18")
	S86-ex	80 to 177 mm (3.15" to 6.97")	51 to <80 mm (2.01" to <3.15")	80 to 177 mm (3.15" to 6.97")	51 to <80 mm (2.01" to <3.15")
Pressure Balance Adjustment Dial		①	③	②	④

Note

- The factory default setting is ②.
- The thickness of the media includes the liner.

6.7 Adjusting the Head Position

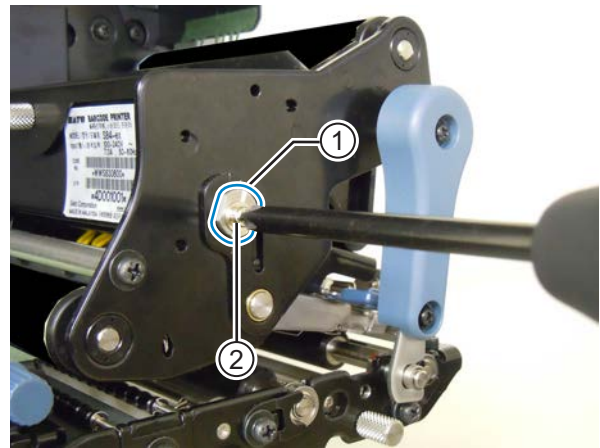
6.7.1 Left - Right Pressure Balance Setting

Required tool:

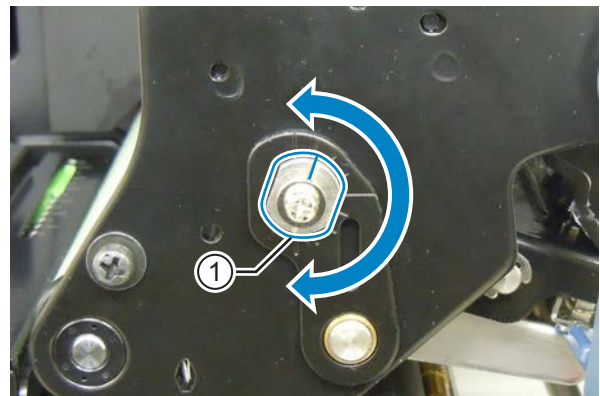
Phillips screwdriver

The adjustment procedure for the pressure balance is as follows:

- 1** Open the **top cover** of the printer.
- 2** Make sure that the **head lock lever** is in the lock position.
If it is not locked, turn the **head lock lever** counterclockwise to lock the print head.
- 3** Locate the **adjust collar** ① on the side of the **print head assembly**.
- 4** Loosen the **screw** ② attached to the **adjust collar** ①.
Do not remove the screw.



- 5** Rotate the **adjust collar** ① to adjust the head pressure balance.
 - Rotate the **adjust collar** counterclockwise to increase the head pressure on the frame side.
 - Rotate the **adjust collar** clockwise to increase the head pressure on the opposite side.



Note

If the printer orientation is opposite from the photo, the adjustment direction is reversed.

- 6** Hold the **adjust collar** ① in the set position and tighten the **screw** ②.

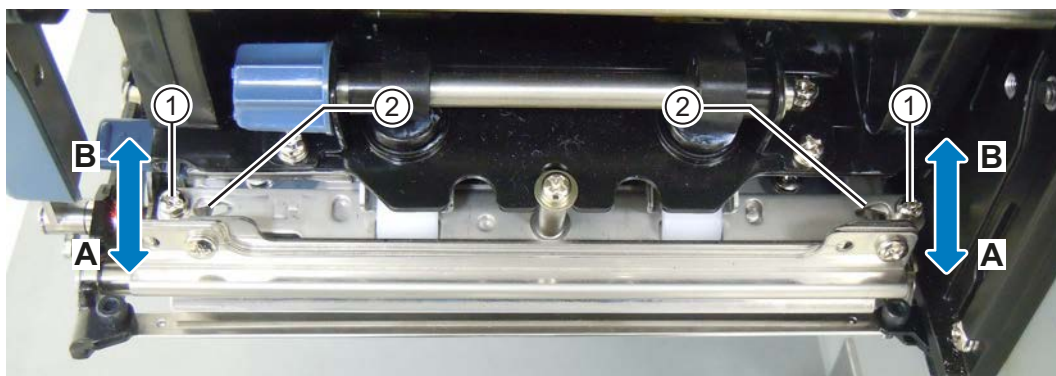
6.7.2 Front - Rear Head Alignment

Required tools:

- Phillips screwdriver
- Slotted screwdriver

The adjustment procedure for the head alignment is as follows:

- 1** Open the **top cover** of the printer.
- 2** Make sure that the **head lock lever** is in the lock position.
If it is not locked, turn the **head lock lever** counterclockwise to lock the print head.
- 3** Locate two **screws** ① from the front of the **print head assembly**.



- 4** Loosen two **screws** ① using the Phillips screwdriver.
Do not remove the screws.
- 5** Insert the slotted screwdriver into the **regulation apertures** ② on the left and right sides. Adjust the head position by turning the slotted screwdriver in the relevant direction.
 - Direction A: Print head position moves forward.
 - Direction B: Print head position moves backward.
- 6** Tighten two **screws** ①.

6.8 Adjusting the Ribbon Tension Balance

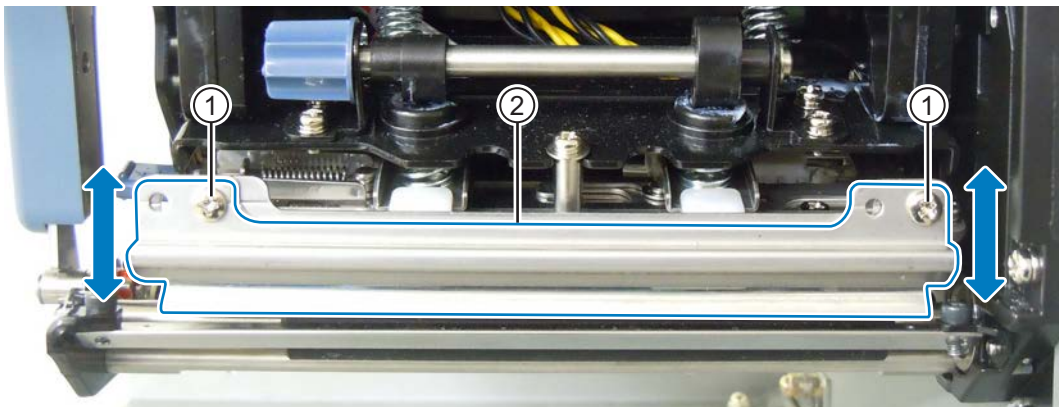
If the ribbon is not spread smoothly over the print head, print voids will occur at the point of the ribbon fold. Typically, this is the result of the axis of the ribbon spindle, print head and the ribbon adjustment plate not being perfectly parallel.

Required tool:

Phillips screwdriver

The adjustment procedure for the ribbon tension is as follows:

- 1** Open the **top cover** of the printer.
- 2** Turn the **head lock lever** clockwise to unlock the print head.
- 3** Locate two **screws** ① from the front of the **print head assembly**.



- 4** Loosen two **screws** ① attached to the **ribbon adjustment plate** ②.
Do not remove the screws.
- 5** Adjust the **ribbon adjustment plate** ② as shown below.
 - Adjust the left side of the plate upward when a wrinkle occurs on the right.
 - Adjust the right side of the plate upward when a wrinkle occurs on the left.
- 6** Hold the **ribbon adjustment plate** ② in the set position and tighten two **screws** ①.
- 7** Perform a test print to check the printing quality.
The ribbon must not be wrinkled or meander.
- 8** Repeat the procedure from steps 1 through 6 until the ribbon tension is even on both sides.

6.9 Adjusting the Media Feed Roller Balance

If the media is inclined to meander at the media feed-in to one side, media feed roller balance adjustment may be required.

This media feed roller is spring loaded on each end and embedded in the media sensor assembly. By adjusting the screw on either end downward, the pressure on that end is increased. Likewise, an adjustment of the screw upward on either end, reduces pressure on that side.

Before adjusting the media feed roller, ensure the print head is properly positioned and balanced.

Required tools:

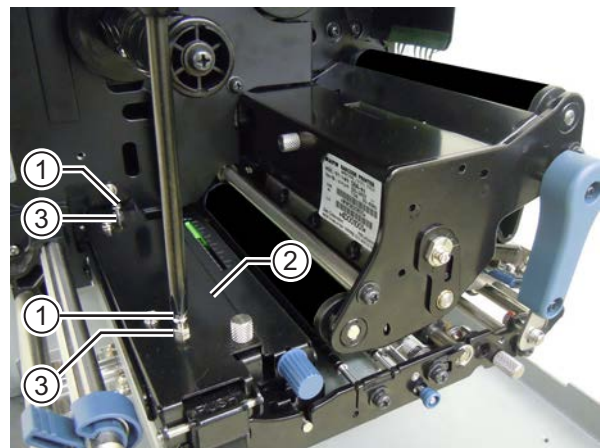
Phillips screwdriver

Long-nose pliers or wrench

The adjustment procedure for the media feed roller balance is as follows:

- 1** Open the **top cover** of the printer.
- 2** Locate two **screws** ① on the top of the **feed roller and media sensor assembly** ②.
- 3** Loosen the **locknut** ③ underneath the **screw** ① on either side.
- 4** Adjust the relative **screw** ① to increase or decrease the pressure.
 - Tighten the screw to increase the roller pressure.
 - Loosen the screw to decrease the roller pressure.
- 5** Perform media feed to check the flow of the media.

The media must not meander.
- 6** Adjust the same **screw** ① in step 4 again until the media feed without meandering.
- 7** When the desired outcome is achieved, hold the adjusted **screw** ① in position while tightening the relative **locknut** ③.



7

Troubleshooting

This chapter explains the errors that can occur on the printer and the displays for indicating the current status.

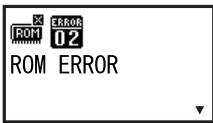
7.1 When an Error Message Occurs

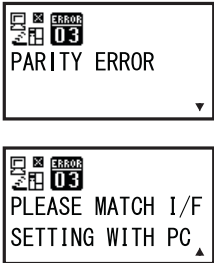
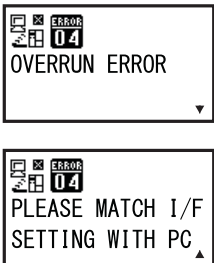
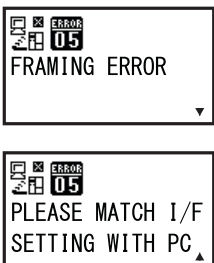
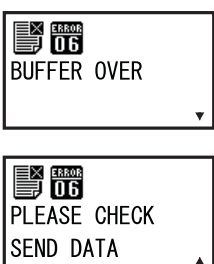
When there is an error on the printer, the error message will show on the screen. The error message and the countermeasure message alternate every three seconds. These screens can be switched using the ▲ / ▼ buttons.

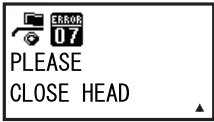
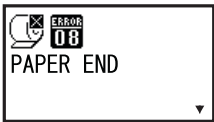
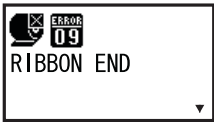
CAUTION

Where parts replacement is concerned, contact your SATO reseller or technical support center to perform internal inspections and repairs.

The error message, its cause and the countermeasures are as follows.

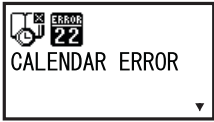
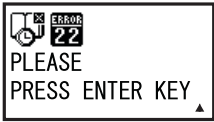
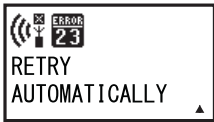
Error				
No.	Message	LED/Buzzer	Cause	Countermeasure
01	Machine error	Lights red.	Defective circuit board.	Replace the main (CONT) PCB.
	 	One long beep. To clear the error: Power off the printer.		
02	Flash ROM error	Lights red.	Flash ROM is not accessible.	Replace the main (CONT) PCB.
	 	One long beep. To clear the error: Power off the printer.	Number of write has been exceeded.	

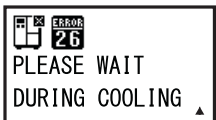
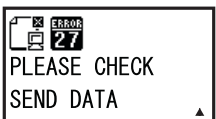
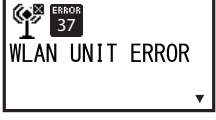
Error				
No.	Message	LED/Buzzer	Cause	Countermeasure
03	Parity error	Flashes blue and red alternately.	RS-232C settings are incorrect.	Adjust the interface settings correctly.
		Three short beeps. To clear the error: Power off the printer.	The cable connection is incorrect.	Check and connect the cable correctly.
04	Overrun error	Flashes blue and red alternately.	RS-232C settings are incorrect.	Adjust the interface settings correctly.
		Three short beeps. To clear the error: Power off the printer.	The cable connection is incorrect.	Check and connect the cable correctly.
05	Framing error	Flashes blue and red alternately.	RS-232C settings are incorrect.	Adjust the interface settings correctly.
		Three short beeps. To clear the error: Power off the printer.	The cable connection is incorrect.	Check and connect the cable correctly.
06	Buffer overflow	Flashes blue and red alternately.	The size of the received data exceeds the size of the receive buffer.	Do not send data that exceeds the size of the receive buffer.
		Three short beeps. To clear the error: Power off the printer.	The communication settings between the printer and the host are incorrect.	Set the communication between the printer and the host correctly.

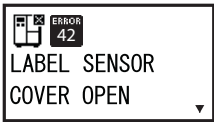
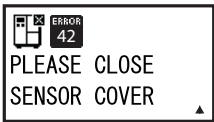
Error				
No.	Message	LED/Buzzer	Cause	Countermeasure
07	Head open	Flashes red.	The print head is unlocked.	Lock the print head.
	 	Three short beeps. To clear the error: Close the print head.	The sensor for sensing the open/close status of the print head is defective.	Replace the sensor for sensing the open/close status of the print head.
08	Paper end	Flashes red.	The media is not loaded.	Load the media correctly.
		Three short beeps.	The media is not loaded correctly.	
		To clear the error: Open and close the print head.	The sensitivity of the media sensor is not set correctly.	Adjust the sensor level.
			The media has jammed.	Remove the jammed media.
			The media sensor is dirty.	Clean the media sensor.
			The cable of the media sensor is disconnected.	Connect the cable of the media sensor correctly.
09	Ribbon end	Flashes red.	The ribbon is not loaded.	Load a new ribbon.
		Three short beeps.	The ribbon is damaged.	
		To clear the error: Open and close the print head.	The ribbon is not loaded correctly.	Load the ribbon correctly.
			The ribbon is torn.	Clean and adjust the ribbon path.
10	Sensor error	Lights red.	The media sensor level is incorrect.	Adjust the media sensor level.
		Three short beeps.	The sensor type is incorrect.	Use the correct sensor type.
		To clear the error: Open and close the print head.	Meandering media.	Clean and adjust the media path.

Error				
No.	Message	LED/Buzzer	Cause	Countermeasure
11	Print head error 	Lights red. One long beep. To clear the error: Power off or change the head check conditions.	The print elements are worn out.	Change print head check conditions to only check for missing elements in barcodes and try to adjust missing elements to white bars. Refer to Section 7.1.2 More Information about Head Check Function for details.
			The print head is damaged.	Replace the print head. Refer to Section 8.7.1 Replacing the Print Head for details.
12	Memory write error  Printer memory:  USB memory: 	Flashes red. One long beep. To clear the error: Power off the printer.	The USB memory is disconnected while writing.	Connect the USB memory.
			The copy area in the memory is not sufficient.	Make sure that the memory has sufficient copy area.
			Writing to the memory fails.	Replace the memory.
			The USB memory is not formatted.	Format the USB memory in the memory mode. Refer to Section 4.2.11 Memory Mode for details.
	SD card write error  	Flashes red. One long beep. To clear the error: Power off the printer.	The SD card is not connected.	Connect the SD card.
			The SD card is not connected correctly.	Connect the SD card correctly.
			The SD card is disconnected while writing.	Connect the SD card.
			The SD card read/write fails.	Replace the SD card.
			The SD card is not formatted.	Format the SD card in the memory mode. Refer to Section 4.2.11 Memory Mode for details.
			The SD card is write-protected.	Release the write-protect of the SD card.

Error				
No.	Message	LED/Buzzer	Cause	Countermeasure
13	Memory full error	Flashes red.	The space in the memory is not sufficient.	Delete unwanted data from the memory.
	One long beep. To clear the error: Power off the printer.			
14	Download data error	Lights red.	The downloaded data is incorrect.	Check the downloaded data.
	One long beep.		The download area is not sufficient.	Check the downloaded data size.
17	BCC check error	Flashes red.	The BCC code of the data to be sent (one item) is incorrect.	Check the data to be sent and the communication settings. ▶▶ LINE button: Continue printing from the print data where the BCC error occurred. Send the SUB command: Clear the BCC error and continue printing from where it stopped.
	Three short beeps. To clear the error: Press the ▶▶ LINE button or cancel the print job.			
18	Item No. error	Flashes red.	Sequence number of print data (one item) is not increased by one.	Check the data to be sent and the communication settings. ▶▶ LINE button: Continue printing from the print data where the Item No. error occurred. Send the SUB command: Clear the Item No. error and continue printing from where it stopped.
	Three short beeps. To clear the error: Press the ▶▶ LINE button or cancel the print job.		*The sequence number is not in sequential order.	

Error				
No.	Message	LED/Buzzer	Cause	Countermeasure
22	Calendar error  	Lights red. One long beep. To clear the error: Power off the printer.	The date and time of the calendar are incorrect or the calendar IC is not installed.	Check if you have installed the calendar IC or replace the calendar PCB.
23	RFID tag error  *1  or *1 	Flashes red. Three short beeps. To clear the error: Auto recovery or cancel the job. (Press the X CANCEL button or send the CAN command.) *1 The second screen will be switched by EXT signal setting.	Could not read/write to the RFID inlay.	Discard this tag.
23	RFID tag error  	Flashes red. Three short beeps. To clear the error: Press the ▶ LINE or ⏏ FEED button. Press the X CANCEL button or send the CAN command to cancel the job.	The number of failed RFID writes exceeded the specified MAX ERR COUNT.	Discard this tag.

Error				
No.	Message	LED/Buzzer	Cause	Countermeasure
26	Overheat error  	Flashes blue and red alternately. One long beep. To clear the error: Stop the operation of the printer and wait until the temperature decreases.	The temperature of the printer has exceeded its tolerance value.	Stop the operation of the printer to let the temperature decrease.
27	Command error  	Flashes red. Three short beeps. To clear the error: Press the ▶ LINE button.	Incorrect command or parameter in the print data. Caaa: position of error occurrence <bb>: error command name cc: error code	Check the print data. Refer to Section 7.1.1 More Information about Command Error for details.
35	CRC check error  	Flashes red. Three short beeps. To clear the error: Press the ▶ LINE button or cancel the print job.	The CRC code of the data to be sent (one item) is incorrect.	Check the data to be sent and the communication settings. ▶ LINE button: Continue printing from the print data where the CRC error occurred. Send the SUB command: Clear the CRC error and continue printing from where it stopped.
37	Wireless LAN error  	Flashes blue and red alternately. Three short beeps. To clear the error: Power off the printer.	No wireless LAN unit is connected while the printer is in wireless LAN download mode.	Make sure that the wireless LAN unit is connected correctly.
			The printer failed to connect to the wireless LAN unit.	Change the wireless LAN unit. *When you change the wireless LAN, the data port and sub port in the communication settings change depending on the settings.

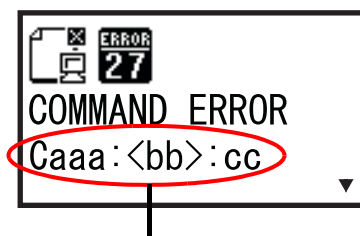
Error				
No.	Message	LED/Buzzer	Cause	Countermeasure
40	Cover open error	Flashes red.	The cover is opened.	Close the cover.
	 	Three short beeps. To clear the error: Close the cover.	The sensor for sensing the open/close status of the cover is defective.	Replace the sensor for sensing the open/close status of the cover.
41	Saver error	Lights red.	The print head cannot stop at the specified position.	Adjust the saver head position.
	 	One long beep. To clear the error: Power off the printer.		Replace the saver sensor. Replace the saver motor and motor driver PCB. Replace the saver cam.
42	Sensor cover open error	Flashes red.	The sensor cover is unlocked.	Lock the sensor cover.
	 	Three short beeps. To clear the error: Close the sensor cover.	The sensor for sensing the open/close status of the sensor cover is defective.	Replace the sensor for sensing the open/close status of the sensor cover.

7.1.1 More Information about Command Error

Printer motion when detecting a command error

When COMMAND ERROR is set to ENABLE in advanced mode, the command error information is shown on the error message (second line), and the print operation is paused.

This error can be cleared by pressing the **▶|| LINE** button, but the data in which an error is detected is discarded and cannot be printed.



Command error information

Location of error occurrence

"Caaa" in the command error message shows the location of command error.

The number of ESC commands from ESC+A is shown in "aaa".

Note that the ESC+A command is not included in the number of ESC commands, which can be shown up to 999. If the number of ESC commands exceeds 999, it is shown as "999".

Example)

When a command error is detected by the Horizontal Print Position <H> command.

```
-----: [ESC]A
C001: [ESC]V100
C002: [ESC]H99999          => Location of the command error
C003: [ESC]L0202
C004: [ESC]M,ABCDEF
C005: [ESC]Q1
C006: [ESC]Z
```

In this case, C002 is the location of the error.

Error command name

The command name, in which an error is detected, is shown in "<bb>".

* A one-byte command name is left aligned.

Error code

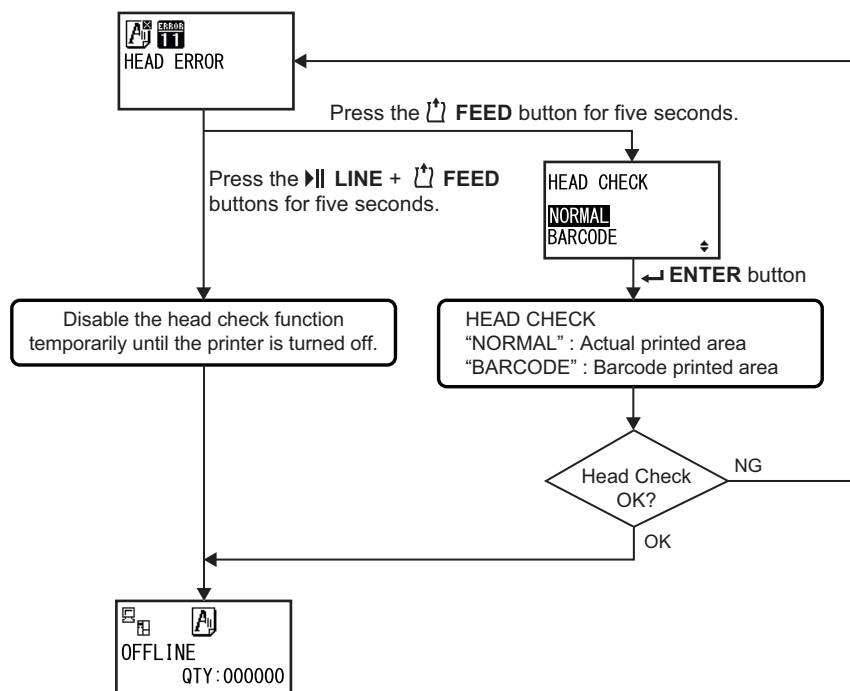
The cause of command error will be indicated in the code in "cc" where an error is being shown.

Code <cc>	Cause
01	Analyzed improper command.
02	Received improper parameter.
03	Analyzed improper graphic and external character data.
04	Specified memory area (card slot) is inappropriate. Tried to write to a write-protected media.
05	Number specified by registration command has already been taken.
06	Exceeded the registration area. (Memory full).
07	Data is not registered.
08	The specified print start position is outside the printable area.
09	The printing image is outside the printable area. (Barcode only).

7.1.2 More Information about Head Check Function

The head check function detects the integrity of the heating elements in the print head. However, malfunctions cannot be detected instantaneously — a few printed media may start showing printing defects before the printer warns of a print head error.

After detection of a print head error, use a scanner to check all affected media.



When a print head error occurs during normal printing (barcodes, text and graphics)

- 1 Press and hold down the **FEED** button for five seconds.
HEAD CHECK setting screen shows.
- 2 Select BARCODE using the **▲/▼** buttons and then press the **ENTER** button.
- 3 See if printing can be resumed normally.

If printing resumes, the print head fault does not fall on the barcode area for the current print job. As such, printing may be continued but with degraded print quality and readable barcodes.

If the head check error still occurs and the current print job has to be completed, printing can be forced to resume by holding down the **LINE** and **FEED** buttons for five seconds.

Read the caution note below before you proceed with this operation.

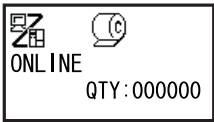
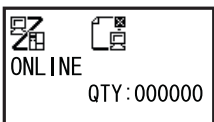
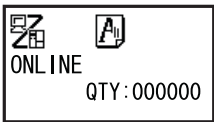
CAUTION

Although restricting the head check type to BARCODE allows you to continue printing, or forcing the printer to resume printing, you should only do so in order to complete an urgent print job. Check the printed media to make sure the output is usable in spite of the head error. As soon as possible, stop using the print head to prevent further damage. If necessary, replace the print head.

7.2 When a Warning Message Occurs

When a warning message is shown on the screen, the printer continues issuing media.

The warning message, its cause and the countermeasures are as follows:

Warning				
No.	Message	LED/Buzzer	Cause	Countermeasure
01	Label near end 	Lights blue. No beep. To clear the error: Open and close the print head.	The remaining amount of media is not enough.	Replace the media. Refer to Section 3.5 Loading Media for details.
02	Ribbon near end 	Lights blue. No beep. To clear the error: Open and close the print head.	The remaining amount of ribbon is not enough.	Replace the ribbon. Refer to Section 3.2 Loading the Ribbon for details.
03	Receive buffer nearly full 	Lights blue. No beep.	Available space for receive buffer is low.	Do not send data from the host until the analysis of received data is completed.
04	Command error 	Lights blue. One short beep. To clear the error: The icon will be cleared by receiving the next item or canceling the job.	Command error has been detected.	Check the print data.
05	Head error 	Lights blue. No beep.	A head check error is detected when "NORMAL" has been selected for the HEAD CHECK setting screen. Change the HEAD CHECK setting to "BARCODE" and continue the print job.	Replace the print head. Refer to Section 8.7.1 Replacing the Print Head for details.

Warning				
No.	Message	LED/Buzzer	Cause	Countermeasure
06	Clean print head and platen roller  CLEAN HEAD & PLATEN ROLLER	Lights blue. One short beep. To clear the error: Press the ← ENTER button.	The set notification interval has been reached.	Clean the print head and platen roller. Refer to Section 6.2 Maintenance of the Print Head and Platen Roller for details.
07	Change print head  CHANGE PRINT HEAD	Lights blue. One short beep. To clear the error: Press the ← ENTER button.	The set notification interval has been reached.	Replace the print head. Refer to Section 8.7.1 Replacing the Print Head for details.
08	Change platen roller  CHANGE PLATEN ROLLER	Lights blue. One short beep. To clear the error: Press the ← ENTER button.	The set notification interval has been reached.	Replace the platen roller. Refer to Section 8.7.2 Replacing the Platen Roller for details.

7.3 When the LED Lights Red/Blue

The LED will light or flash to show the current status of the printer.

The status when the LED lights or flashes is as follows:

LED	Printer Status	Countermeasure
Light off.	The power is off or the printer is in offline mode.	Power on the printer or change it to online mode.
Lights blue.	The printer is in online mode.	You can operate the printer.
Lights red/ Flashes red/ Flashes blue and red alternately.	An error has occurred.	Clear the error according to the message.

7.4 Troubleshooting Table

Check the items below when the printer does not operate correctly.

WARNING

- Do not touch the power switch, connect or disconnect the power cord while your hands are wet. Doing so could cause an electric shock.
- Disconnect the power cord from the AC outlet before you perform the cleaning.

Note

You can purchase a cleaning kit or cleaning sheet from a SATO reseller or technical service center.

7.4.1 No Power/Nothing on the Screen

No.	What to check	Countermeasure
1	Is the power cord fully connected to the AC outlet?	Connect the power cord to the AC outlet fully.
2	Is the power cord fully connected to the printer?	Connect the power cord to the AC input terminal of the printer fully.
3	Is the printer fuse blown?	Replace the printer fuse. Contact a SATO reseller or technical service center for replacement.
4	Is the power cord damaged?	Replace the power cord. Contact a SATO reseller or technical service center for the specific power cord for this printer. Do not use power cords that are not designed specifically for this printer.
5	Is there electricity at the AC outlet that supplies the power to the printer?	Check if there is electricity at the AC outlet. Connect to another AC outlet.
6	Is the main (CONT) PCB defective?	Replace the main (CONT) PCB. Contact a SATO reseller or technical service center for replacement.

7.4.2 Cannot Feed the Media

No.	What to check	Countermeasure
1	Are the media and ribbon designed for the printer?	Use media and ribbon designed for the printer.
2	Are the media and ribbon loaded correctly?	Load the media and ribbon correctly.

No.	What to check	Countermeasure
3	Is the media or ribbon deformed?	Use the media or ribbon that is not deformed. You cannot feed the media or ribbon that is deformed.
4	Is the media guide set correctly?	Adjust the media guide.
5	Is the correct sensor type set?	Set the correct sensor type.
6	Is the sensitivity of the sensor set correctly?	Adjust the sensor level.
7	Is the platen roller dirty?	If the platen roller is dirty, clean it with the cleaning kit. For printer cleaning, refer to Section 6.2 Maintenance of the Print Head and Platen Roller .
8	Is the platen roller damaged?	Replace the platen roller.
9	Does the interface operate correctly?	Check the interface according to the Interface Troubleshooting .
10	Is the data or signal sent from the computer incorrect?	Power on the device again. Check the data sent from the computer and communication conditions.
11	Is the main (CONT) PCB defective?	Replace the main (CONT) PCB. Contact a SATO reseller or technical service center for replacement.

7.4.3 Can Feed the Media but Cannot Print

No.	What to check	Countermeasure
1	Are the media and ribbon designed for use with the printer?	Use the media and ribbon designed for the printer.
2	Is the correct sensor type set?	Set a correct sensor type.
3	Is the print head installed correctly?	Install the print head correctly.
4	Is the pressure of the print head too strong or too weak?	Adjust the pressure of the print head with the head pressure adjustment dial.
5	Is the print head dirty or is there a label attached to it?	If the print head is dirty, clean it using the cleaning pen. If a label is attached to the print head, remove it. If the glue of label is attached to the print head, clean it using a cleaning kit. Do not clean using a hard object. Doing so could cause damage to the print head. For printer cleaning, refer to Section 6.2 Maintenance of the Print Head and Platen Roller .

No.	What to check	Countermeasure
6	Is the media sensor dirty?	If the media sensor is dirty, clean it using the cleaning kit. For printer cleaning, refer to Section 6.2 Maintenance of the Print Head and Platen Roller .
7	Does the interface operate correctly?	Check the interface according to the Interface Troubleshooting .
8	Is the data or signal sent from the computer incorrect?	Power on the device again. Check the data sent from the computer and communication conditions.
9	Is the print head defective?	Replace the print head and reset the counter.
10	Is the main (CONT) PCB defective?	Replace the main (CONT) PCB. Contact a SATO reseller or technical service center for replacement.

7.4.4 Bad Print Quality

No.	What to check	Countermeasure
1	Are the media and ribbon designed for use with the printer?	Use media and ribbon designed for the printer.
2	Are the media and ribbon loaded correctly?	Check if the media and ribbon are loaded correctly.
3	Is the tension of the ribbon correct?	Adjust the tension of the ribbon.
4	Is the print head installed correctly?	Install the print head correctly.
5	Is the pressure of the print head too strong or too weak?	Adjust the pressure of the print head with the head pressure adjustment dial.
6	Is the print speed too fast?	Adjust the print speed.
7	Is the print darkness too low or too high?	Adjust the print darkness.
8	Is the platen roller dirty?	If the platen roller is dirty, clean it using the cleaning kit. For printer cleaning, refer to Section 6.2 Maintenance of the Print Head and Platen Roller .
9	Is the print head dirty or is there a label attached to it?	If the print head is dirty, clean it using the cleaning pen. If a label is attached to the print head, remove it. If the glue of label is attached to the print head, clean it using a cleaning kit. Do not clean using a hard object. Doing so could cause damage to the print head. For printer cleaning, refer to Section 6.2 Maintenance of the Print Head and Platen Roller .
10	Is the print head defective?	Replace the print head and reset the counter.

No.	What to check	Countermeasure
11	Is the platen roller damaged?	Replace the platen roller.
12	Is the main (CONT) PCB defective?	Replace the main (CONT) PCB. Contact a SATO reseller or technical service center for replacement.

7.4.5 Incorrect Print Position

No.	What to check	Countermeasure
1	Are the media and ribbon designed for use with the printer?	Use media and ribbon designed for the printer.
2	Are the media and ribbon loaded correctly?	Check if the media and ribbon are loaded correctly.
3	Is the media or ribbon deformed?	Use the media or ribbon that is not deformed. You cannot feed the media or ribbon that is deformed.
4	Is the print head installed correctly?	Adjust the print head.
5	Is the media guide set correctly?	Adjust the media guide.
6	Is the correct sensor type set?	Set the correct sensor type.
7	Is the sensitivity of the sensor set correctly?	Adjust the sensor level.
8	Is the offset set correctly?	Adjust the offset.
9	Is the pitch offset or base reference point offset set correctly?	Adjust the pitch offset or base reference point offset.
10	Is the platen roller dirty?	If the platen roller is dirty, clean it using the cleaning kit. For printer cleaning, refer to Section 6.2 Maintenance of the Print Head and Platen Roller .
11	Is the media sensor dirty?	If the media sensor is dirty, clean it using the cleaning kit. For printer cleaning, refer to Section 6.2 Maintenance of the Print Head and Platen Roller .
12	Is the data or signal sent from the computer incorrect?	Power on the device again. Check the data sent from the computer and communication conditions.
13	Is the platen roller damaged?	Replace the platen roller.

7.5 Interface Troubleshooting

When an interface error occurs on the printer, check with the checklist related to that interface.

7.5.1 USB Interface

No.	Item to check
1	Check that the USB cable is connected correctly.
2	Check that the cable is not damaged.
3	Check the configuration of the printer. Check the setting of the USB interface through the INTERFACE MODE menu.
4	If there are multiple USB ports on the computer, connect to another port.
5	Disconnect other USB devices from the computer.
6	Power on the printer and computer again.
7	Install the USB driver again.

7.5.2 LAN Ethernet Interface

No.	Item to check
1	Check that the LAN cable is connected correctly.
2	Check that the cable is not damaged.
3	Check the configuration of the printer. Check the setting of the LAN Ethernet interface through the INTERFACE MODE menu.
4	Check that the allocated IP address is accessible by PING.
5	Check that the power of the HUB is on.
6	Check that the HUB is not defective.
7	Power on the printer again.

7.5.3 Bluetooth Interface (Optional)

No.	Item to check
1	Check that the Bluetooth function is on.
2	Check that the devices using the same frequency band, such as wireless LAN enabled devices or microwaves are not in use.
3	Check that there is no obstacle such as a metal rack between the printer and the host.
4	Check the configuration of the printer. Check the setting of the Bluetooth interface through the INTERFACE MODE menu.
5	Power on the printer and computer again.
6	Install the Bluetooth driver again.

7.5.4 RS-232C Interface

No.	Item to check
1	Check that the RS-232C cable is connected correctly.
2	Check that the cable is not damaged.
3	Check the configuration of the printer. Check the setting of the RS-232C interface through the INTERFACE MODE menu.
4	If there are multiple RS-232C ports on the computer, connect to another port.
5	Power on the printer and computer again.

7.5.5 IEEE1284 Interface

No.	Item to check
1	Check that the printer cable is connected to the LPT port of the computer correctly.
2	Check that the cable is not damaged.
3	If you are using a Windows printer driver, check that the correct port is selected.
4	Check the configuration of the printer. Check the setting of the IEEE1284 interface through the INTERFACE MODE menu.
5	Connect to another port.
6	Power on the printer again.

7.5.6 External Signal Interface (EXT)

No.	Item to check
1	Check that the printer and external device are connected with a cable correctly.
2	Check that the cable is not damaged.
3	Check that the power of the external device is on.
4	Check the configuration of the printer. Check the setting of the external signal (EXT) interface.
5	Power on the printer and external device again.

7.5.7 Wireless LAN Interface (Optional)

No.	Item to check
1	Check that the wireless LAN function is on.
2	Check that the devices using the same frequency band, such as wireless LAN enabled devices or microwaves are not in use.
3	Check that there is no obstacle such as a metal rack between the printer and the host.
4	Check the configuration of the printer. Check the setting of the wireless LAN interface through the INTERFACE MODE menu.
5	Power on the printer again.

8

Appendix

8.1 List of Initial Values

The initial value refers to the setting value of the printer when it was shipped from the factory. If you reset the printer in default setting mode, the setting values of the printer will change back to the factory default values. The tables below show the initial value of each setting item and the type of reset that changes the value back to the initial value.

CAUTION

It is generally not necessary to perform the initialization. Doing so will remove all the customer settings.

8.1.1 Normal Mode

Setting Item	Initial Value	Default (User)	Default (Shipping)
ADJUSTMENT MODE			
PITCH POSITION	Varied	No	No
OFFSET POSITION	Varied	No	No
DARKNESS	50	Yes	No
VOLUME LEVEL	2	Yes	Yes
LCD Brightness	Midrange	Yes	No

8.1.2 User Mode

Setting Item	Initial Value	Default (User)	Default (Shipping)
PRINT SPEED	S84-ex 8 dots/mm: 06 IPS 12 dots/mm: 06 IPS 24 dots/mm: 03 IPS S86-ex 8 dots/mm: 06 IPS 12 dots/mm: 06 IPS	Yes	Yes
PRINT DARKNESS	06	Yes	Yes
PITCH OFFSET	+0.00 mm	Yes	Yes
CHARACTER CODE	UTF-8	Yes	Yes
2 BYTE FONTS	GB18030	Yes	Yes
2 BYTE FONTS	MINCHO	Yes	Yes
NOTIFICATION FUNCTION SETTING	NO	Yes	Yes
NOTICE FUNCTION	CLEAN PRINTER	Yes	Yes

Setting Item	Initial Value	Default (User)	Default (Shipping)
NOTICE FUNCTION	DISABLE	Yes	Yes
CLEAN PRINTER NOTICE DISTANCE	0 m	Yes	Yes
CHANGE ROLLER NOTICE DISTANCE	0 km	Yes	Yes
CHANGE HEAD NOTICE DISTANCE	0 km	Yes	Yes

8.1.3 Interface Mode

Setting Item	Initial Value	Default (User)	Default (Shipping)
INTERFACE AUTO SELECT	DISABLE	Yes	Yes
INTERFACE SETTING	NO	-	-
PORT SELECT	DATA PORT	Yes	Yes
DATA PORT	USB	Yes	Yes
SUB PORT	NONE	Yes	Yes
LAN			
DHCP SETTING	DISABLE	Yes	No
IPv4 ADDRESS	192.168.001.001	Yes	No
IPv4 SUBNET MASK	255.255.255.000	Yes	No
IPv4 GATEWAY ADR	0.0.0.0	Yes	No
IPv6 RESOLUTION	AUTO	Yes	No
IPv6 ADDRESS	0000:0000:0000:0000: 0000:0000:0000:0000	Yes	No
PREFIX LENGTH	64	Yes	No
DEFAULT ROUTER	0000:0000:0000:0000: 0000:0000:0000:0000	Yes	No
PORT NUMBER1	1024	Yes	No
PORT NUMBER2	1025	Yes	No
PORT NUMBER3	9100	Yes	No
PROTOCOL	STATUS5	Yes	Yes
ITEM NO. CHECK	DISABLE (When STATUS5 is selected)	Yes	Yes
BCC CHECK	DISABLE (When STATUS5 is selected)	Yes	Yes
STATUS REPLY TIMING	ENQ (When STATUS4 is selected)	Yes	Yes

Setting Item	Initial Value	Default (User)	Default (Shipping)
WLAN			
DHCP SETTING	DISABLE	Yes	No
IPv4 ADDRESS	192.168.001.001	Yes	No
IPv4 SUBNET MASK	255.255.255.000	Yes	No
IPv4 GATEWAY ADR	192.168.001.002	Yes	No
WIRELESS MODE	Ad Hoc	Yes	No
SSID	SATO_PRINTER	Yes	No
CHANNEL	06	Yes	No
PROTOCOL	STATUS5	Yes	Yes
ITEM NO. CHECK	DISABLE (When STATUS5 is selected)	Yes	Yes
BCC CHECK	DISABLE (When STATUS5 is selected)	Yes	Yes
STATUS REPLY TIMING	ENQ (When STATUS4 is selected)	Yes	Yes
LEGACY STATUS FOR PORT 9100	DISABLE	Yes	Yes
IEEE1284			
PROTOCOL	STATUS5	Yes	Yes
ITEM NO. CHECK	DISABLE (When STATUS5 is selected)	Yes	Yes
BCC CHECK	DISABLE (When STATUS5 is selected)	Yes	Yes
RECEIVE BUFFER	1ITEM (When STATUS4 is selected)	Yes	Yes
IEEE1284 ACK SIGNAL	00.5us (When 1ITEM is selected)	Yes	Yes
RS-232C			
BAUDRATE	19200	Yes	Yes
PARITY BIT	NONE	Yes	Yes
STOP BIT	1 BIT	Yes	Yes
CHARACTER BIT	8 BIT	Yes	Yes
PROTOCOL	STATUS5	Yes	Yes
ITEM NO. CHECK	DISABLE (When STATUS5 is selected)	Yes	Yes
BCC CHECK	DISABLE (When STATUS5 is selected)	Yes	Yes
RECEIVE BUFFER	1ITEM (When READY/BUSY, XON/XOFF is selected)	Yes	Yes
USB			
Protocol	STATUS5	Yes	Yes
ITEM NO. CHECK	DISABLE (When STATUS5 is selected)	Yes	Yes
BCC CHECK	DISABLE (When STATUS5 is selected)	Yes	Yes

Setting Item	Initial Value	Default (User)	Default (Shipping)
Bluetooth			
Authentication Level	NONE	Yes	Yes
PIN CODE	0000000000000000	Yes	Yes
DEVICE NAME	SATO_PRINTER	Yes	Yes
DISCOVERY SETTING	ENABLE	Yes	Yes
PARAMETER SETTING(ISI)	0800	Yes	Yes
PARAMETER SETTING(ISW)	0012	Yes	Yes
PARAMETER SETTING(PSI)	0800	Yes	Yes
PARAMETER SETTING(PSW)	0012	Yes	Yes
PROTOCOL	STATUS4	Yes	Yes
CRC CHECK	DISABLE	Yes	Yes
IGNORE CR/LF	NO	Yes	Yes
IGNORE CAN/DLE	NO (When STATUS4, MULTI is selected in IEEE1284)	Yes	Yes
SNTP FUNCTION	DISABLE	Yes	No
IPv4/6 select	IPv4	Yes	No
NTP IPv4 ADDRESS NTP IPv6 ADDRESS	IPv4: 000.000.000.000 IPv6: 0000:0000:0000:0000: 0000:0000:0000:0000	Yes	No
TIME ZONE	00:00	Yes	No
ERROR NOTICE	DISABLE	Yes	No
SNMP FUNCTION	DISABLE	Yes	No
SNMP SETTING			
COMMUNITY NAME	SNMP v1/v2c[1] : public SNMP v1/v2c[2] : NULL	No	No
COMMUNITY WRITE	DISABLE	No	No
USER NAME	Null	No	No
AUTH PROTOCOL	NONE	No	No
AUTH KEY	Null	No	No
PRIVACY PROTOCOL	NONE	No	No
PRIVACY KEY	Null	No	No
USER MIB WRITE	DISABLE	No	No
TRAP SET			
TRAP TYPE SELECT	SNMPv2c	No	No
TRAP	DISABLE	No	No
COMMUNITY NAME	Null	No	No

Setting Item	Initial Value	Default (User)	Default (Shipping)
TRAP SET			
USER NAME	Null	No	No
AUTH PROTOCOL	NONE	No	No
AUTH KEY	Null	No	No
PRIVACY PROTOCOL	NONE	No	No
PRIVACY KEY	Null	No	No
IPv4/6 select	IPv4	No	No
TRAP IPv4 ADR	000.000.000.000	No	No
TRAP IPv6 ADR	0000:0000:0000:0000: 0000:0000:0000:0000	No	No

8.1.4 Memory Mode

Setting Item	Initial Value	Default (User)	Default (Shipping)
SLOT SETTING	NO	Yes	Yes
CARD SLOT SELECT SLOT0	RAM	Yes	Yes
CARD SLOT SELECT SLOT1	FROM	Yes	Yes
CARD SLOT SELECT SLOT2	SD	Yes	Yes
MEMORY MODE	MEMORY SIZE	-	-
STORED CONTENTS	FORM OVERLAY	-	-
MEMORY FORMAT	NO	-	-
FORMAT START	NO	-	-

8.1.5 Advanced Mode

Setting Item	Initial Value	Default (User)	Default (Shipping)
PRINTER TYPE	DISPENSER	Yes	Yes
BACKFEED MOTION	BEFORE	Yes	Yes
PRINT METHOD	TRANSFER (Set to DIRECT with direct thermal model)	Yes	Yes
PITCH SENSOR	ENABLE (When CONTINUOUS is selected)	Yes	Yes
SENSOR TYPE	GAP	Yes	Yes
COMMAND ERROR	DISABLE	Yes	Yes

Setting Item	Initial Value	Default (User)	Default (Shipping)
HEAD CHECK	DISABLE	Yes	Yes
HEAD CHECK	NORMAL (When HEAD CHECK is enabled)	Yes	Yes
HEAD CHECK MODE	ALL (When HEAD CHECK is enabled)	Yes	Yes
HEAD CHECK PAGE NO.	000001 (When CHECK PAGE is selected)	Yes	Yes
EXTERNAL SIGNAL SETTING	NO	-	-
EXTERNAL SIGNAL	ENABLE	Yes	Yes
EXTERNAL SIGNAL	TYPE4	Yes	Yes
EXTERNAL REPRINT	DISABLE	Yes	Yes
CONTINUOUS PRINT	DISABLE	Yes	Yes
ENHANCED REPRINT	DISABLE	Yes	Yes
I/O SIGNAL SETTING	NO	-	-
INPUT SIGNAL			
PRINT START	20Pin	Yes	Yes
REPRINT	8Pin	Yes	Yes
LABEL NEAR	7Pin	Yes	Yes
FEED	21Pin	Yes	Yes
DISPENSE IN	9Pin (When CONTROLLED is selected)	Yes	Yes
OUTPUT SIGNAL			
PAPER END	17Pin	Yes	Yes
RIBBON END	16Pin	Yes	Yes
MACHINE ERR	4Pin	Yes	Yes
PRINT END	5Pin	Yes	Yes
ONLINE	6Pin	Yes	Yes
RIBBON NEAR	18Pin	Yes	Yes
HOME POS.	3Pin (When CONTROLLED is selected)	Yes	Yes
DECIDED?	NO	-	-
I/O SIGNALS INITIALIZE	NO	-	-
ZERO SLASH	YES	Yes	Yes
AUTO ONLINE	YES	Yes	Yes
PRINT OFFSET	V:+0000 H:+0000	Yes	Yes
HEAD DOT DENSITY	300, only for S84-ex/S86-ex (12 dots/mm)	Yes	Yes

Setting Item	Initial Value	Default (User)	Default (Shipping)
SET CALENDAR	NO	-	-
DATE	11/01/01	No	Yes
TIME	00:00	No	Yes
CONFIRM CALENDAR	NO	No	Yes
CALENDAR DAY OF WEEK CODE	SUNDAY 1 MONDAY 2 TUESDAY 3 WEDNESDAY 4 THURSDAY 5 FRIDAY 6 SATURDAY 7	No	Yes
CALENDAR MONTH CODE	JANUARY A FEBRUARY B MARCH C APRIL D MAY E JUNE F JULY G AUGUST H SEPTEMBER J OCTOBER K NOVEMBER L DECEMBER M	No	Yes
CALENDAR CASE FORMAT	MIXED	No	Yes
CALENDAR CHECK	DISABLE	Yes	Yes
CHARACTER PITCH	PROPORTIONAL	Yes	Yes
PROTOCOL CODE	STANDARD	Yes	Yes
NON STANDARD CODE SETTING	STX=7Bh, ETX=7Dh, ESC=5Eh, ENQ=40h, CAN=21h, NULL=7Eh, OFFLINE=5Dh	Yes with Default (ALT. PROTOCOL)	
RIBBON SAVER	DISABLE	Yes	Yes
RIBBON SAVER ENABLED ON FEED	NO	Yes	Yes
MODE SELECT	SBPL	Yes	Yes
JOB MODIFICATION	DISABLE	No	Yes
ROTATE LABEL DEG:	0	Yes	Yes
LABEL SIZE ADJ WIDTH:	S84-ex 8 dots/mm: 0832 12 dots/mm: 1248 24 dots/mm: 2496 S86-ex 8 dots/mm: 1340 12 dots/mm: 2010	Yes	Yes

Setting Item	Initial Value	Default (User)	Default (Shipping)
LABEL SIZE ADJ HEIGHT:	S84-ex 8 dots/mm: 20000 12 dots/mm: 18000 24 dots/mm: 9600 S86-ex 8 dots/mm: 9992 12 dots/mm: 14988	No	No
IGNORE A1	NO	Yes	Yes
LCD POWER SAVING	00 MIN	Yes	Yes
LED INDICATION	ON	Yes	Yes
ERROR INDICATION	NONE	Yes	Yes

8.1.6 Hex Dump Mode

Setting Item	Initial Value	Default (User)	Default (Shipping)
SELECT DUMP DATA	RECEIVE DATA	-	-
HEX DUMP	NORMAL	-	-

8.1.7 RFID User Mode

Setting Item	Initial Value	Default (User)	Default (Shipping)
RFID LIFE COUNT SUCCESS	000000	-	-
RFID LIFE COUNT FAILURE	000000	-	-
RFID LIFE COUNT TOTAL	000000	-	-
RFID COUNT SUCCESS	000000	No	Yes
RFID COUNT FAILURE	000000	No	Yes
RFID COUNT TOTAL	000000	No	Yes
CLEAR RFID COUNT	NO	-	-
RFID LABEL DATA	RETRY	No	Yes
MAX ERR COUNT	1 TIME(S)	No	Yes
RFID ERR SLASH	YES	No	Yes
RFID ERR OUTPUT	LEVEL	No	Yes
LENGTH OF PULSE	100 msec	No	Yes
VIEW EPC DATA/ VIEW TID DATA/ VIEW USER DATA/ VIEW PC DATA	NO	-	-
ANTENNA PITCH	STANDARD	No	No

Setting Item	Initial Value	Default (User)	Default (Shipping)
RFID TAG OFFSET	0 mm	No	Yes
WRITE POWER	10.0 dBm	No	Yes
READ POWER	10.0 dBm	No	Yes
LOG	DISABLE	No	Yes
LOG Data	EPC and TID	No	Yes

8.1.8 Test Print Mode

Setting Item	Initial Value	Default (User)	Default (Shipping)
TEST PRINT MODE	CONFIGURATION	-	-
TEST PRINT SIZE	S84-ex: 10 cm S86-ex: 16 cm (When CONFIGURATION, BARCODE, HEAD CHECK is selected)	-	-
	LARGE (When FACTORY, WLAN is selected)	-	-
LABEL LENGTH	100mm (When CONFIGURE LIST is selected)	-	-
PITCH POSITION	Varied	No	No
OFFSET POSITION	Varied	No	No
DARKNESS	50	Yes	No

8.1.9 Default Setting Mode

Setting Item	Initial Value	Default (User)	Default (Shipping)
DEFAULT MODE	PRINTER SETTING	-	-
DEFAULT PRINTER SETTING	NO	-	-
DEFAULT ALT.PROTOCOL	NO	-	-
DEFAULT WLAN SETTING	NO	-	-

8.1.10 Service Mode

Setting Item	Initial Value	Default (User)	Default (Shipping)
SERVICE MODE	SENSOR LEVEL	-	-
SETTING			
AUTO ONLINE FEED	NO	Yes	Yes
FEED ON ERROR	NO	Yes	Yes
FUNCTION KEY	NONE	Yes	No
REPRINT W/FEED	NO	Yes	Yes
CALENDAR REPRINT	YES	Yes	No
FORWARD/BACKFEED DISTANCE	DEFAULT	Yes	No
EXT 9PIN SELECT	MODE1	Yes	No
BACKFEED SPEED	FAST	Yes	Yes
EURO CODE	D5	No	No
SELECT LANGUAGE	ENGLISH	Yes	Yes
PRIORITY SETTING	COMMAND	Yes	No
RIBBON NEAR END	ENABLE	Yes	No
LABEL RE-DETECT	ENABLE	Yes	Yes
SET PASSWORD	OFF	-	-
PASSWORD NO.	0000	No	No
LEGACY COMMAND SUPPORT	OFF	Yes	No
COMPATIBLE MODE HEAD SIZE	NORMAL	Yes	No
COMPATIBLE MODE DARKNESS	ENABLE	Yes	No
PRINTER MODEL	S84-ex: S84/M8459Se S86-ex: M8485/90/60/65Se	Yes	No
MEDIA LENGTH	S84-ex 8 dots/mm: 2500 mm 12 dots/mm: 1500 mm 24 dots/mm: 400 mm S86-ex: 1249 mm	Yes	No
TRACE MODE	DISABLE	Yes	No
SAVE PRINT LOG	DISABLE	Yes	No
MEMORY SELECT	SD CARD	Yes	No
CLEAR PRINT LOG	NO	-	-
OUTPUT PRINT LOG FROM SUBPORT	DISABLE	Yes	No

Setting Item		Initial Value	Default (User)	Default (Shipping)
	RIBBON TENSION ADJUSTMENT	S84-ex 8 dots/mm: 12 12 dots/mm: 5 24 dots/mm: 1 S86-ex 8 dots/mm: 12 12 dots/mm: 5	Yes	No
	THROUGHPUT	NORMAL	Yes	Yes
	FEED OFFSET	000 mm	Yes	Yes
	BACKFEED OFFSET	000 mm	Yes	Yes
	TOTAL QTY DISPLAY	NO	Yes	No
	PLUG & PLAY	ENABLE	Yes	No
	REGION CODE	US	Yes	No
	REPLY PERIOD	NORMAL	Yes	No
	ENQ REPLY DELAY TIME	0000 ms	Yes	No
	FONT SELECT			
	GB18030	YES	Yes	No
	BIG5	YES	Yes	No
	KSX101	YES	Yes	No
	HEAD SELECT	S86-ex(8 dots/mm): KST-172-8TAO8- S86-ex(12 dots/mm): KPJ-168-12TAO8- (only for S86-ex series)	No	No

8.1.11 Hidden Setting Mode

Setting Item	Initial Value	Default (User)	Default (Shipping)
LABEL OUT SENSOR	YES	Yes	No
SHIFT CODE	NO	No	Yes

8.1.12 Work Shift Setting Mode

Setting Item	Initial Value	Default (User)	Default (Shipping)
SELECT SHIFT	1	No	Yes
ENTER SHIFT TIME	24:00	No	Yes
HOW MANY CHR?	01	No	Yes
ENTER SHIFT NAME	<space>	No	Yes

8.1.13 Simple Standalone Mode

Setting Item	Initial Value	Default (User)	Default (Shipping)
STANDALONE MODE	LOAD	-	-
OUTPUT LABEL QTY	000001	-	-

8.1.14 Wireless LAN Setting

Setting Item	Overview	Contents	Default (WLAN)	Initial Value
MACAddress	MAC address	Not configurable	No	NULL
IPSetupMethod	DHCP/BOOTP setting	0: DISABLE 1: ENABLE	Yes	DISABLE
LocalIPAddress	IP Address	xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx	Yes	192.168.1.1
SubnetMask	Subnet Mask	xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx	Yes	255.255.255.0
GatewayAddress	Gateway Address	xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx	Yes	192.168.1.2
DNSPrimaryIPAddress	DNS primary address	xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx	Yes	0.0.0.0
DNSSecondaryIPAddress	DNS secondary address	xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx	Yes	0.0.0.0
WLANMode	Wireless LAN mode setting	0: Ad Hoc mode 1: Infrastructure mode	Yes	Ad Hoc mode
ESSID	SSID	1 - 32 characters	Yes	"SATO_PRINTER"
Channel	Channel number	1 - 13	Yes	6
WLANNetworkAuth	Network authentication	0: Open System 1: Shared Key 2: WPA 3: WPA2	Yes	Open System
WEPSKeyUse	WEP key OFF/ON	0: DISABLE 1: ENABLE	Yes	DISABLE
WEPSKey1	WEP key 1	5 or 13 characters 10 or 26 digits in hex	Yes	"B"
WEPSKey2	WEP key 2	5 or 13 characters 10 or 26 digits in hex	Yes	"B"
WEPSKey3	WEP key 3	5 or 13 characters 10 or 26 digits in hex	Yes	"B"
WEPSKey4	WEP key 4	5 or 13 characters 10 or 26 digits in hex	Yes	"B"
WEPSKeyIndex	WEP Key Index	1 - 4	Yes	1
EAPAuth	802.1x authentication OFF/ON	0: DISABLE 1: ENABLE	Yes	DISABLE

Setting Item	Overview	Contents	Default (WLAN)	Initial Value
EAPAuthMode	802.1x authentication	0: LEAP 1: EAP-TLS 2: EAP-TTLS 3: EAP-PEAP 4: EAP-FAST	Yes	EAP-TLS
WPAauthentication	WPA/WPA2 Authentication setting	0: PSK 1: EAP	Yes	PSK
WPAPSKMode	WPA/WPA2 Encryption Method setting	0: TKIP 1: AES	Yes	TKIP
WPAPSK	Advanced shared key	8 - 63 characters	Yes	"sato printer"
EAPUserName	EAP authenticated user name	0 - 64 characters	Yes	NULL
EAPPassword	EAP Authentication password	0 - 32 characters	Yes	NULL
EAPCertKeyPassword	EAP password for secret key acquisition	0 - 32 characters	Yes	NULL
EAPCertRoot	CA route certification file size	File size	No	0
WPAEAPAuthMode	WPA802.1x authentication	0: LEAP 1: EAP-TLS 2: EAP-TTLS 3: EAP-PEAP 4: EAP-FAST	Yes	EAP-TLS
WPAEAPUserName	WPAEAP authenticated user name	0 - 64 characters	Yes	NULL
WPAEAPPassword	WPAEAP Authentication password	0 - 32 characters	Yes	NULL
EAPTTLSInAuth	TTLS internal authentication	0: PAP 1: CHAP 2: MSCHAP 3: MSCHAPv2	Yes	PAP
EAPTTLSServerAuth	TTLS server authentication	0: OFF 1: ON	Yes	OFF
EAPPEAPInAuth	PEAP internal authentication	0: MSCHAPv2	Yes	MSCHAPv2
EAPPEAPServerAuth	PEAP server authentication	0: OFF 1: ON	Yes	OFF
EAPFASTPacAuto	PAC file auto provisioning	0: OFF 1: ON	Yes	OFF
EAPCertKey	File size of the secret key	File size	No	0
WLANRegionCode	Regional code	0: specified value of the module (JP) 1: US 2: Canada 3: Europe 4: Malaysia 5: Singapore 6: Korea 7: China 8: Japan	No	US

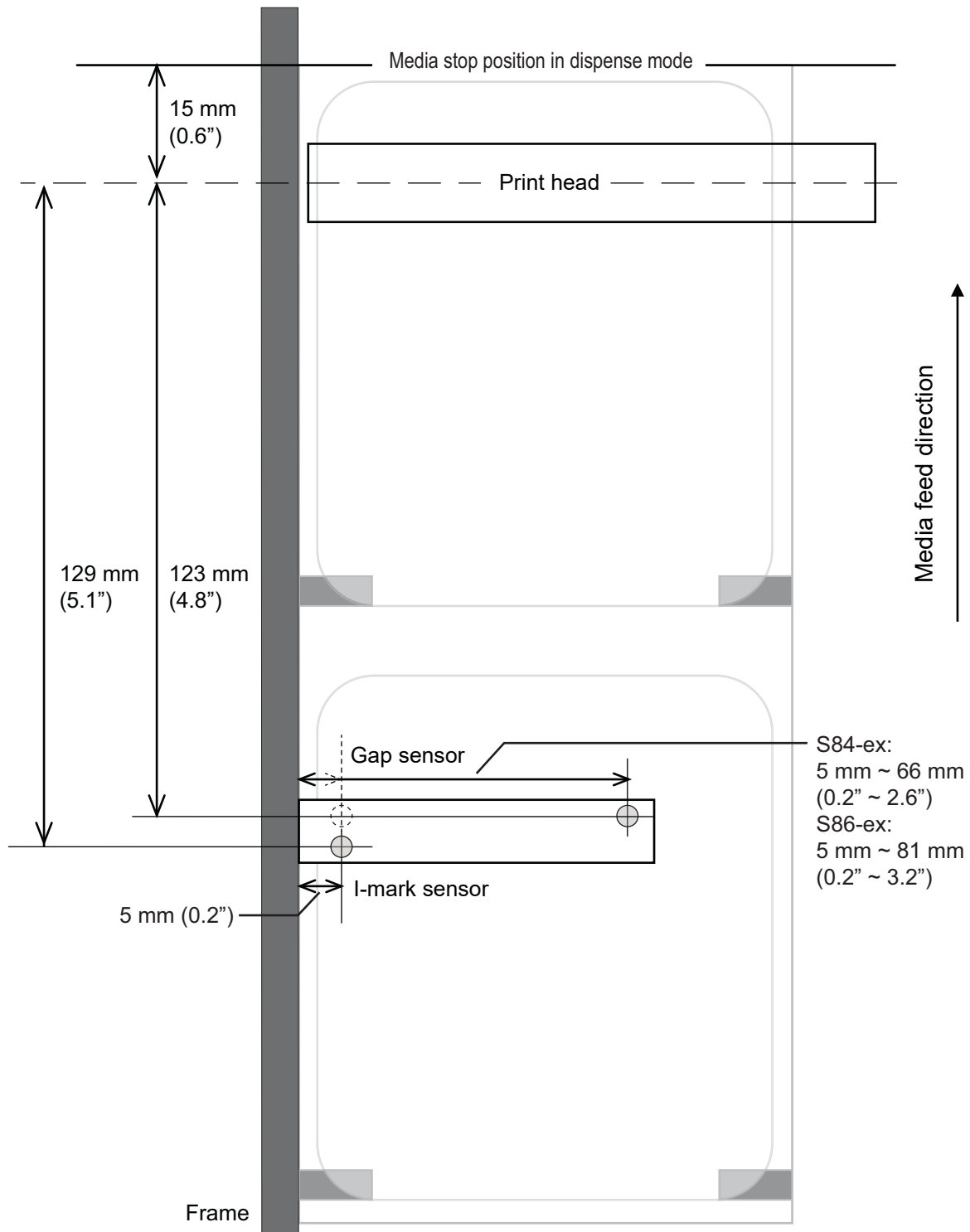
Setting Item	Overview	Contents	Default (WLAN)	Initial Value
RoamingThreshold	Threshold for roaming condition	-94 to -35 (dBm)	Yes	80
AssociationThreshold	Threshold for association process	-94 to -35 (dBm)	Yes	85
RoamingScanWaitTime	The time from scan end to scan start	3 - 300 (sec)	Yes	300
WLANPeriodicArpInterval	ARP packet send intervals for monitoring the connection status with AP	3000 - 60000 (ms)	Yes	3000
WLANBeaconLostCount	Detected disconnection count number by beacon lost of the access point	1 - 60	Yes	15
EAPPreAuth	Enable/Disable the EAP advanced authentication	0: DISABLE 1: ENABLE	Yes	DISABLE
FtpEnableLoginAccount	FTP authentication method	0: OFF (No user authentication) 1: ON (User authentication)	Yes	OFF
FtpLoginUser	FTP login user name	1 - 32 characters	Yes	"guest"
FtpLoginPassword	Password for the FTP login user	0 - 32 characters	Yes	"guest"
FtpDiscTimeout	Disconnected timeout time of the control connection	10 - 900 (sec)	Yes	30
RawProtocol	Communication protocol	0: Status 4 (cycle response) 1: Status 4 (ENQ response) 2: Status 3/5	Yes	Status 5
RawRecvBufferSize	Receive buffer size	4096	Yes	4096
RawDiscTimeout	Disconnection timeout	0 - 3600 (sec)	Yes	60
RawEnableDiscTimeout	ENABLE/DISABLE disconnection timeout	0: DISABLE 1: ENABLE	Yes	ENABLE
LpdDiscTimeout	Disconnection timeout time	10 - 900 (sec)	Yes	30
WebAppLoginUser	WEB page login user name	0 - 63 characters	Yes	"admin"
WebAppLoginPassword	WEB page login password	0 - 63 characters	Yes	"admin"
Language	Language	0: Japanese 1: English	Yes	English
DebugMode	Debug mode setting	0: DISABLE 1: ENABLE (log + print data)	Yes	DISABLE
SignalLevel1	Field intensity setting threshold 1	Absolute value from 00 to 99	Yes	85
SignalLevel2	Field intensity setting threshold 2	Absolute value from 00 to 99	Yes	74
SignalLevel3	Field intensity setting threshold 3	Absolute value from 00 to 99	Yes	64

Setting Item	Overview	Contents	Default (WLAN)	Initial Value
FWversion	Firmware version of the WLAN module	x.x.x.	No	NULL
BuildDate	Firmware date of the WLAN module	YYYYMMDD	No	NULL
RootPassword	Login password of the TELNET root user	0 - 16 half-width alphanumeric characters	Yes	NULL
KeepAliveTime	Retry intervals of TCP KeepAlive packet	30 - 300 (sec)	Yes	180
KeepAliveCount	Retry number of TCP KeepAlive packet (times)	1 - 99	Yes	17
FtpClientEnableService	FTP client setting	0: DISABLE 1: ENABLE	Yes	DISABLE
FtpClientLoginUser	FTP client user name	1 - 32 characters	Yes	"sato"
FtpClientLoginPassword	FTP client password	1 - 32 characters	Yes	"sato"
FtpServerIPAddress	FTP server IP address	xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx	Yes	0.0.0.0
FtpServerURL	FTP server URL	0 - 48 characters	Yes	"ftp://sato.co.jp"
FtpServerPort	FTP port number	1 - 65535	Yes	21
FtpConnectRetryPeriod	Reconnection interval	1 - 100	Yes	10
FtpConnectRetryTimes	Reconnection number of retry	0: no retry 1 - 10 255: keep retrying until connected	Yes	5
FtpJobTimeout	Job timeout	0 - 600 (sec)	Yes	300
FtpUsePassiveMode	ENABLE/DISABLE Passive mode	0: DISABLE 1: ENABLE	Yes	DISABLE

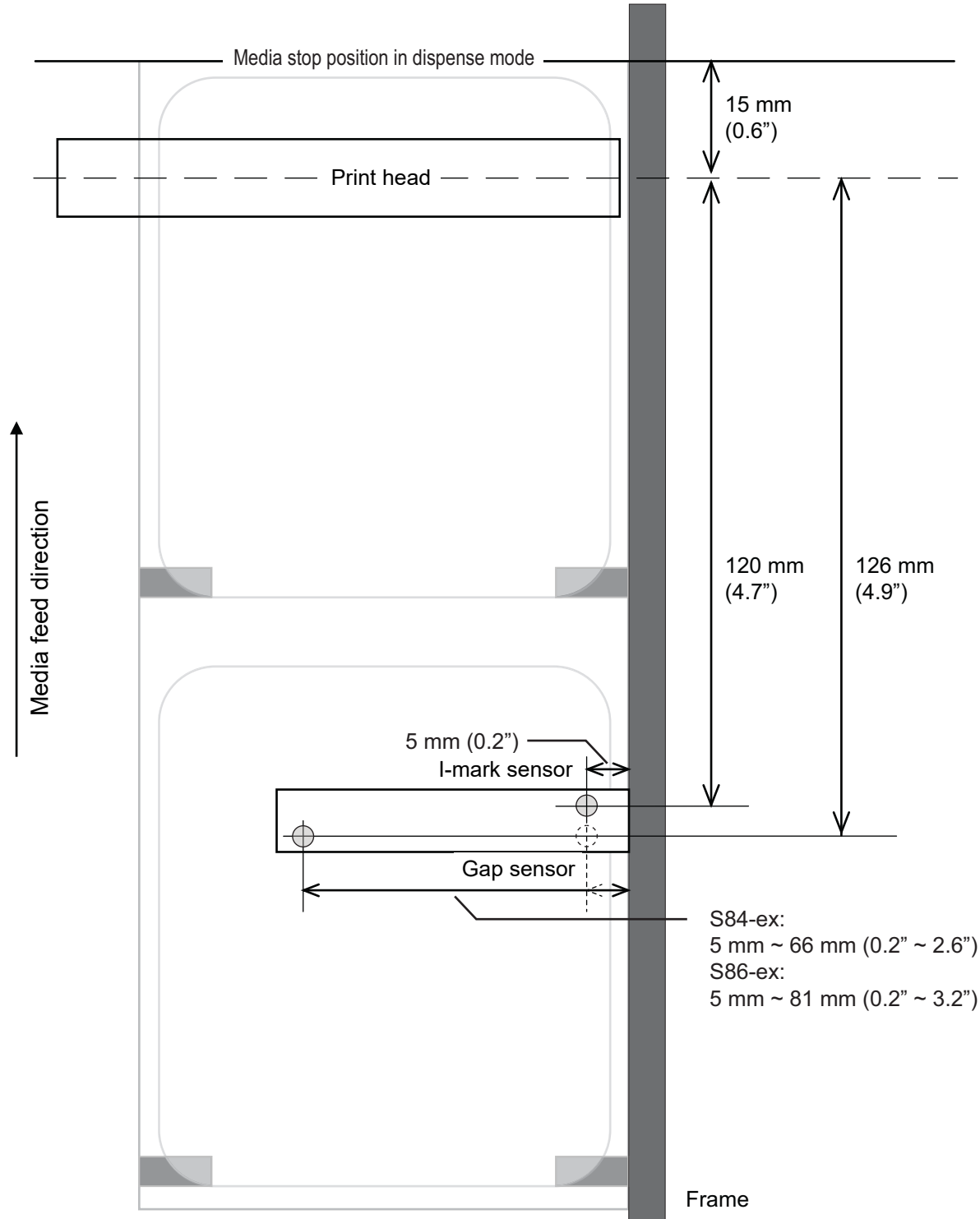
8.2 Media Sensor Positions and Media Stop Positions

The media sensor positions and the media stop position are as follows:

S84-ex/S86-ex (Americas: Standard/Right Hand, Europe/Asia: Left Hand) printer:



S84-ex/S86-ex (Americas: Opposite/Left Hand, Europe/Asia: Right Hand) printer:



8.3 About Legacy Command Support

When you set the LEGACY COMMAND SUPPORT to ON in the service mode menu, you can match the printer operation to the existing models.

Refer to **LEGACY COMMAND SUPPORT** in **Function Settings** of the service mode menu.

8.3.1 Legacy Command Support

The following table shows the operation of the legacy command support.

Item	Legacy Command Support	
	ON	OFF
Print density change. A function to draw data according to the head density when the head density is 12 dots/mm.	Head dot density setting screen is shown in the advanced mode. - S84-ex Select from 100, 150, 300 - S86-ex Select from 150, 300	No setting screen.
ESC+AX/Print area expansion setting	The command is enabled	The command is disabled. When the printer received the command, the command is discarded without command error.
ESC+AR/Print area standard setting	The command is enabled	The command is disabled. When the printer received the command, the command is discarded without command error.
Graphic printing, partial copy specify <WD>, and white and black inverse printing <(> are not rotated by the rotation specify command <%>.	No rotation.	The image is rotated.
Graphic printing is not enlarged by the enlarge specify command <L>.	Not enlarged.	The image is enlarged.
Graphic printing is not offset by base offset command <A3>.	No offset.	The image is offset.
Outline font setting	The minimum value for the font width: 1 (dot) The minimum value for the font height: 1 (dot)	The minimum value for the font width: 24 (dot) The minimum value for the font height: 24 (dot)
When EAN8 is specified with barcode setting (ratio 2:5) <BD>, auto human readable character is not printed with all bar ratio.	No human readable characters.	Human readable characters are printed.
When EAN13/UPC-A is specified with barcode setting (ratio 2:5) <BD>, auto human readable character is not printed with all bar ratio (only for 8 dots/mm).	No human readable characters.	Human readable characters are printed.

Item	Legacy Command Support	
	ON	OFF
When EAN13/UPC-A is specified with barcode setting, auto human readable character is not printed with other than quadruple bar ratio in <BD>, and with more than quintuple in <D> (only for 12 dots/mm).	No human readable characters.	Human readable characters are printed.
When the barcode type of barcode setting , <D>, <BD> is specified to EAN8, the print data input digit is fixed to 8 digits.	The input digit is fixed to 8 digits.	The input digit is according to the command specification.
When the barcode type of barcode setting , <D>, <BD> is specified to EAN13/UPC-A, the print data input digit is fixed to 13 digits. (Only when 8 dots/mm)	The input digit is fixed to 13 digits.	The input digit is according to the command specification.
When an odd number digit is specified in the START CODE C with CODE128 barcode setting <BG>, "0" is added to the trailing edge of the data and printed.	The data is printed ("0" is added).	The data is not printed (command error).
The default value of the print area (vertical)	178 mm	2500 mm

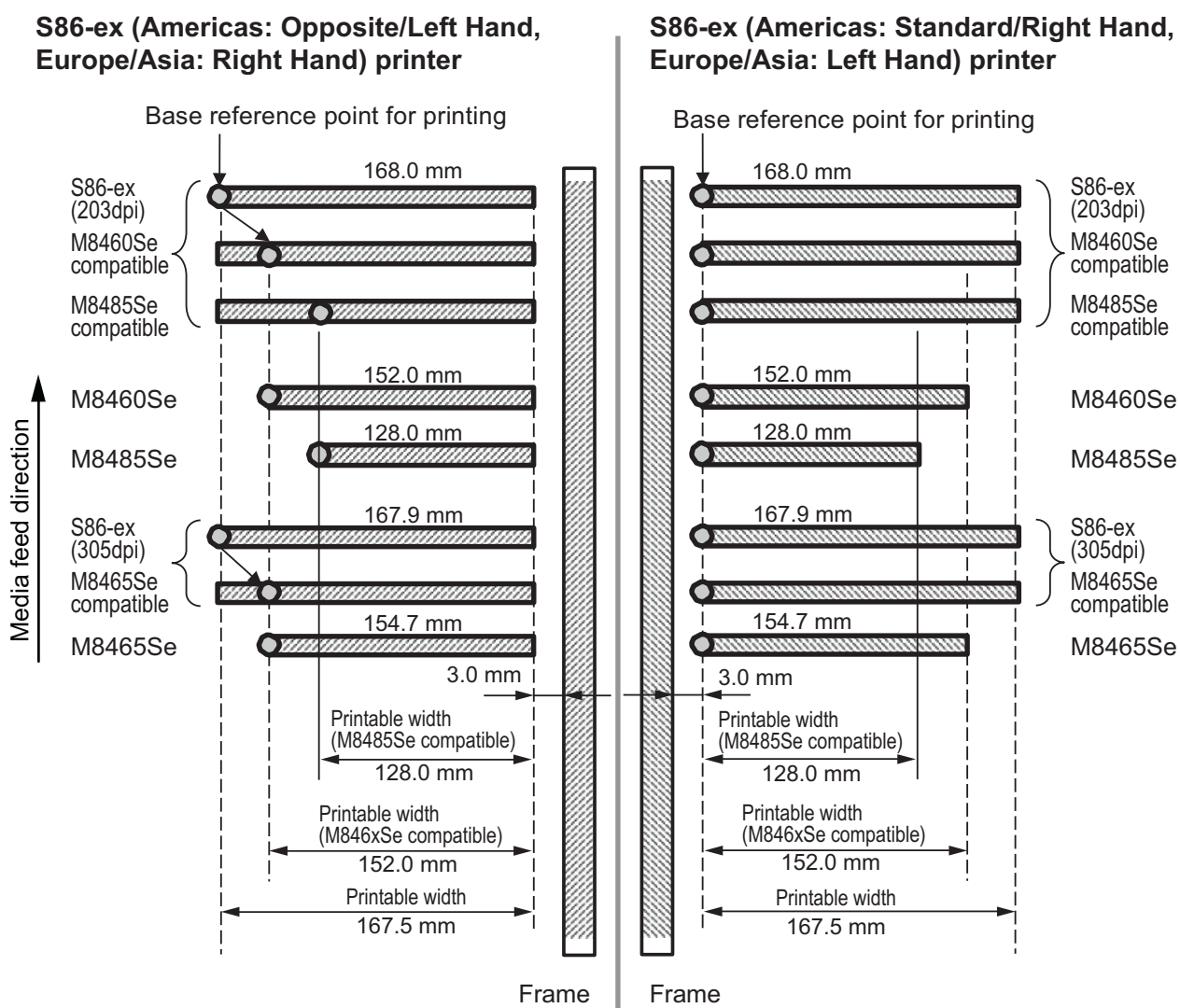
8.3.2 Compatible Mode - Print Head Width (only for S86-ex printer)

The following table shows the operation of the compatible mode (print head width).

Item	S86-ex (203 dpi)			S86-ex (305 dpi)	
	NORMAL	M8460Se	M8485Se	NORMAL	M8465Se
Printable width	167.5 mm (6.59")	152.0 mm (5.98")	128.0 mm (5.04")	167.5 mm (6.59")	152.0 mm (5.98")
The maximum print position offset setting (dot)	1340	1216	1024	2010	1824
Label size adjustment (width) • Maximum value (dot)	1340	1216	1024	2010	1824
The maximum print horizontal position setting <H> (dot)	1340	1216	1024	2010	1824
Ruled line, frame border print setting <FW> • The maximum length of the border line (dot)	1340	1216	1024	2010	1824
White and black inverse printing setting <(> • The maximum value for the horizontal inverse area (dot)	1340	1216	1024	2010	1824
Copy within label <WD> • The maximum value for the horizontal direction (dot)	1340	1216	1024	2010	1824

Item	S86-ex (203 dpi)			S86-ex (305 dpi)	
	NORMAL	M8460Se	M8485Se	NORMAL	M8465Se
Mirror rotation setting <RM> • The maximum value for the horizontal direction (dot)	1340	1216	1024	2010	1824
Graphics print <G> • The maximum byte for the horizontal direction	168	152	128	252	228
Media size <A1> • The maximum label width (dot)	1340	1216	1024	2010	1824
Base offset setting <A3> • The maximum value for the horizontal direction offset (dot)	1340	1216	1024	2010	1824
Printer operation register setting <PG> • The maximum label width (dot)	1340	1216	1024	2010	1824
Printer operation register setting <PC> • The maximum label width (dot)	1340	1216	1024	2010	1824
Form overlay registration <&S> • The maximum horizontal direction available range (dot)	1340	1216	1024	2010	1824
Graphics registration <GI> • The maximum byte for the horizontal direction	168	152	128	252	228
Print configuration request <SOH+MG> • The maximum label width (dot)	1340	1216	1024	2010	1824
Print configuration request <SOH+MG> • The maximum offset value for the horizontal base point (dot)	1340	1216	1024	2010	1824

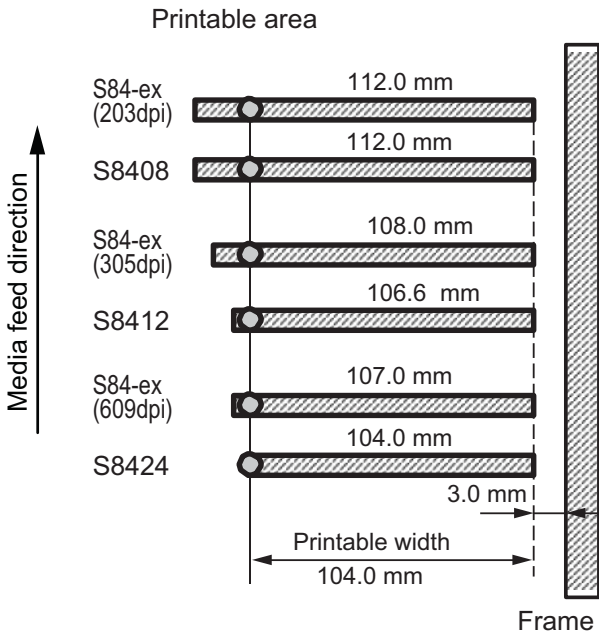
8.3.3 Print Head Width and Printable Area Range



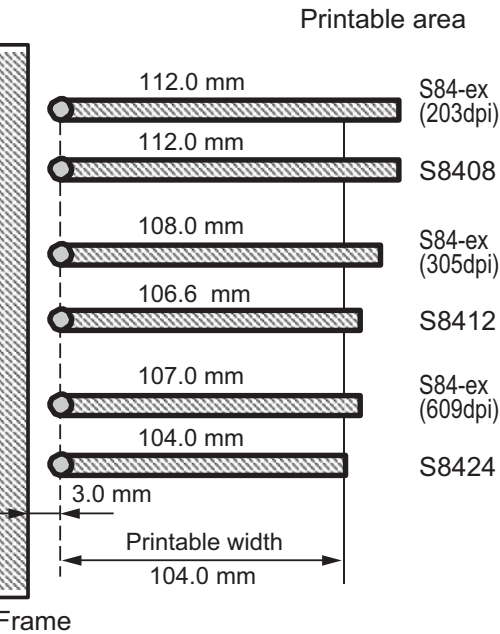
Print head width and printable width

Print Head Density	S86-ex		M8460Se/M8465Se		M8485Se	
	Print Head Width	Printable Width	Print Head Width	Printable Width	Print Head Width	Printable Width
8 dots/mm (203 dpi)	168 mm (6.61")	167.5 mm (6.59")	152 mm (5.98")	152 mm (5.98")	128 mm (5.04")	128 mm (5.04")
12 dots/mm (305 dpi)	167.9 mm (6.61")	167.5 mm (6.59")	154.7 mm (6.09")	152 mm (5.98")	-	-

S84-ex (Americas: Opposite/Left Hand, Europe/Asia: Right Hand) printer



S84-ex (Americas: Standard/Right Hand, Europe/Asia: Left Hand) printer



Print head width and printable width

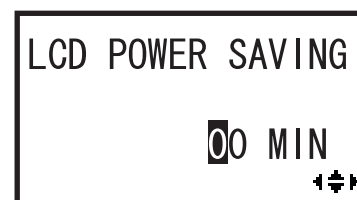
Print Head Density	S84-ex		S8400	
	Print Head Width	Printable Width	Print Head Width	Printable Width
8 dots/mm (203 dpi)	112 mm (4.41")	104 mm (4.09")	112 mm (4.41")	104 mm (4.09")
12 dots/mm (305 dpi)	108 mm (4.25")	104 mm (4.09")	106.6 mm (4.2")	104 mm (4.09")
24 dots/mm (609 dpi)	107 mm (4.21")	104 mm (4.09")	104 mm (4.09")	104 mm (4.09")

8.4 LCD Power Saving Mode

This function is designed to reduce power consumption by setting the LCD backlight to off when the printer is not operated for a specified period of time. The time required for the LCD backlight to light off can be set at LCD POWER SAVING setting screen in the advanced mode.

Refer to [Section 4.2.13 Advanced Mode](#) for the flowchart to access the setting. The setting procedure of the LCD power saving mode is as follows:

- 1** In offline mode, press the **↵ ENTER** button.
The printer changes to setting mode menu.
- 2** Select the **ADVANCED MODE** using the **▲/▼/◀/▶** buttons and then press the **↵ ENTER** button.
- 3** Press the **↵ ENTER** button again until LCD POWER SAVING shows on the screen.
- 4** Press the **▲/▼** buttons to select a value.
The setting range is from 00 to 15 MIN.
When "00" is selected, this function is disabled and the LCD backlight is always on.
- 5** Press the **↵ ENTER** button to save the setting.



Conditions to set the LCD backlight to off

Under the following conditions, the LCD backlight lights off when the time specified on the LCD POWER SAVING setting screen has elapsed. With this function, only the LCD backlight lights off and the on-screen message remains the same.

- The printer has not received the print data* (ESC+A to ESC+Z) in various interfaces.
* Each protocol's status return request, cancel request and incorrect data are omitted.
- No button is pressed.
- The printer is not in error mode.
- The printer is neither printing nor feeding media.
- The printer is in online mode, offline mode or hex dump mode.
This function is disabled in download mode.

Conditions to set the LCD backlight to on

Any of the following conditions will light the LCD backlight on again.

- The printer receives the print data* from various interfaces.
* Each protocol's status return request, cancel request and incorrect data are omitted.
- Any button on the operator panel is pressed.
- Printer error such as "Head open" occurs.
- The printer starts the printing operation.

Pressing any button while the LCD backlight is off will only light the LCD backlight back on. The function of the button is invalid.

(For example, the printer does not go offline by pressing the **▶|| LINE** button when the LCD backlight is off in online mode.)

8.5 Input/Output Signal of the External Signal

This section provides additional information about setting the pin number of the input/output signal in the **INPUT SIGNAL/OUTPUT SIGNAL** screen of the advanced mode menu.

Setting Conditions

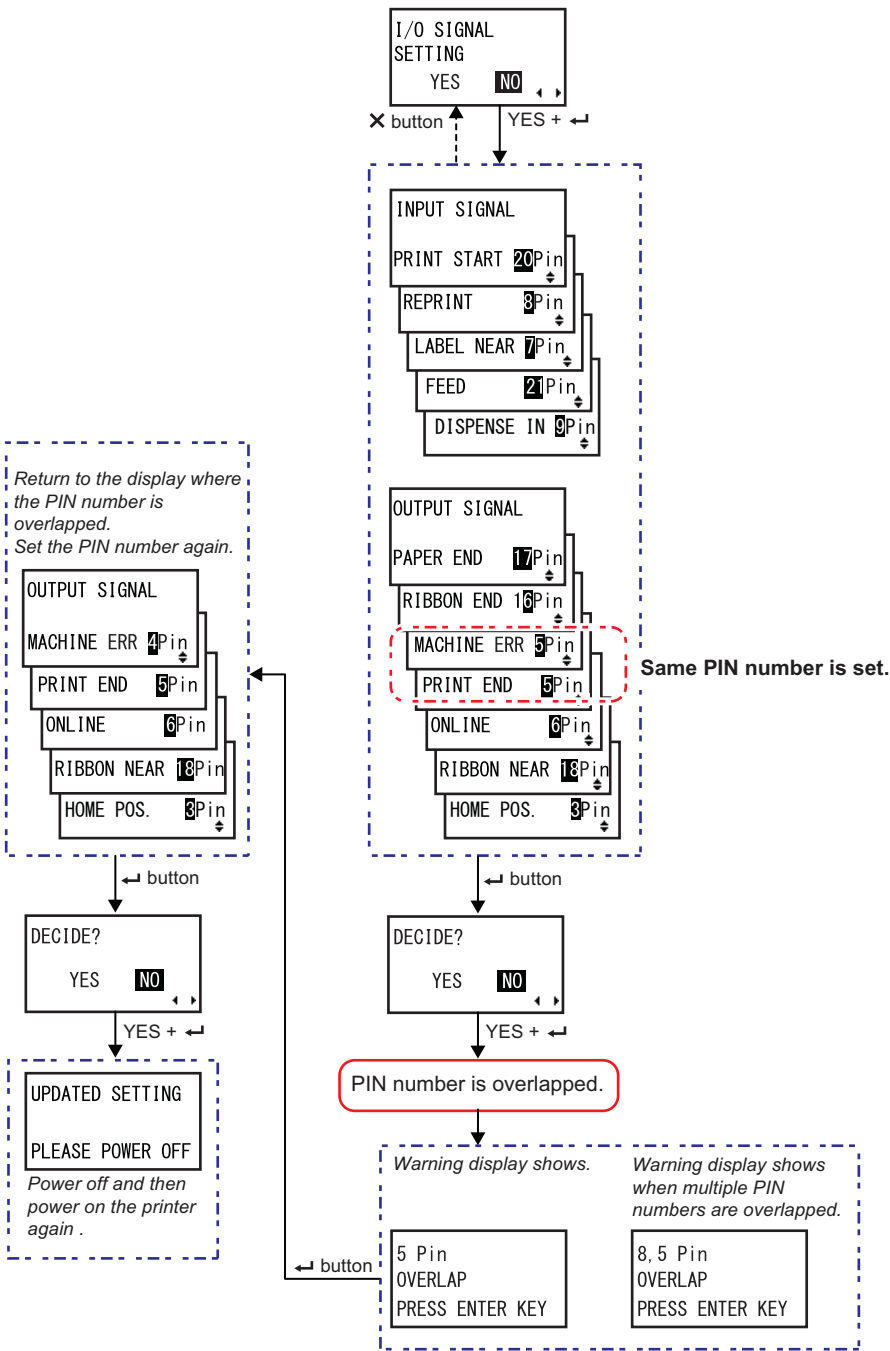
Signal Name	Input/Output	Pin No. (Default Value)	Overlapping	Available Pin No.
PRINT START	Input	20	Not Allowed	20, 8
Reprint	Input	8	Not Allowed	
FEED	Input	21	Not Allowed	21, 7, - Note: When "-" is selected, the function is disabled.
LABEL NEAR	Input	7	Not Allowed	
DISPENSE INPUT	Input	9	Not Allowed	21, 7, 9, - Note: When "-" is selected, printer operates with PRIN START as a trigger.
Paper End	Output	17	Allowed	4, 5, 6, 16, 17, 18, - Note: When "-" is selected, there is no output.
Ribbon End	Output	16	Allowed	
MACHINE ERR	Output	4	Allowed	
PRINT END *1	Output	5	Not Allowed	
ONLINE	Output	6	Allowed	
RIBBON NEAR	Output	18	Allowed	3, 4, 5, 6, 16, 17, 18, - Note: When "-" is selected, there is no output.
HOME POSITION	Output	3	Not Allowed	

*1 You cannot select "-" for the PRINT END output signal.

Note

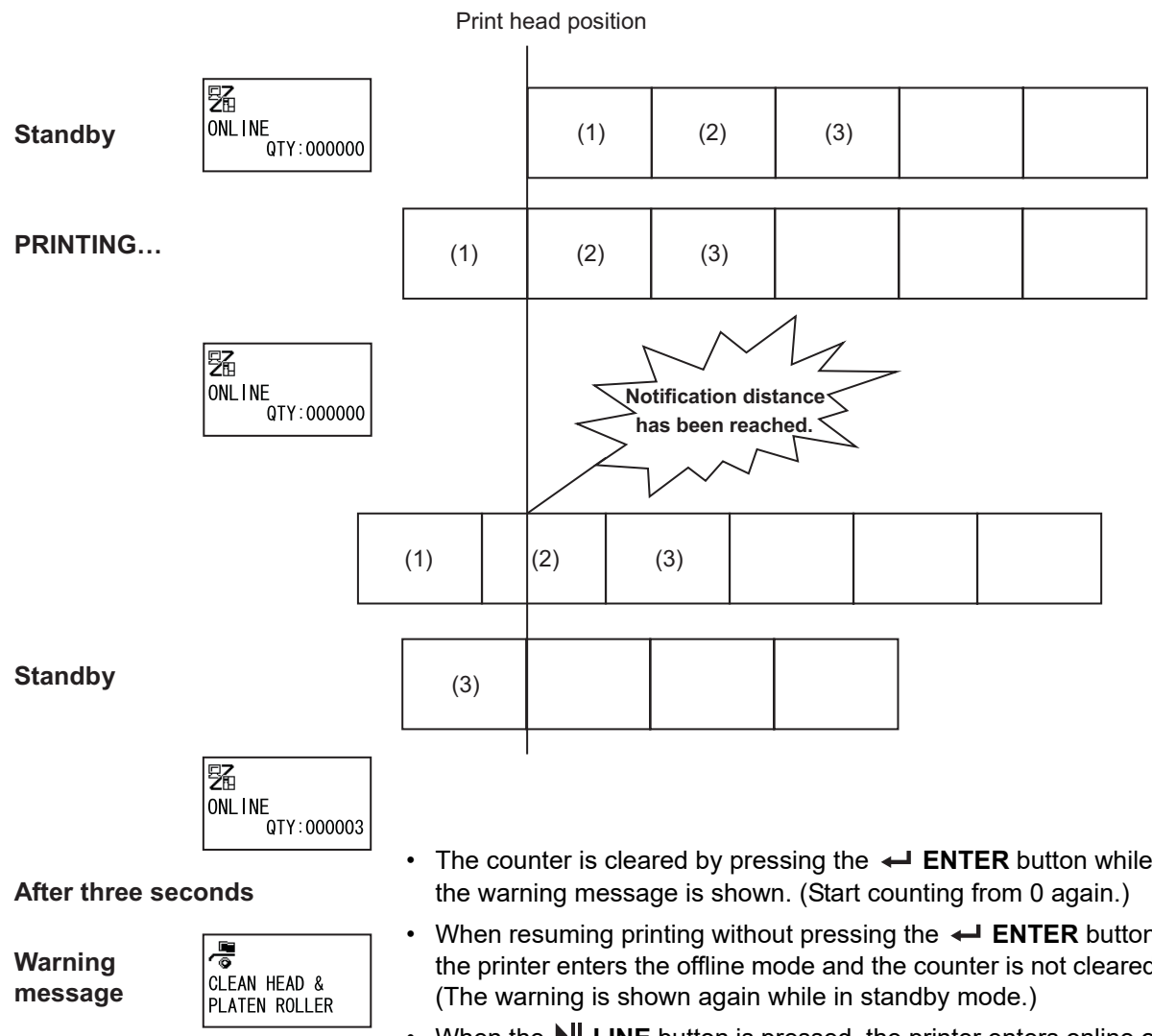
- When multiple errors are allocated to one pin, the signal is output when one of the errors occurs.
- All errors need to be released in order to switch the signal output back to normal.
- DISPENSE INPUT and HOME POSITION are available only if CONTROLLED is selected in **BACKFEED MOTION**.

When the PIN number is overlapped in the Input/Output signal setting



8.6 Notification Function

This section shows the media motion when the set notification interval has been reached. You can set the notification function in the **NOTIFICATION FUNCTION SETTING** screen of the user mode menu.



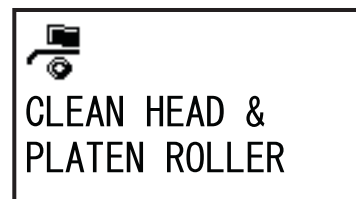
- The counter is cleared by pressing the **ENTER** button while the warning message is shown. (Start counting from 0 again.)
- When resuming printing without pressing the **ENTER** button, the printer enters the offline mode and the counter is not cleared. (The warning is shown again while in standby mode.)
- When the **LINE** button is pressed, the printer enters online or offline mode from the warning screen. The same goes for other buttons, entering each screen.

When multiple notifications occur at the same time

The warning screen can be changed by pressing the ▲/▼ buttons.

To release the warning, press the ↵ **ENTER** button at each screen.

When the warning is released by pressing the ↵ **ENTER** button, the warning screen is deleted and the printer goes to the next screen.



Press the ▲/▼ buttons.



Press the ▲/▼ buttons.



8.7 Replacing Consumable Parts

Some consumable parts, such as the print head and platen roller, will wear out over time and can be replaced easily. This section describes the procedures to replace these parts.

Note

- Use only SATO genuine consumable parts for replacement.
Contact your SATO reseller or technical support center for parts ordering information.
 - Regular cleaning may extend the life span of some print heads and platen rollers. Refer to [Section 6.2 Maintenance of the Print Head and Platen Roller](#) for details.
-

8.7.1 Replacing the Print Head

You can easily remove and replace a damaged or worn print head.

Before replacement

Perform a factory test print and check the head counter.



WARNING

- Do not touch the power switch, connect or disconnect the power cord while your hands are wet. Doing so could cause an electric shock.
 - Disconnect the power cord from the AC outlet before you replace the print head.
 - Wear gloves before replacing the print head, to prevent damage to the print head.
-

1

Make sure that the printer is in power off mode, then disconnect the power cord from the AC outlet.

2

Open the top cover.



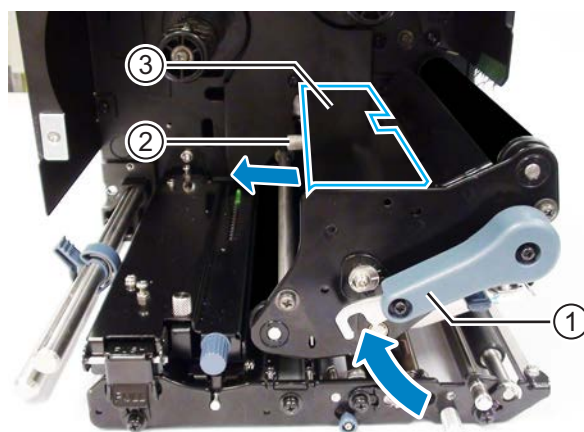
CAUTION

Open the top cover fully to prevent accidental drop of the cover.

- 3** Turn the **head lock lever** ① clockwise to unlock the **print head**.

⚠ CAUTION

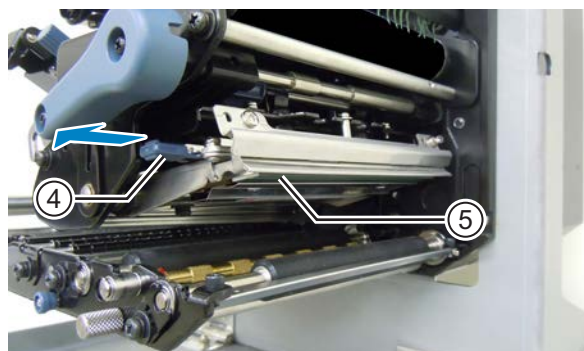
- The print head and its surroundings are hot after printing. Be careful not to touch it, to avoid being burned.
- Touching the edge of the print head with your bare hand could cause injury.



- 4** Remove the **thumbscrew** ② attached to the **cover** ③ on top of the **print head assembly**. Remove the **cover** ③ and place it aside.

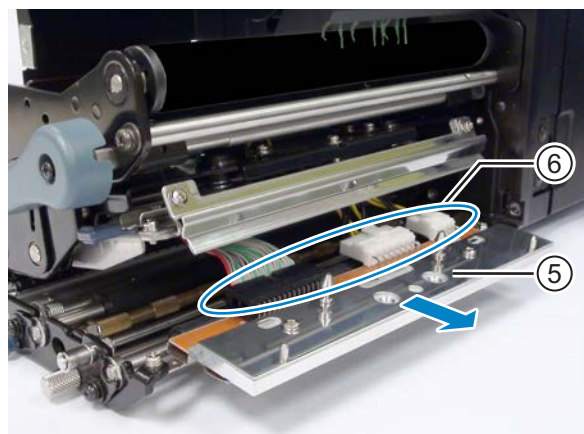
- 5** Pull the **tab** ④ to remove the **print head** ⑤.

Support the print head with your hand when the **print head** is released.

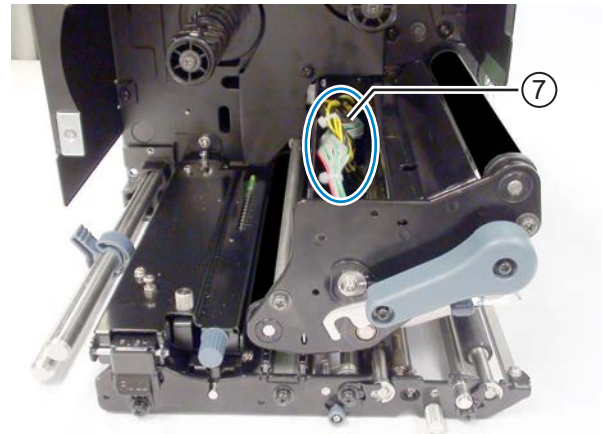


- 6** Pull out the **print head** ⑤ and remove all the **connectors** ⑥ from the defective **print head** ⑤.

- 7** Connect the **connectors** to the new **print head**.



- 8** Pull back and arrange the **cables** ⑦ from the top of the **print head assembly**.
- 9** Install the **print head** to the print head assembly.
Align the print head and press the print head upward until it is latched.
- 10** Attach the **cover** ③ back to the top of the **print head assembly** with the **thumbscrew** ②.



⚠ CAUTION

When attaching the cover, be careful not to pinch the wire.

After replacement

- Set the print head selection. (Only for S86-ex printer with the firmware version later than 61.00.00.06.)
In SERVICE MODE, press the **↵ ENTER** button repeatedly until the **HEAD SELECT** screen is shown. Select the options according to the first fourteen to fifteen characters of the print head serial number and then press the **↵ ENTER** button.
- Adjust the print darkness.
- Make sure that the print head opens and closes without difficulties.

8.7.2 Replacing the Platen Roller

You can easily remove and replace a damaged or worn platen roller.

- 1** Make sure that the printer is in power off mode, then disconnect the power cord from the AC outlet.
- 2** Open the top cover.

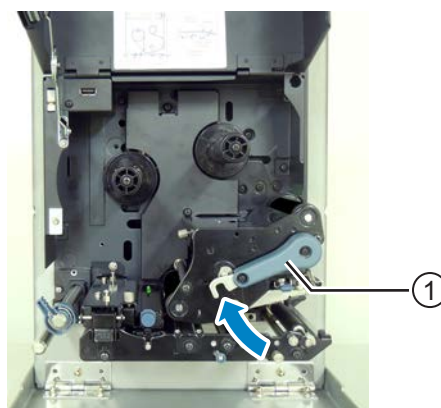
⚠ CAUTION

Open the top cover fully to prevent accidental drop of the cover.

- 3** Turn the **head lock lever** ① clockwise to unlock the **print head**.

⚠ CAUTION

- The print head and its surroundings are hot after printing. Be careful not to touch it, to avoid being burned.
- Touching the edge of the print head with your bare hand could cause injury.

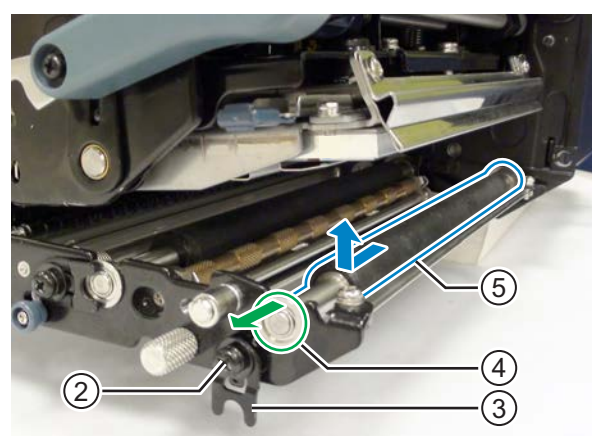


- 4** Loosen the **screw** ② until the **bearing clamp** ③ is released.

Do not remove the screw.

- 5** Remove the **bearing** ④ from the chassis and the shaft of the **platen roller** ⑤.

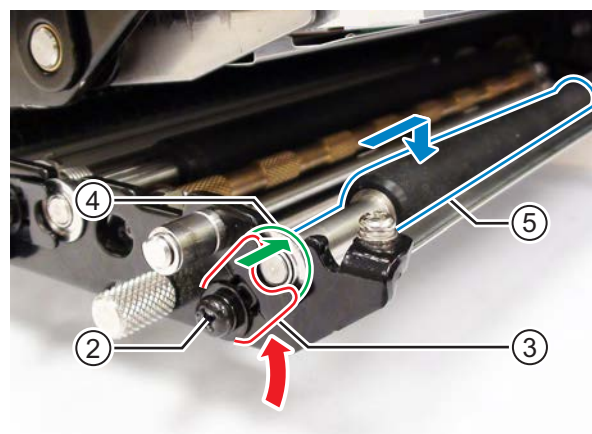
- 6** Pull out the **platen roller** ⑤ from the printer and replace it with a new **platen roller**.



- 7** Insert the gear end of the **platen roller** ⑤ fully into the printer's center frame.

- 8** Place the **bearing** ④ back to the chassis and the shaft of the **platen roller**.

- 9** Rotate the **bearing clamp** ③ onto the **bearing** ④ and attach it with the **screw** ②.



After replacement

- Adjust the print darkness.

8.7.3 Replacing the Pressure Roller

You can easily remove and replace a damaged or worn pressure roller.

- 1** Make sure that the printer is in power off mode, then disconnect the power cord from the AC outlet.
- 2** Open the top cover.

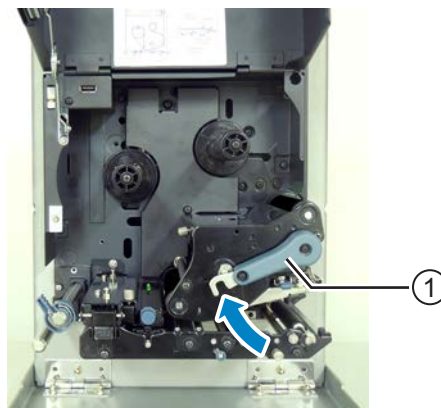
CAUTION

Open the top cover fully to prevent accidental drop of the cover.

- 3** Turn the **head lock lever** ① clockwise to unlock the **print head**.

CAUTION

- The print head and its surroundings are hot after printing. Be careful not to touch it, to avoid being burned.
- Touching the edge of the print head with your bare hand could cause injury.



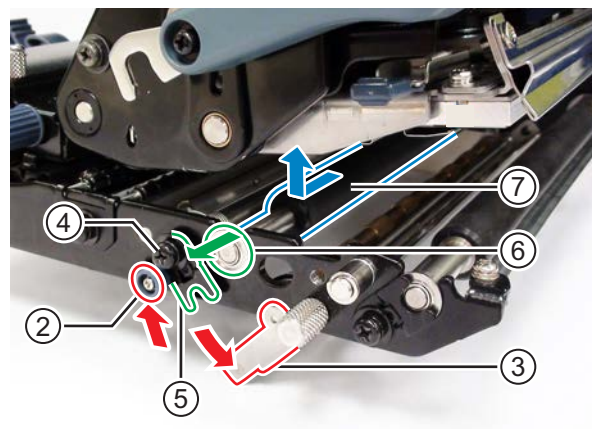
- 4** Push the **pressure roller release tab** ② up to release the **pressure roller plate** ③.

- 5** Loosen the **screw** ④ until the **bearing clamp** ⑤ is released.

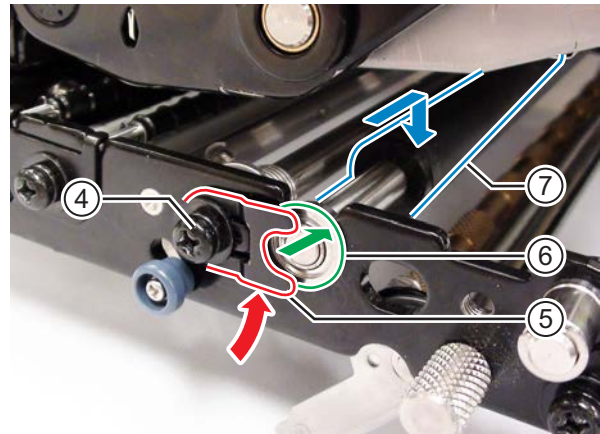
Do not remove the screw.

- 6** Remove the **bearing** ⑥ from the chassis and the shaft of the **pressure roller** ⑦.

- 7** Pull out the **pressure roller** ⑦ from the printer and replace it with a new **pressure roller**.



- 8** Insert the gear end of the **pressure roller** ⑦ fully into the printer's center frame.
- 9** Place the **bearing** ⑥ back to the chassis and the shaft of the **pressure roller**.
- 10** Rotate the **bearing clamp** ⑤ onto the **bearing** ⑥ and attach it with the **screw** ④.
- 11** Push the center of the **pressure roller plate** to latch it in place.



8.7.4 Replacing the Media Feed Roller

You can easily remove and replace a damaged or worn media feed roller.

- 1** Make sure that the printer is in power off mode, then disconnect the power cord from the AC outlet.
- 2** Open the top cover.

CAUTION

Open the top cover fully to prevent accidental drop of the cover.

- 3** Turn the **head lock lever** ① clockwise to unlock the **print head**.

CAUTION

- The print head and its surroundings are hot after printing. Be careful not to touch it, to avoid being burned.
- Touching the edge of the print head with your bare hand could cause injury.

- 4** Pull the **feed lock latch** ② to unlock the **feed roller and media sensor assembly** ③.

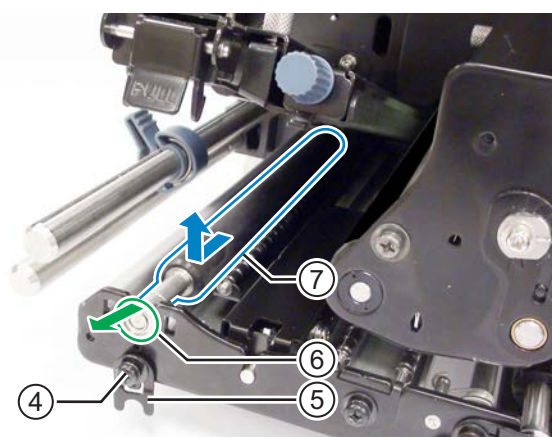
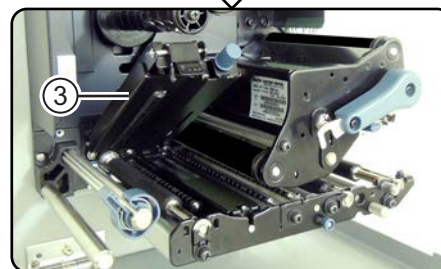
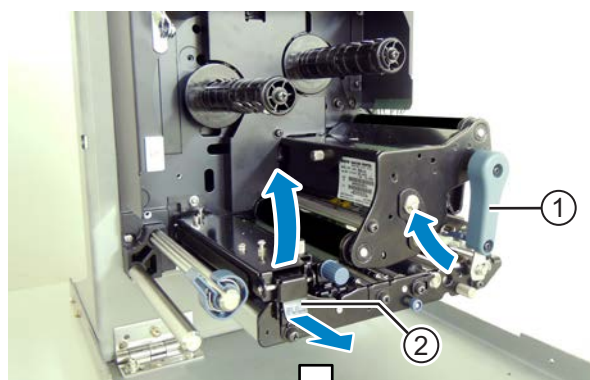
The feed roller and media sensor assembly will flip open.

- 5** Loosen the **screw** ④ until the **bearing clamp** ⑤ is released.

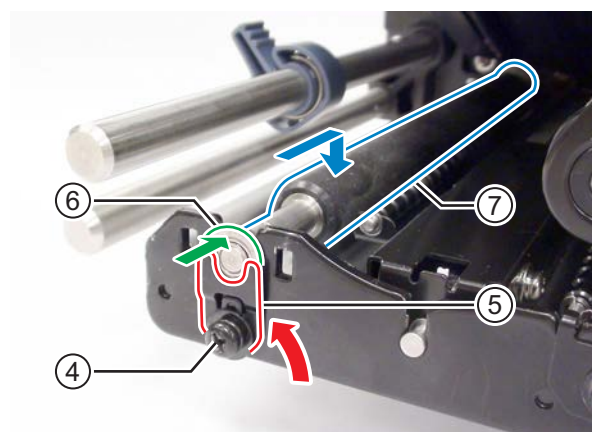
Do not remove the screw.

- 6** Remove the **bearing** ⑥ from the chassis and the shaft of the **media feed roller** ⑦.

- 7** Pull out the **media feed roller** ⑦ from the printer and replace it with a new **media feed roller**.



- 8** Insert the gear end of the new **media feed roller** ⑦ fully into the printer's center frame.
- 9** Place the **bearing** ⑥ back to the chassis and the shaft of the **media feed roller**.
- 10** Rotate the **bearing clamp** ⑤ onto the **bearing** ⑥ and attach it with the **screw** ④.



8.7.5 Replacing the Fan Filter

The fan filter prevents atmospheric debris from being drawn into the printer.

- 1** Peel off the old **fan filter** ① from the rear of the printer.
- 2** Clean the printer to remove any adhesive residue on the surface.

Note

You can purchase a cleaning kit from a SATO reseller or technical service center.

- 3** Remove the backing paper from the new **fan filter** ① and paste the **fan filter** ① over the fan exhaust holes.



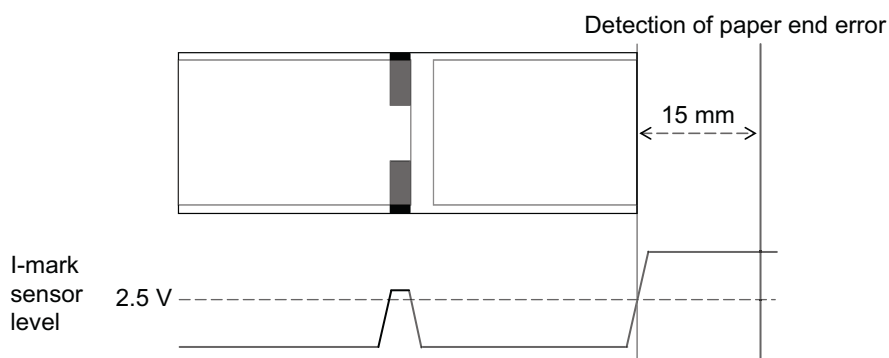
8.8 Media Motion of the Printer Operation

8.8.1 Feed Motion

When the pitch sensor is disabled, media will be fed while pressing the  **FEED** button.
When the pitch sensor is enabled, one media will be fed according to the backfeed motion setting.

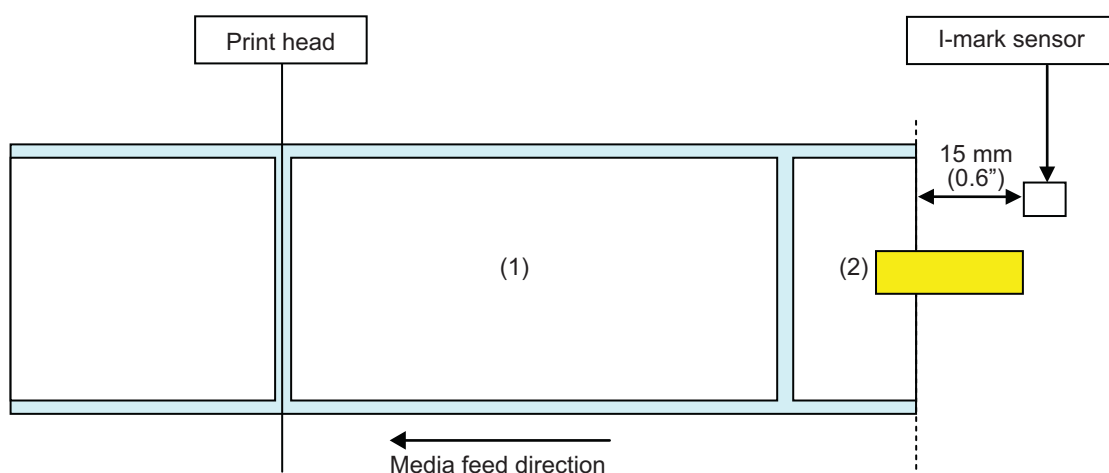
8.8.2 Paper End

When the I-mark sensor level has changed to high for 15 mm (0.6"), it will be considered as the paper end.



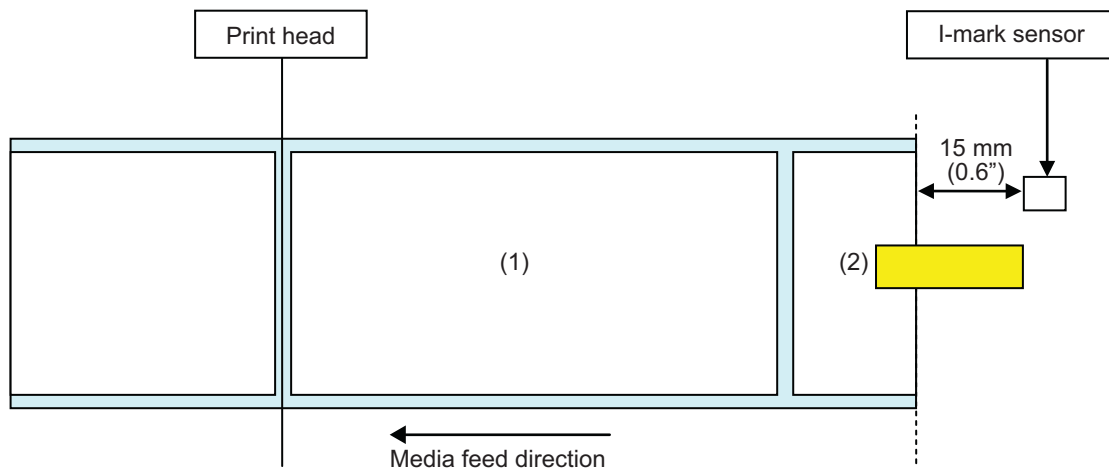
Paper End Detection in Feed Operation

After the paper end is detected, the printer stops the feed operation immediately and generates an error.

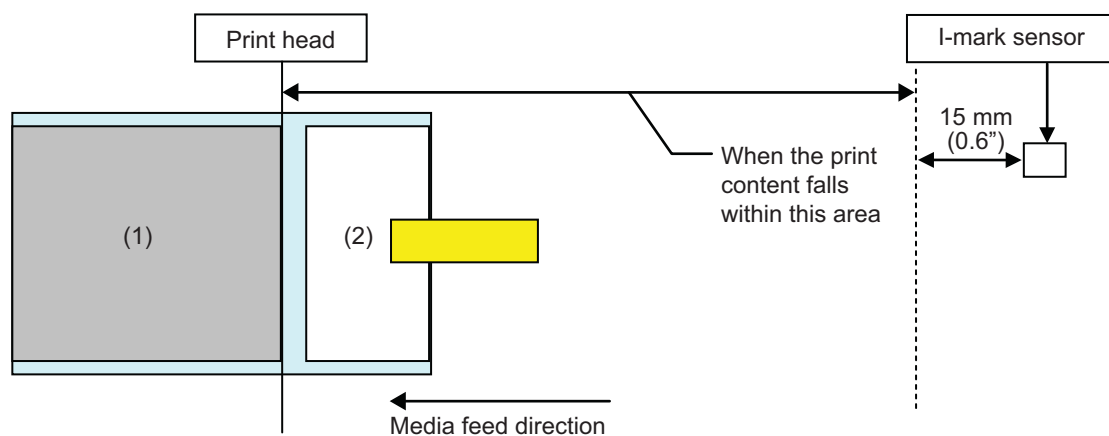


Paper End Detection in Print Motion

Operation varies by the number of remaining print steps when the paper end occurs during print operation.

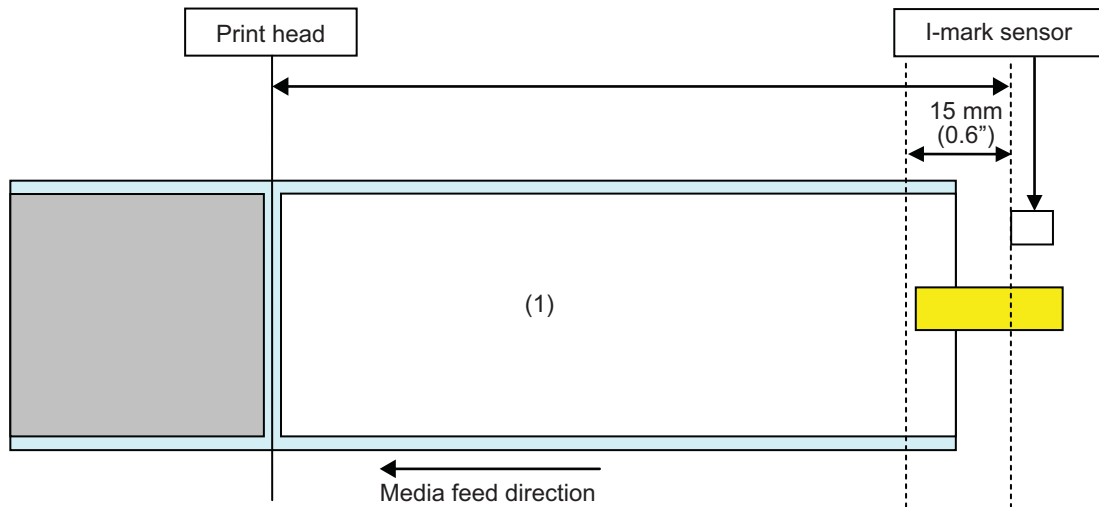


[When the print content falls within the area from the print head position to 15 mm (0.6") less than the I-mark sensor.]



- After completing the print of media (1), "Paper end error" will occur.
- After releasing the error, media (1) will not be printed again.

[When the media pitch size is between the print head position and the I-mark sensor and is more than 15 mm (0.6").]



- “Paper end error” will occur while printing the media (1), right after detecting “paper end”.
- If an error occurs while printing, media (1) will be printed again after releasing the error. If the print job is completed at the time an error occurs, media (1) will not be printed again.

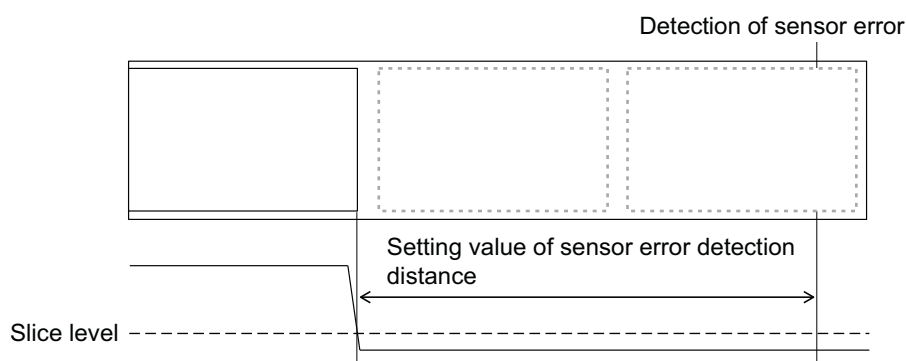
8.8.3 Sensor Error

Detection of a sensor error is performed by the gap sensor or the I-mark sensor when the pitch sensor is enabled, and the detection distance of the sensor error varies depending on the condition such as the type of sensor.

Detection method for each sensor type

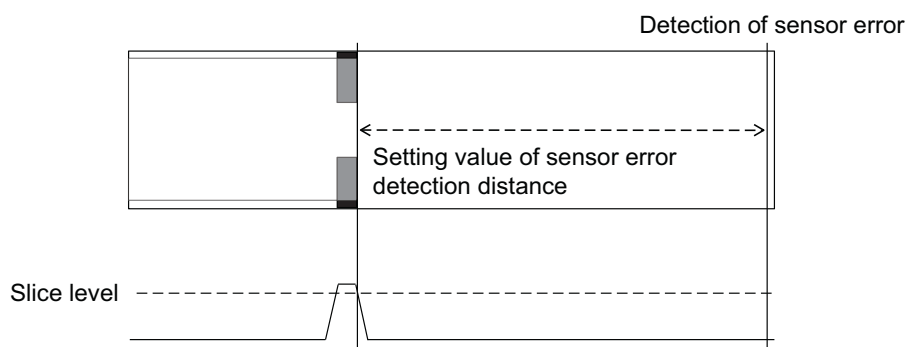
Gap Sensor

When using the Gap sensor:



I-mark Sensor

When using the I-mark sensor:



Distance to detect the sensor error

Detection distance of sensor error is determined by the head density and the vertical print area. In addition, it varies by the setting of the maximum media length.

1) Detection distance of sensor error by the vertical print area

Head density	Vertical print area after editing		
	$V > 1250 \text{ mm}$	$1250 \text{ mm} \geq V > 510 \text{ mm}$	$510 \text{ mm} \geq V$
8 dots/mm (203 dpi)	2510 mm	1250 mm	510 mm
12 dots/mm (305 dpi)	1510 mm	1250 mm	510 mm
24 dots/mm (609 dpi)	1250 mm	1250 mm	510 mm

2) Detection distance of sensor error according to the maximum media length (MEDIA LENGTH) setting

The detection distance setting of the sensor error according to the maximum media length is only available when using the gap sensor.

Distance between the head position and the gap sensor > Maximum media length > 24 mm

Detection distance of the sensor error = Maximum media length - 6 mm

8.8.4 Ribbon Error

Ribbon end detection

The ribbon sensor on the ribbon supply side and the ribbon sensor on the ribbon rewind side detect the ribbon end error. The ribbon end error occurs when one of the ribbon sensor detects the ribbon end.

1) Detection by the ribbon sensor on the supply side.

While feeding the media, when the ribbon on the ribbon supply side has not rotated for 32 mm (1.26") or more, the ribbon sensor will detect the ribbon end error.

2) Detection by the ribbon sensor on the rewind side.

While feeding the media, when the ribbon on the ribbon rewind side has not rotated for 80 mm (3.15") or more, the ribbon sensor will detect the ribbon end error.

Following are the behaviors when detecting the ribbon end according to the remaining print job.

- When the remaining printing is 12 mm or more, the printer generates a ribbon error immediately after detection.
- When the remaining printing is less than 12 mm, the printer generates a ribbon error after printing is completed.

Ribbon near end detection

The ribbon near end is detected by the ribbon sensor on the supply side. This occurs when the remaining ribbon length becomes less than approximately 15 m, 49.2 ft. (ribbon diameter is approximately 36 mm, 1.4").

Note that the remaining ribbon length (15 m, 49.2 ft.) is a calculated value from the revolution speed of the ribbon on the supply side. The timing of the ribbon end varies according to the reading condition of the ribbon sensor and the ribbon thickness.

8.9 Print Speed and Media Size

The minimum media pitch size varies by the print speed setting.

Print speed (inches/sec)	Continuous mode	Dispenser mode	
	Minimum media pitch size (mm)	(Thermal transfer) Minimum media pitch size (mm)	(Direct thermal) Minimum media pitch size (mm)
2	9	13	18
3	9	13	18
4	9	13	18
5	11	13	18
6	13	13	18
7	15	13	18
8	17	13	18
9	20	13	18
10	23	13	18
11	27	13	18
12	31	16	18
13	35	20	20
14	40	25	25
15	44	29	29
16	50	35	35

Note

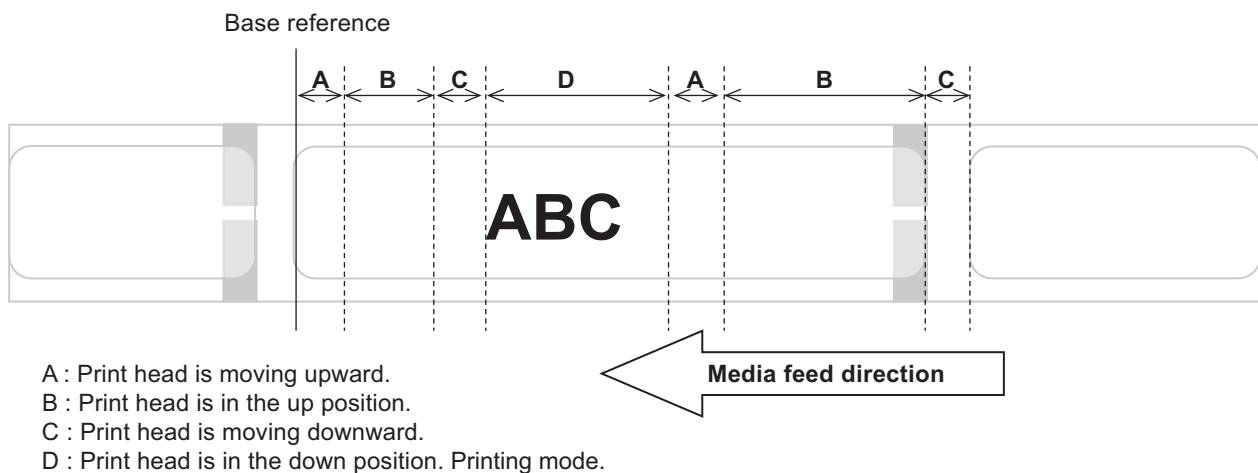
- If using media smaller than the minimum size, the media will not stop at the right position, causing a print misalignment.
- Do not send the print data with media size that is smaller than the minimum media pitch size, even when the sensor is disabled.
- The above minimum media pitch sizes are valid only when the print position adjustment and offset adjustment are set to 0 mm. The minimum media pitch size changes when the print position adjustment and offset adjustment are set to the value other than 0 mm.

8.10 Optional Ribbon Saver

Ribbon saver is a function to save on ribbon consumption by moving the print head up and down. This optional function is only available for the S84-ex thermal transfer printer if the ribbon saver kit is installed.

8.10.1 Ribbon Saver Operation

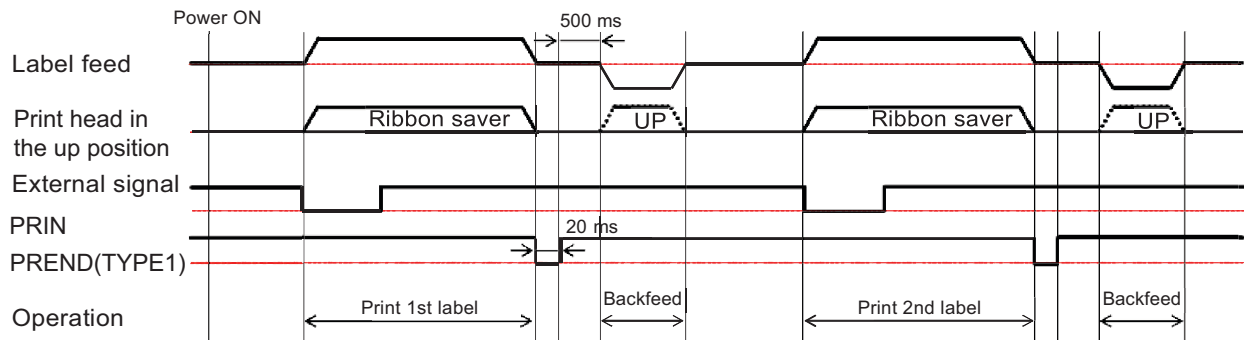
The figure below shows the print head position when printing with the ribbon saver function activated.



- Ribbon saver function works when:
 - You have selected TRANSFER in the ADVANCED MODE>**PRINT METHOD** setting screen.
 - You have selected ENABLE in the ADVANCED MODE>**RIBBON SAVER ENABLED ON FEED** setting screen.
- Be sure to use dispenser mode when using the ribbon saver function. The label is not fed normally when the dispenser is not used.
- The print head is not lifted up during label feeding operation (Forward feed).
- The print head will be in the down position every time the printer is printing.
(Start printing immediately to avoid decreasing the processing power and preventing the label from moving during pause.)
- The print head will be in the down position when a printing error occurs.
- The accuracy of printing is ± 1.5 mm when the ribbon saver function is enabled.
- Power off the printer when an error occurs on the ribbon saver to avoid abnormal printing.
- Scuffing may occur depending on the combination of the ribbon and label used. Verify the combination before use and select an appropriate ribbon.
- When requiring two labels for one print data, the ribbon saver function will not work on the second label.
- When the printer is powered on, the print head will move to the reference position (down position).
- Saver error message is shown on the screen when the print head cannot move to the reference position.

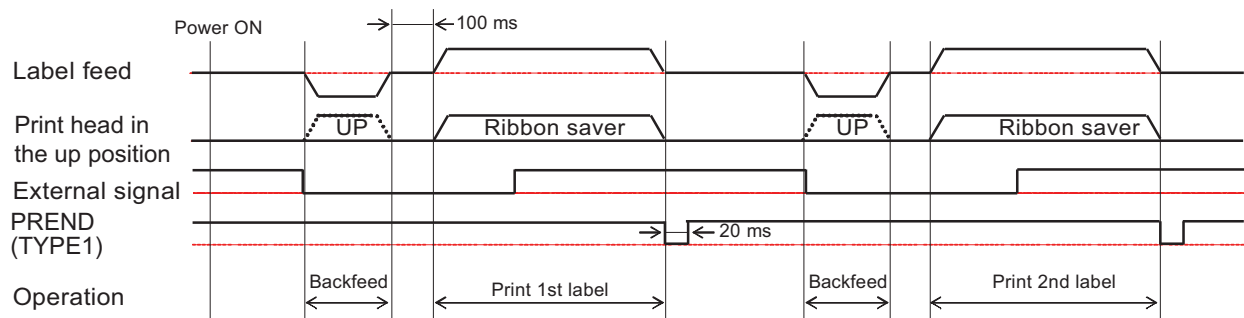
8.10.2 Ribbon Saver Timing Charts

Dispenser mode, backfeed after print and pulse input



- Normally the print head is in the down position during backfeed. However, the print head will be lifted up when the ribbon print position is not identified.

Dispenser mode, backfeed before print and pulse input

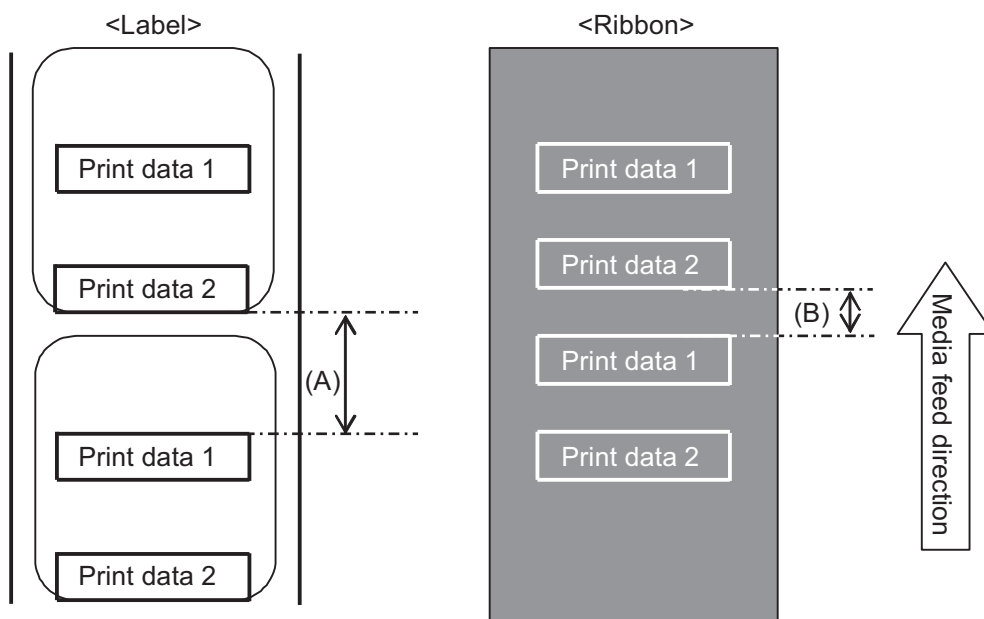


- Normally the print head is in the down position during backfeed. However, the print head will be lifted up when the ribbon print position is not identified.

8.10.3 Ribbon Saver Operation and Ribbon Consumption

When a gap exists in front of the label

The figure and table below show the minimum distance (A) from the top of the label to the print start position for each print speed required for the ribbon saver function. It also shows the consumption of the ribbon (B) when the ribbon saver is operating.



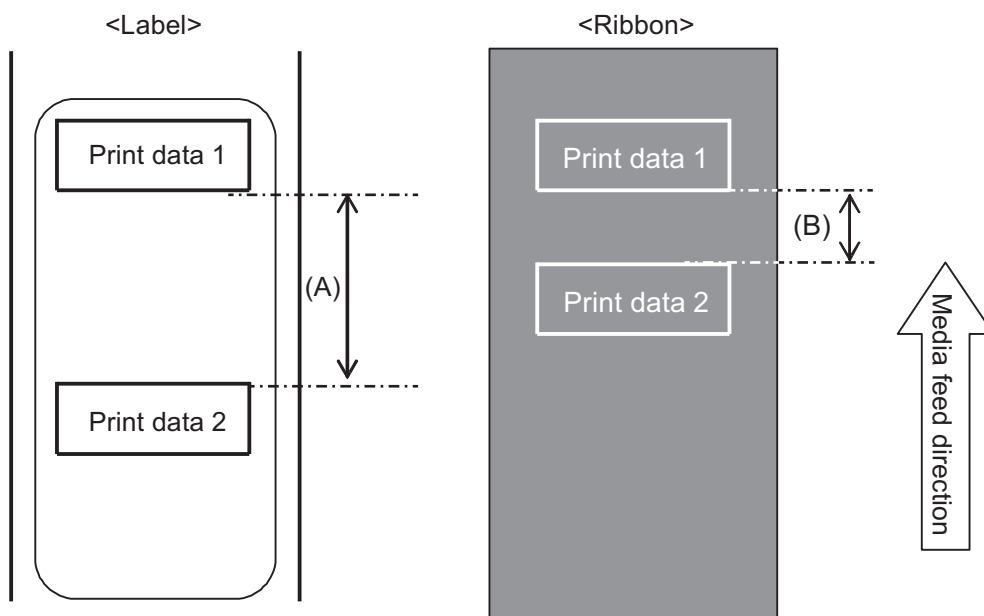
(unit: mm)

Print speed (inches/sec)	Distance (A)	Ribbon consumption (B)
2	11.0	6.5
3	12.0	7.5
4	13.0	8.8
5	14.0	9.9
6	16.0	10.5
7	16.0	11.0
8	18.0	11.5
9	19.0	12.0
10	21.0	12.5
11	22.0	13.0
12	24.0	13.5
13	26.0	14.5
14	27.0	15.0
15	29.0	16.0
16	31.0	16.5

The ribbon consumption might be different from the value in the above table depending on the ribbon condition.

When a gap exists in the print data

The figure and table below show the minimum distance (A) required from the end of printing to the next print start position. It also shows the consumption of the ribbon (B) when the ribbon saver is operating.



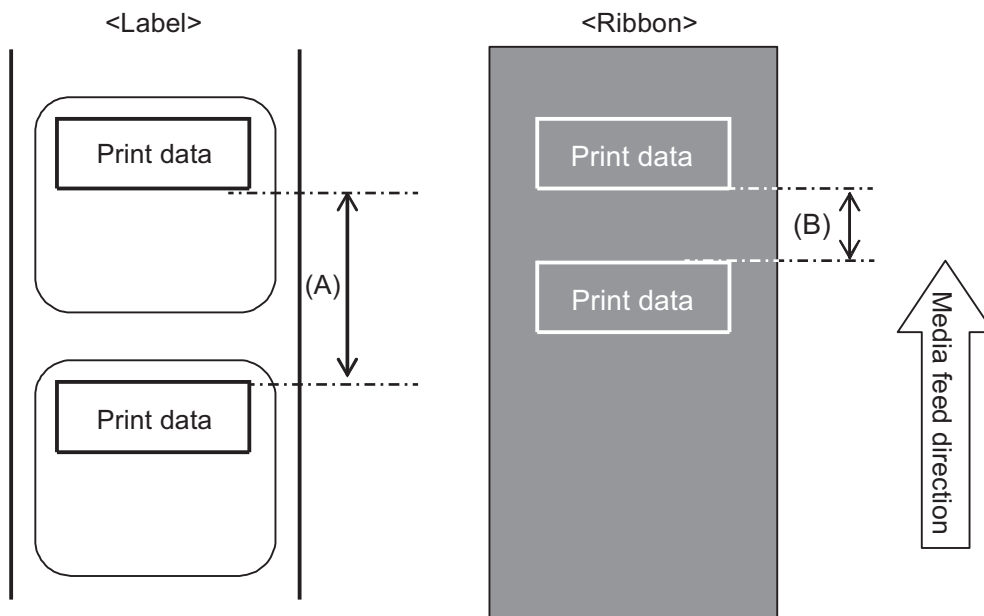
(unit: mm)

Print speed (inches/sec)	Distance (A)	Ribbon consumption (B)
2	11.0	9.5
3	12.0	10.0
4	13.0	10.5
5	14.0	11.0
6	16.0	12.0
7	16.0	13.5
8	18.0	15.0
9	19.0	15.0
10	21.0	15.5
11	22.0	16.0
12	24.0	17.5
13	26.0	19.0
14	27.0	20.0
15	29.0	22.0
16	31.0	26.0

The ribbon consumption might be different from the value in the above table depending on the ribbon condition.

When a gap exists in the back of the label

The figure and table below show the distance (A) from the end of printing to the next print start position with backfeed for printing. It also shows the consumption of the ribbon (B) when the ribbon saver is operating.



Condition

- (1) Print operation Backfeed
- (2) Setting Dispense distance 14 mm (0.55")
PITCH and OFFSET of OFFSET VOLUME should be set to 0.00,
PITCH OFFSET should be set to 0.
- (3) Print position Vertical print position is V001.

(unit: mm)

Print speed (inches/sec)	Distance (A)	Ribbon consumption (B)
2	4.0	2.5
3	4.0	2.5
4	4.0	2.5
5	4.0	2.5
6	4.0	2.5
7	4.0	2.5
8	4.0	2.5
9	4.0	3.0
10	4.0	3.0
11	4.0	3.5
12	6.0	3.5
13	8.0	5.5
14	9.0	7.5
15	11.0	9.0
16	13.0	11.0

The ribbon consumption might be different from the value in the above table depending on the ribbon condition.

8.10.4 Ribbon Specification for the Ribbon Saver

Ribbon width	39.5 mm or more

Ribbon length	Guaranteed operation speed of ribbon saver
Up to 300 m roll (Under 69 mm in diameter)	2 to 12 inches (more than 15 mm of printing)
Up to 500 m roll (Under 82 mm in diameter)	2 to 12 inches (more than 20 mm of printing)
Up to 600 m roll (Under 108 mm in diameter)	2 to 6 inches (more than 30 mm of printing)

- Be sure to remove the used ribbon at the rewinder side and replace the paper core with a new one when using up one roll of ribbon.
- Be sure to perform the preliminary operation check because the lengths of ribbon mentioned above are calculated from mechanical structure and have a limitation according to the type of ribbon, operating environment and usage.

8.10.5 Label Specification for the Ribbon Saver

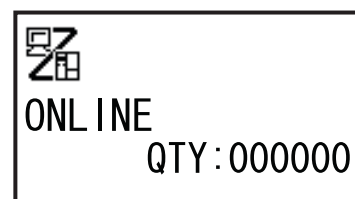
Label width		30 mm or more
Label pitch	Backfeed	25 mm or more
	No backfeed	60 mm or more

8.11 Optional UHF RFID Configuration

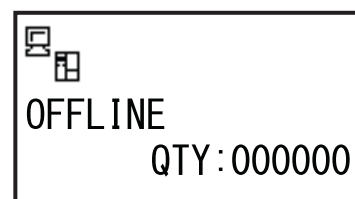
This section provides more information on the RFID operations.

- 1 Examine the media to determine the printer settings.
Refer to the **S84ex UHF Inlay Configuration Guide** for the measurements you should take and what they mean, as well as a list of inlays and their required configurations.

- 2 Press the power switch on the operator panel to "I" position.



- 3 When the printer is in online mode, press the **LINE** button on the operator panel to change to offline mode.



- 4 Press the **ENTER** button to show the **setting mode** menu.

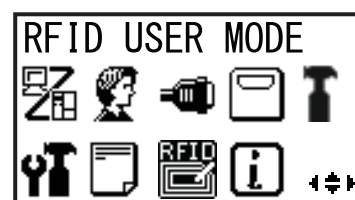


- 5 Press the **▲/▼/◀/▶** buttons to select **RFID USER MODE** and then press the **ENTER** button.

The RFID USER MODE screen shows.

- 6 Press the **▲/▼/◀/▶** buttons to select the item or set the value accordingly. The active arrow icons are shown on the screen.

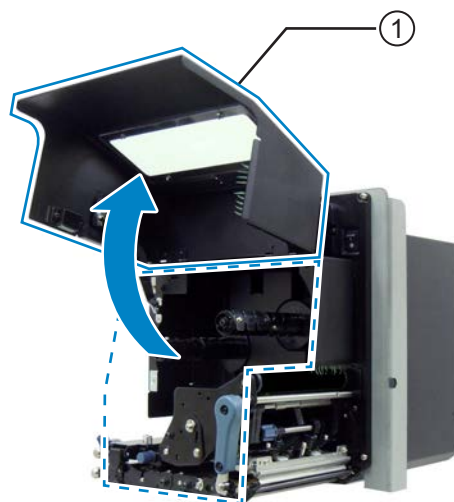
Refer to [Section 4.2.15 RFID User Mode](#) for details on the configuration items.



7 Open the **top cover** ①.

CAUTION

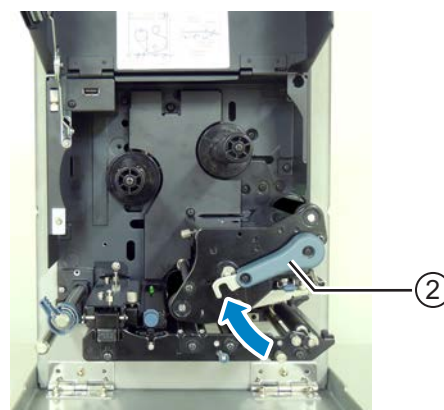
Open the top cover fully to prevent accidental drop of the cover.



8 Turn the **head lock lever** ② clockwise to unlock the print head.

CAUTION

- The print head and its surroundings are hot after printing. Be careful not to touch it, to avoid being burned.
- Touching the edge of the print head with your bare hand could cause injury.



9 Load the media and ribbon.

Refer to [Section 3.2 Loading the Ribbon](#) and [Section 3.5 Loading Media](#) for details.

10 Confirm the operation by printing/encoding a media.

Make sure that you read the data and check that it is correctly encoded.

8.11.1 Printing RFID Tag Errors

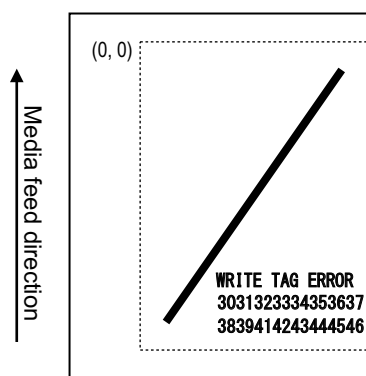
If the recorded data on a tag is incomplete due to writing on a defective tag, the printer will print an RFID tag error to the defective media. This function is to prevent the distribution of defective media with a tag error.

When an RFID tag error occurs, the printer prints a slash and the error message, such as “WRITE TAG ERROR” or “TAG NOT FOUND”. When the error is related to the writing error, the printer continue to print the first sixteen bytes of write data.

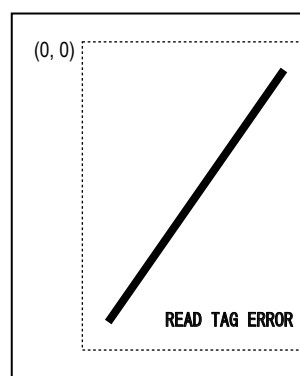
With the label size that is smaller than width 45 mm, pitch 35 mm, the write data is not printed. And with the label size that is smaller than width 40 mm, pitch 30 mm, only slash is printed. (When the tag offset is set to other than the default, add the value of tag offset to the pitch length.)

The diagram below shows the message printed on the position based on the media size specified by the normal print command <A1>.

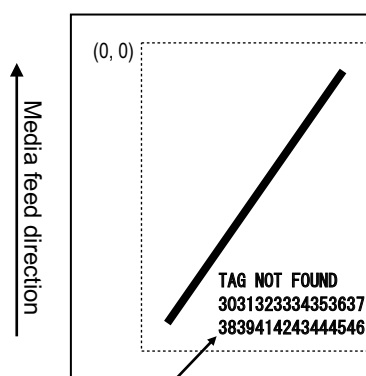
WRITE TAG ERROR in RFID write command



READ TAG ERROR in tag data print command <TU>

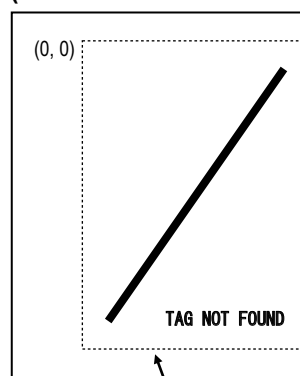


TAG NOT FOUND error in RFID write command



Dump data in HEX for the first sixteen bytes of the write data, or the maximum thirty two characters in ASCII. The dump data will be in HEX when non-printable characters and control characters are included in the data.

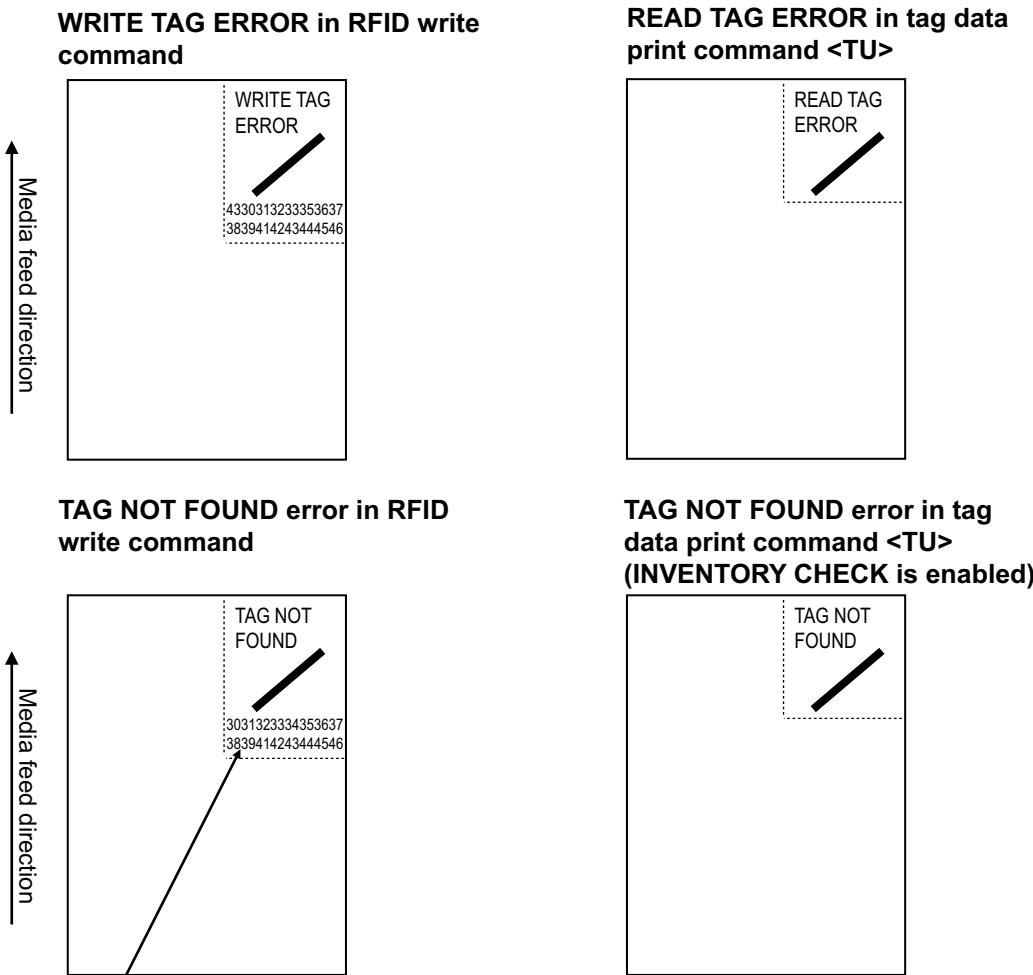
TAG NOT FOUND error in tag data print command <TU> (INVENTORY CHECK is enabled)



* Dotted line shows the range specified with media size command <A1>.
* (0,0): The origin of the range specified by the media size command <A1>

When the data is consisted with all printable characters, the dump data will be a maximum of thirty-two characters in ASCII. When there is a non-printable character or a control code that are non-printable, the dump data will be a maximum of sixteen bytes in HEX. Sixteen bits character codes, such as Kanji, are not supported.

When the media size is not specified with the <A1> command, the error message and slash are printed in a small layout as shown below, since the origin to be referenced is not clear.



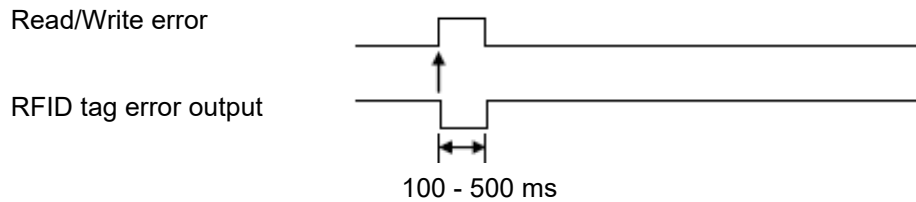
Dump data in HEX for the first sixteen bytes of the write data, or the maximum thirty two characters in ASCII. The dump data will be in HEX when non-printable characters and control characters are included in the data.

The types of errors to print are as follows:

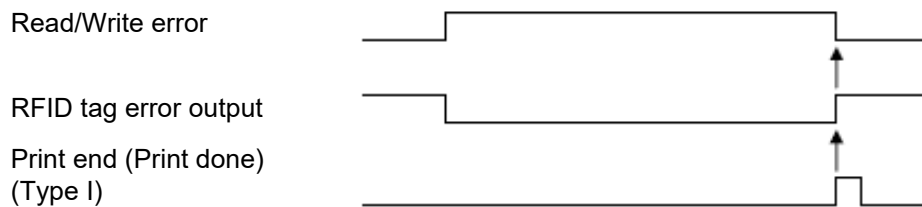
Message	Cause and Countermeasure	
TAG NOT FOUND	Cause	Did not find the tag to print, or failed to read the tag.
	Countermeasure	Confirm the inlay operation and check the printer/antenna configuration.
WRITE TAG ERROR	Cause	Failed to write the tag.
	Countermeasure	Confirm the inlay operation and check the printer/antenna configuration.
VERIFY ERROR	Cause	The written value and the read value do not match.
	Countermeasure	Confirm the inlay operation and check the printer/antenna configuration.
LOCKING ERROR	Cause	Failed to lock the tag.
	Countermeasure	Check the media.
MULTI TAGS ERROR	Cause	Multiple tags captured at a time.
	Countermeasure	Confirm the inlay operation and check the printer/antenna configuration.
READ ONLY ERROR	Cause	Succeeded to read but failed to write the tag.
	Countermeasure	Confirm the inlay operation and check the printer/antenna configuration.

8.11.2 RFID Error and Reset Timing

Error signal output with one-shot pulse

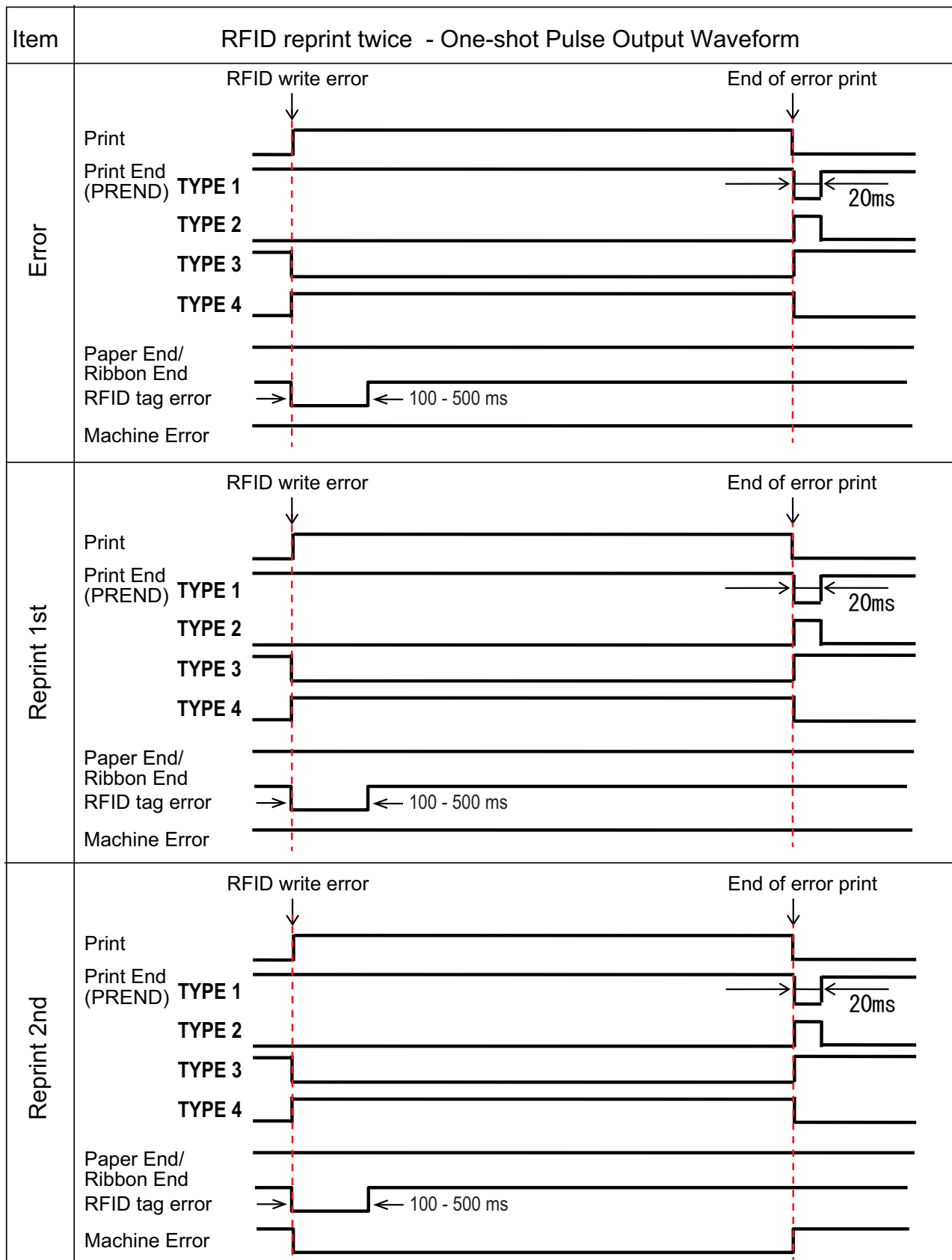


Error signal output with long pulse

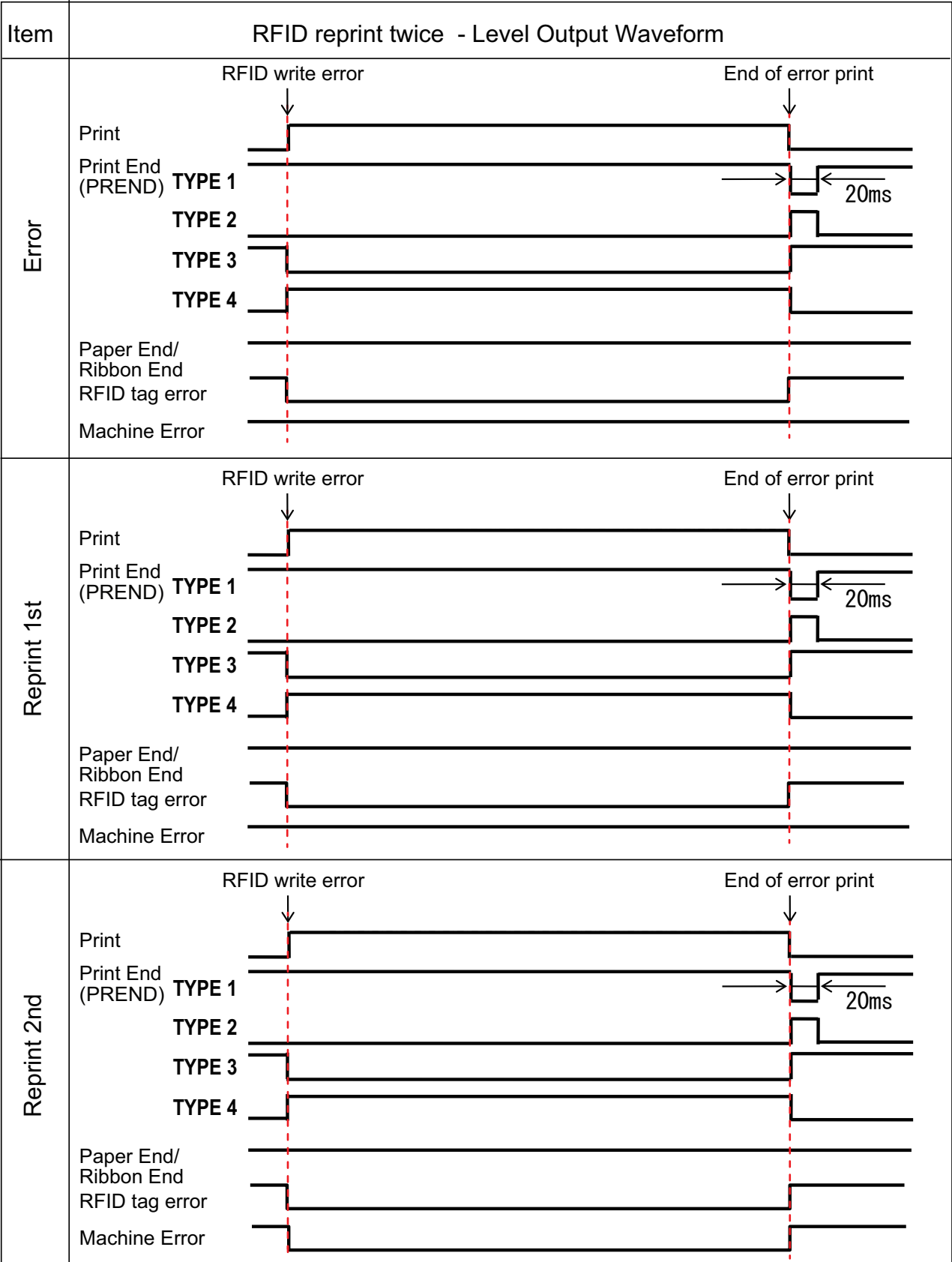


When the reprint count reaches the specified number, the RFID tag error and Machine error are output at a time. The machine error output is always a long pulse.

Timing chart of error signal output with one-shot pulse



Timing chart of error signal output with long pulse



8.11.3 External (EXT) Signal Interfaces when RFID Module is Enabled

Standard specification is applied when the RFID module is set to DISABLE. Functions shown by shading are applied when the RFID module is set to ENABLE.

Pin No.		Signal Name		Input/ Output
(25 pins)	(14 pins)	Standard Specification RFID Module Disabled	RFID Module Enabled	
1	14	Frame Ground	Frame Ground	-
2	-	+5 V	+5 V	-
3	-	-	-	-
4	4	Machine Error	Machine Error/RFID Error	Output
5	6	Print end signal (PREND)	Print end signal (PREND)	Output
6	9	Online	Online	Output
7	-	Label Near End	Label Near End	Input
8	7	Reprint signal (PRIN2)	Reprint signal (PRIN2)	Input
9	-	-	-	-
10	-	-	-	-
11	-	OUT_COM	OUT_COM	-
12	13	+5 V	+5 V	-
13	12	+24 V	+24 V	-
14	2	GND	GND	-
15	2	OUT_COM	OUT_COM	-
16	3	Ribbon End	RFID Tag Error	Output
17	1	Paper End	Paper End + Ribbon End	Output
18	10	Ribbon Near End	Ribbon Near End	Output
19	-	-	-	-
20	5	Print start signal (PRIN)	Print start signal (PRIN)	Input
21	11	Label Feed	Label Feed	Input
22	-	-	-	-
23	-	-	-	-
24	13	IN_COM	IN_COM	Input
25	-	GND	GND	-

8.11.4 RFID Printing Tips

Recommended non-printable zone

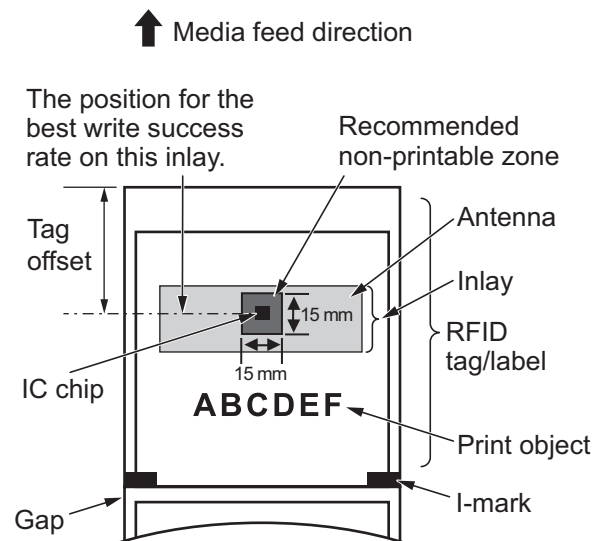
Avoid printing barcodes or characters directly on top of an RFID chip. The uneven surface will negatively affect the print quality.

Note

The tag offset is adjusted from the base reference point. The base reference point differs depending on the media sensor you use. Refer to [Section 6.3.1 About the Base Reference Point](#) for details.

When gap sensor is used, the tag offset is adjusted from the tip of the label.

When I-mark sensor is used, the tag offset is adjusted from the position after the I-mark.



8.12 Printer Specifications

Specifications are subject to change without notice.

8.12.1 Hardware

Dimensions and Weight	
Width	245 mm (9.65")
Height	300 mm (11.81")
Depth	S84-ex: 408 mm (16.06") S86-ex: 463 mm (18.23")
Weight	S84-ex: Approximately 13.7 kg (30.2 lbs.) S86-ex: Approximately 15.1 kg (33.3 lbs.)
Power Supply	
Input Voltage	AC 100 V - 240 V $\pm$ 10%
Frequency	50-60 Hz
Power Consumption	At peak: 180 VA / 180 W (Print ratio 30%) Standby: 30 VA / 25 W Input voltage condition: AC 115 V / 50 Hz
Processing	
CPU	32 Bit RISC-CPU 500 MHz
Flash ROM	48 MB (User area: 8 MB)
SDRAM	64 MB
Receive Buffer	Maximum: 2.95 MB Near full: 2 MB
External Memory	SD card: Maximum 2 GB SDHC card: Minimum 4 GB - Maximum 32 GB USB flash memory: Maximum 32 GB
Operation	
LCD	Graphic LCD (Horizontal 128 dots X Vertical 64 dots) with backlight (White/orange switchable)
LED	Status: Blue/Red
Environmental Conditions (Without Media and Ribbon)	
Operating Temperature	-5 to 40 °C (23 to 104 °F)
Storage Temperature	-20 to 60 °C (-4 to 140 °F)
Operating Humidity	15 to 85% RH (Non-condensing)
Storage Humidity	15 to 90% RH (Non-condensing)

Print	
Print Method	Direct thermal and thermal transfer
Print Speed	S84-ex 203 dpi: 4 to 16 inches/sec (101.6 to 406.4 mm/sec) 305 dpi: 4 to 14 inches/sec (101.6 to 335.6 mm/sec) 609 dpi: 2 to 6 inches/sec (50.8 to 152.4 mm/sec) S86-ex 203 dpi: 4 to 14 inches/sec (101.6 to 335.6 mm/sec) 305 dpi: 4 to 12 inches/sec (101.6 to 304.8 mm/sec)
Resolution	S84-ex: 203 dpi (8 dots/mm) 305 dpi (12 dots/mm) 609 dpi (24 dots/mm) S86-ex: 203 dpi (8 dots/mm) 305 dpi (12 dots/mm)
Non-printable Area	Pitch direction (Excludes liner) Top: 1.5 mm (0.06"), Bottom: 1.5 mm (0.06") Width direction (Excludes liner) Left: 1.5 mm (0.06"), Right: 1.5 mm (0.06")
Printable Area	S84-ex 203 dpi: Length 2500 mm (98.42") x Width 104 mm (4.09") 305 dpi: Length 1500 mm (59.05") x Width 104 mm (4.09") 609 dpi: Length 400 mm (15.75") x Width 104 mm (4.09") S86-ex 203 dpi: Length 1249 mm (49.17") x Width 167.5 mm (6.59") 305 dpi: Length 1249 mm (49.17") x Width 167.5 mm (6.59")
Print Darkness	Darkness level: 1 to 10
Sensors	
I-mark (Reflective Type)	Sensitivity: Adjustable
Gap (Transmissive Type)	Position and sensitivity: Adjustable
Head Open	Fixed
Top Cover Open	Fixed
Media Sensor Assembly Open	Fixed
Label End Sensor	Detect with I-mark sensor
Ribbon End Sensor	Fixed
Ribbon Supply Sensor	Fixed

8.12.2 Ribbon and Media

Ribbon (Use genuine ribbon made by SATO.)		
Size	S84-ex	Width: 25 mm to 128 mm (0.98" to 5.04") Length: 450 m (1476.4 ft.) when width is less than 39.5 mm (1.55") 600 m (1968.5 ft.) when width is equal or more than 39.5 mm (1.55")
	S86-ex	Width: 59 mm to 177 mm (2.32" to 6.97") Length: 600 m (1968.5 ft.) when width is equal or more than 59 mm (2.32")
Wind Direction	Face-out/Face-in	
Roll Diameter	108 mm (4.25")	
Core Diameter	25.6 mm (1.01")	

Media (Use genuine media made by SATO.)		
Type	Media roll (Face-in wound/face-out wound), fan-fold media	
Size		
Continuous Mode		
Pitch	S84-ex	203 dpi: 6 to 2500 mm (0.24" to 98.42") 305 dpi: 6 to 1500 mm (0.24" to 59.06") 609 dpi: 6 to 400 mm (0.24" to 15.75")
	S86-ex	203 dpi: 6 to 1249 mm (0.24" to 49.17") 305 dpi: 6 to 1249 mm (0.24" to 49.17")
(With Liner)	S84-ex	203 dpi: 9 to 2503 mm (0.35" to 98.54") 305 dpi: 9 to 1503 mm (0.35" to 59.17") 609 dpi: 9 to 403 mm (0.35" to 15.87")
* There is a restriction with the speed for the small pitch label.	S86-ex	203 dpi: 9 to 1252 mm (0.35" to 49.29") 305 dpi: 9 to 1252 mm (0.35" to 49.29")
Width	S84-ex	10 to 128 mm (0.39" to 5.04")
	S86-ex	51 to 177 mm (2.01" to 6.97")
(With Liner)	S84-ex	13 to 131 mm (0.51" to 5.16")
	S86-ex	54 to 180 mm (2.13" to 7.09")

Media (Use genuine media made by SATO.)	
Size	
Dispense Mode	
Pitch	Thermal transfer model: 10 to 356 mm (0.39" to 14.02") Direct thermal model: 15 to 356 mm (0.59" to 14.02")
(With Liner)	Thermal transfer model: 13 to 359 mm (0.51" to 14.13") Direct thermal model: 18 to 359 mm (0.71" to 14.13")
Width	S84-ex 10 to 128 mm (0.39" to 5.04") S86-ex 51 to 177 mm (2.01" to 6.97")
(With Liner)	S84-ex 13 to 131 mm (0.51" to 5.16") S86-ex 54 to 180 mm (2.13" to 7.09")
Thickness (Label and liner)	0.05 to 0.31 mm (0.002" to 0.012")

8.12.3 Interface

Interface	
Standard	USB Interface (Type B) LAN Interface RS-232C Interface IEEE1284 Interface External Signal Interface (EXT) SD card slot USB Interface (Type A)
Optional	Bluetooth Interface Wireless LAN Interface

8.12.4 Built-in Functions

Functions	
Built-in Functions	Status return Graphic Sequential number Form overlay External font registration Character modification Black/white inversion Ruled line Dump list (Hex dump mode) Format registration Outline font Outline modification Zero slash switching Unicode (UTF-8/UTF-16) switching Simple standalone Work shift setting mode XML print WEB browser printer setting (If wireless LAN is installed)
Self-diagnosis Functions	Broken head element check Head open detection Paper end detection Ribbon end detection Ribbon near-end detection Test print Kanji data check Cover open detection Calendar check setting Sensor cover open detection Label near end signal receive and input from the applicator, and report output of label near end status through EXT.
Adjustment Functions	Print Darkness Print Position Media Stop Position Buzzer Volume LCD Brightness
Protective Functions	Head overheating protection function Power supply temperature monitor function

8.12.5 Printer Languages

Printer Languages	
	SBPL SZPL SDPL

8.12.6 Fonts/Symbols/Barcodes

Fonts	
Bitmap Fonts	
U	9 dots H x 5 dots W
S	15 dots H x 8 dots W
M	20 dots H x 13 dots W
WB	30 dots H x 18 dots W
WL	52 dots H x 28 dots W
XU	9 dots H x 5 dots W
XS	17 dots H x 17 dots W
XM	24 dots H x 24 dots W
XB	48 dots H x 48 dots W
XL	48 dots H x 48 dots W
OCR-A	S84-ex/S86-ex 203 dpi: 22 dots H x 15 dots W S84-ex/S86-ex 305 dpi: 33 dots H x 22 dots W S84-ex 609 dpi: 66 dots H x 44 dots W
OCR-B	S84-ex/S86-ex 203 dpi: 24 dots H x 20 dots W S84-ex/S86-ex 305 dpi: 36 dots H x 30 dots W S84-ex 609 dpi: 72 dots H x 60 dots W
Simplified Chinese Characters (GB18030)	Mincho 16 dots H x 16 dots W 24 dots H x 24 dots W Gothic 24 dots H x 24 dots W
Traditional Chinese Characters (BIG5)	Mincho 24 dots H x 24 dots W
Korea Fonts (KSX1001)	Mincho 16 dots H x 16 dots W 24 dots H x 24 dots W
Scalable Fonts	
Rasterized Font	CG Times CG Triumvirate *Support Codepage 858, Bold/Italic
	SATO Gamma SATO Vica * Support WGL4
	Thai (CP874) Arabic
Outline Fonts	Alphanumeric, Symbols
Extended Fonts	Font downloaded data (Support 1-byte, 2-byte characters)

Barcodes	
1D Barcodes	UPC-A/UPC-E JAN/EAN-13/8 CODE39, CODE93, CODE128 GS1-128(UCC/EAN128) CODABAR(NW-7) ITF Industrial 2 of 5 Matrix 2 of 5 MSI POSTNET BOOKLAND Intelligent Mail Barcode (IMB) GS1 DataBar Omnidirectional GS1 DataBar Truncated GS1 DataBar Stacked GS1 DataBar Stacked Omnidirectional GS1 DataBar Limited GS1 DataBar Expanded GS1 DataBar Expanded Stacked
2D Codes	QR Code Micro QR Code Security QR Code PDF417 Micro PDF Maxi Code GS1 Data Matrix Data Matrix (ECC200)
Composite Symbols	EAN-13 Composite (CC-A/CC-B) EAN-8 Composite (CC-A/CC-B) UPC-A Composite (CC-A/CC-B) UPC-E Composite (CC-A/CC-B) GS1 DataBar Composite (CC-A/CC-B) GS1 DataBar Truncated Composite (CC-A/CC-B) GS1 DataBar Stacked Composite (CC-A/CC-B) GS1 DataBar Expanded Stacked Composite (CC-A/CC-B) GS1 DataBar Expanded Composite (CC-A/CC-B) GS1 DataBar Stacked Omnidirectional Composite (CC-A/CC-B) GS1 DataBar Limited Composite (CC-A/CC-B) GS1-128 Composite (CC-A/CC-B/CC-C)

Controls	
Rotation	Characters: 0°, 90°, 180°, 270° Barcode: Parallel 1 (0°), Parallel 2 (180°), Serial 1 (90°), Serial 2 (270°)
Barcode Ratio	1:2, 1:3, 2:5, Any ratio is available
Magnification	Bitmap font: Vertical 1 to 36, Horizontal 1 to 36 Barcode: 1 to 36

8.12.7 Options

Options	
	1) Wireless LAN interface kit 2) Bluetooth kit 3) Linerless (Only for S84-ex) 4) RFID (UHF) kit (Only for S84-ex) 5) Ribbon saver (Only for S84-ex)

8.12.8 Accessories

Accessories	
	1) AC power cord 2) Documentations (Quick Guide, Global Warranty Program leaflet, etc.) 3) 14-pin conversion cable 4) Ribbon core

8.12.9 Standards

Standards	
Safety Standards	CB IEC 60950-1, UL60950-1, CSA C22.2, EN60950-1, CCC, KC, BIS, RCM, EAC
EMC Standards	FCC PART15B Class A, ICES-003 Class A, EN55024, EN55032, CCC, KC, BIS, RCM, EAC
Environmental Standard RoHS	RoHS directive (six hazardous) restricts the use of six hazardous materials listed below. Hexavalent chromium Max. 0.1% Lead and lead compounds Max. 0.1% Mercury and mercury compounds Max. 0.1% Cadmium and cadmium compounds Max. 0.01% Polybrominated biphenyls (PBB) Max. 0.1% Polybrominated diphenyl ethers (PBDE) Max. 0.1%
Wireless LAN (2.45 GHz)	KC, R&TTE

8.13 Interface Specifications

For data communication with the host, this printer supports the following interfaces:

You can set the various interface settings of the printer through the **Interface Mode** menu.

- USB (USB type B)
- LAN Ethernet
- RS-232C (DB 9 pins, female)
- IEEE1284 (Amphenol 36 pins)
- External signal (EXT) (DB 25 pins, female)
- Optional Bluetooth
- Optional Wireless LAN



CAUTION

Do not connect or disconnect the interface cables (or use a switch box) with power supplied to either the printer or host. This may cause damage to the interface circuitry in the printer or host and is not covered by warranty.

Note

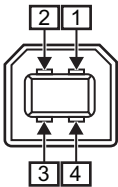
- Bluetooth and wireless LAN are optional interfaces.
 - You cannot use the wireless LAN interface and USB interface at a time.
-

8.13.1 USB Interface

This interface complies with the USB2.0 standard.
Install the USB driver to the computer before use.

Basic Specifications	
Connector	USB Type B connector
Protocol	Status4, Status5
Power Supply	BUS Power through cable
Power Consumption	+5 V at 80 mA

Pin Assignments	
Pin No.	Description
1	VBus
2	-Data
3	+Data
4	GND



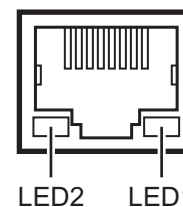
Cable Specifications	
Cable Connector	USB Type B connector
Cable Length	5 m (16.4 feet) or less

8.13.2 LAN Ethernet Interface

Basic Specifications (When IPv4 is selected)	
Connector	RJ-45 Receptacle
Power Supply	Powered from the printer
Protocol	Status3 Status4 (Cyclic response mode) Status4 (ENQ response mode) Status5
IP Address	0.0.0.0 - 255.255.255.255 Initial: 192.168.1.1
Subnet Mask	0.0.0.0 - 255.255.255.255 Initial: 255.255.255.0
Gateway Address	0.0.0.0 - 255.255.255.255 Initial: 0.0.0.0

Basic Specifications (When IPv6 is selected)	
Connector	RJ-45 Receptacle
Power Supply	Powered from the printer
Protocol	Status3 Status4 (Cyclic response mode) Status4 (ENQ response mode) Status5
IP Address	0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000 - FFFF:FFFF:FFFF:FFFF:FFFF:FFFF:FFFF:FFFF Initial: 0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000
Prefix	0 -128 Initial: 64
Default Router	0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000 - FFFF:FFFF:FFFF:FFFF:FFFF:FFFF:FFFF:FFFF Initial: 0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000

Link/Status LED		
LED	Color	Description
LED1	Green	LED lights up for 10 ms when packets are received. LED lights up when the printer established the LINK with Ethernet device.
LED2	Orange	LED lights off when the printer detected the connection to 10BASE-T.
		LED lights up when the printer detected the connection to 100BASE-TX.
		LED lights up when a cable is not connected.



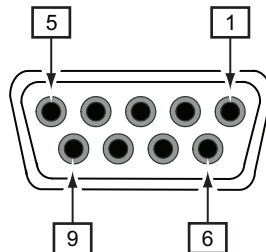
Cable Specifications	
Cable	10BASE-T/100BASE-TX Category 5
Cable Length	100 m (328 feet) or less

Software Specifications	
Supported Protocol	TCP/IP
Network Layer	ARP, IP, ICMP
Session Layer	TCP, UDP
Application Layer	LPD, FTP, TELNET, BOOTP, DHCP, HTTP, SNMP, SNTP

8.13.3 RS-232C Interface

This interface complies with the RS-232C standard.

Basic Specifications	
Asynchronous ASCII	Half-duplex communication Bi-directional communication
Data Transmission Rate	2400, 4800, 9600, 19200 (default), 38400, 57600, 115200 bps
Transmission Form	Start, b1, b2, b3, b4, b5, b6, b7, b8, Stop "b8" will be omitted if using 7 bit oriented.
Data Length	7 or 8 bits (default)
Stop Bit	1 (default) or 2 bits
Parity Bit	ODD, EVEN, NONE (default)
Codes Used	ASCII Character Codes: 7 bits, Graphics: 8 bits
Control Codes	STX (02H), ETX (03H), ACK (06H), NAK (15H)
Connector	DB-9 Female or equivalent
Signal Levels	High = +5 to +12 V, Low = -5 to -12 V
Protocol	Ready/Busy, XON/XOFF, Status3, Status4, Status5 (default) When LEGACY COMMAND SUPPORT is ON: Status2



Connector Pin Specifications		
Pin No.	I/O	Description
1	-	Data Carrier Detect
2	Input	Receive Data
3	Output	Transmit Data
4	Output	Data Terminal Ready
5	Reference	Signal Ground
6	Input	Data Set Ready
7	Output	Request To Send
8	Input	Clear To Send
9	-	Not connected

Cable Specifications	
Cable Connector	DB-9 Male or equivalent
Cable Length	5 m (16.4 feet) or less

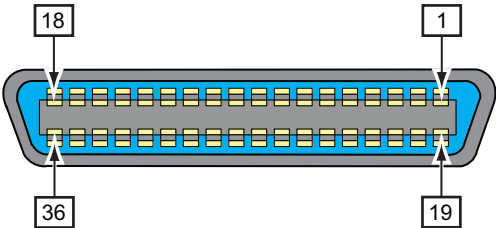
Note

- When using the READY/BUSY control, make sure that the printer is in power on mode before you send the data from the host.
 - With communication protocols such as XON/XOFF, STATUS3, STATUS4 or STATUS5, a receive buffer full error will occur when the received data is more than the receive buffer size (2.95 MB). Send data that is less than 2.95 MB while monitoring the status of the printer.
 - A parity error will be detected if this error occurs after the reception of ESC+A.
-

8.13.4 IEEE1284 Interface

This interface complies with the IEEE1284 standard.

Basic Specifications	
Connector	Amphenol 36 pins, female
Signal Levels	High-level: +2.4 to +5.0 V Low-level: +0.0 to +0.4 V
Receive Mode	Single-item buffer, Multi-item buffer
Protocol	Status4, Status5



Connector Pin Specifications		
Pin No.	I/O	Description
1	Input	STROBE
2-9	Input	DATA 1 - DATA 8 DATA1: LSB DATA8: MSB
10	Output	ACK
11	Output	BUSY
12	Output	PAPER EMPTY/PAPER ERROR
13	Output	SELECT
14	Input	AUTO FEED
15	-	Not in use
16	-	LOGIC Ground
17	-	Frame Ground
18		+5 V
19	-	STROBE RETURN
20-27	-	DATA 1 - DATA 8 RETURN
28	-	ACK RETURN
29	-	BUSY RETURN
30	-	PAPER EMPTY RETURN

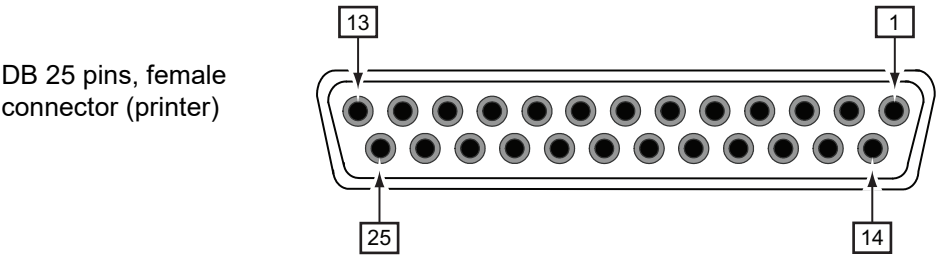
Connector Pin Specifications		
Pin No.	I/O	Description
31	Input	INITIALIZE
32	Output	FAULT
33-35	-	Not in use
36	Input	SELECT INPUT

Cable Specifications	
Cable Connector	Amphenol 36 pins, male
Cable Length	1.5 m (5 feet) or less

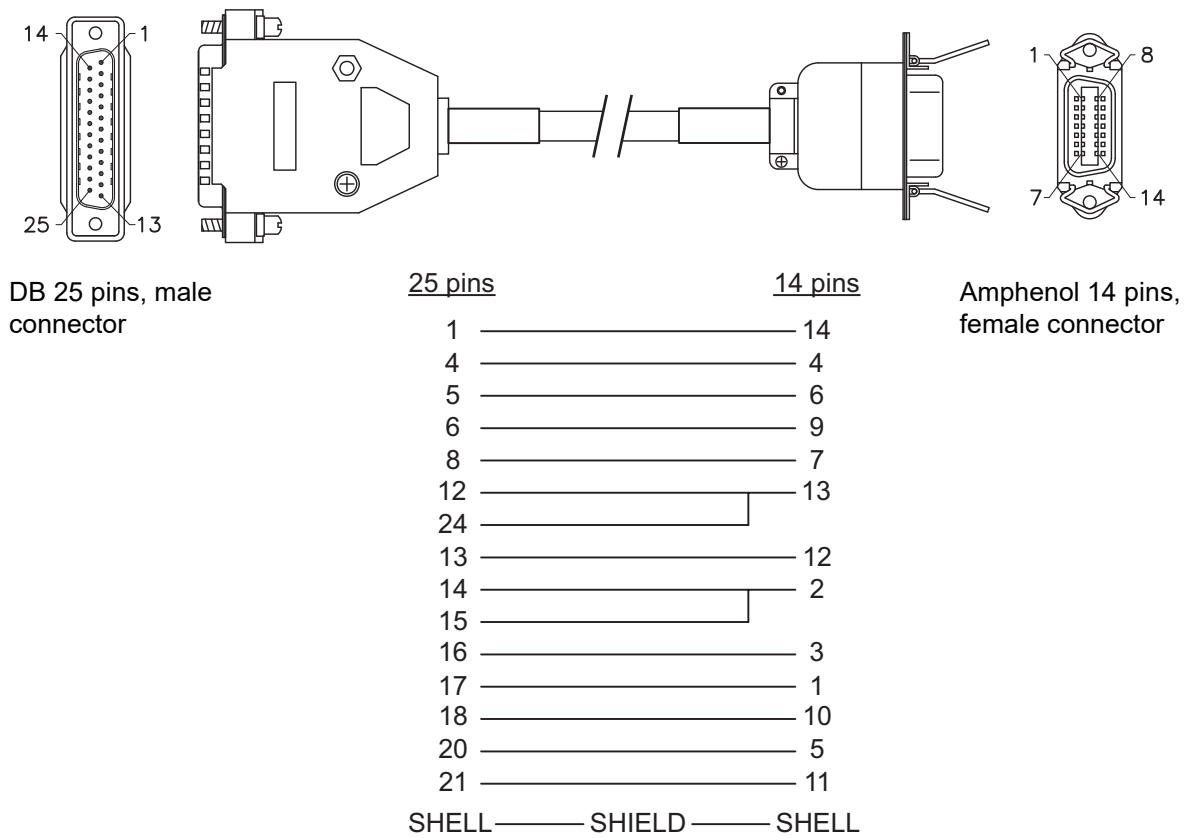
8.13.5 External Signal Interface (EXT)

This interface is designed to connect the printer with other peripherals.

Basic Specifications	
Connector	DB 25 pins, female Supplied with 14-pin conversion cable (Amphenol 14 pins, female)
Signal Levels	High-level: +4.2 to +5.0 V Low-level: +0.0 to +0.7 V



Wiring chart of the 14-pin conversion cable



Connector Pin Specifications			
Pin No.		I/O	Description
(25 pins)	(14 pins)		
1	14	-	Frame Ground
2	-	-	Vcc +5 V (Maximum current 500 mA) 500 mA in total for Pin No. 2 and 12.
3	-	Output	Print Start Position Signal (HOME POSITION) When backfeed motion is set to CONTROLLED, outputs a low signal when backfeed is done.
4	4	Output	Machine Error: Outputs a low signal when an error such as the head open error is detected.
5	6	Output	Print end signal (PREND): Outputs a signal when the media print is completed.
6	9	Output	Online*3: Outputs a low signal when the printer is in offline mode.
7	-	Input*2	Label Near End: Printer received a label near end signal when a low signal is detected.
8	7	Input*2	Reprint signal (PRIN2): Prints the previously printed content again when a low signal is detected.
9	-	Input*2	Backfeed Order (DISPENSE IN) When backfeed motion is set to CONTROLLED, perform a backfeed when a low signal is detected.
10	-	-	-
11	-	-	OUT_COM: Ground of peripherals
12	13	-	Vcc +5 V (Maximum current 500 mA) 500 mA in total for Pin No. 2 and 12.
13	12	-	VCC +24V (Maximum current 2 A)
14	2	-	GND: Reference Signal Ground
15	2	-	OUT_COM: Ground of peripherals
16	3	Output	Ribbon End: Outputs a low signal when the ribbon end is detected.
17	1	Output	Paper End: Outputs a low signal when the paper end is detected.
18	10	Output	Ribbon Near End: Outputs a high signal when the ribbon near end is detected.
19	-	-	-
20	5	Input*2	Print start signal (PRIN): Prints one media when a low signal is detected.
21	11	Input*2	Label Feed: Feeds one media when a low signal is detected.

Connector Pin Specifications			
22	-	-	-
23	-	-	-
24	13	Input	IN_COM* ¹ : Power supply from peripherals
25	-	-	GND: Reference Signal Ground

Note

- You can set the external signal type (TYPE1 to TYPE4) for PREND output signal of pin No. 5. Refer to the **EXTERNAL SIGNAL** screen of the **Advanced Mode** menu for details.
- You can set the pin number for input and output through the **INPUT SIGNAL/OUTPUT SIGNAL** screen of the **Advanced Mode** menu.

*¹When using the 14-pin conversion cable, do not connect the power pin to [IN_COM] pin. The [IN COM] pin is connected to 5 V in cable.

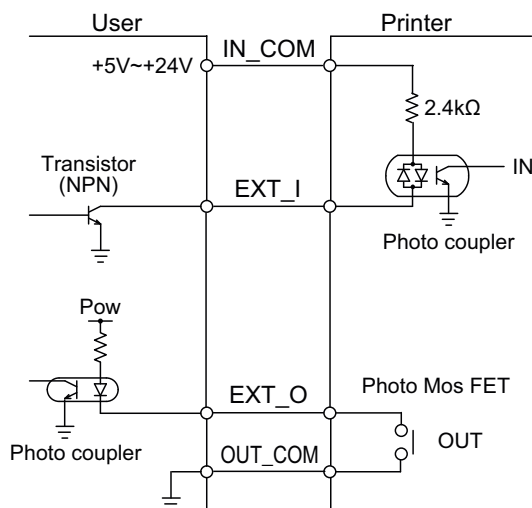
*²These input signal terminals can be connected to the open collector input devices.

*³This is online output signal when MODE2 is selected in the EXT 9PIN SELECT screen of the service mode. The signal outputs the status of the remaining print existing when MODE1 is selected.

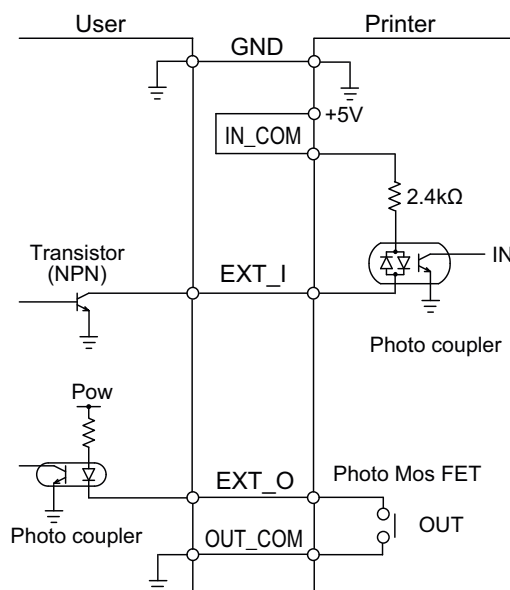
Input/Output circuit diagram of 25 pins external signal interface (DB 25 pins, female terminal)

When the output from the user is NPN transistor output

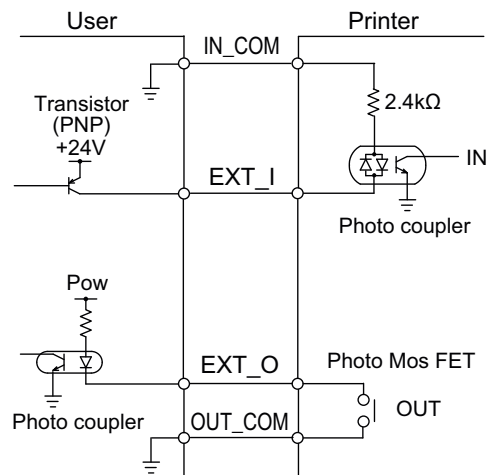
[Power is supplied from the user]



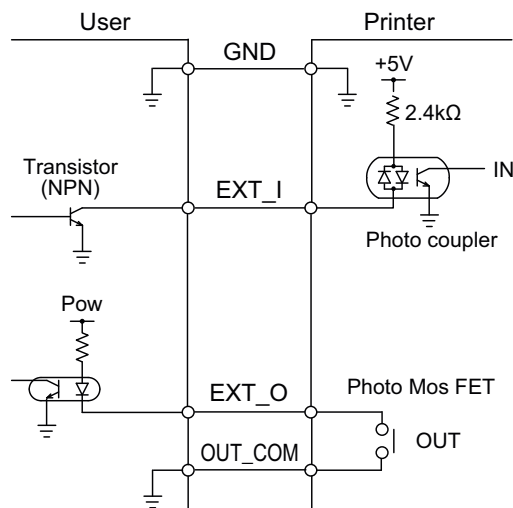
[Power is supplied from the printer]



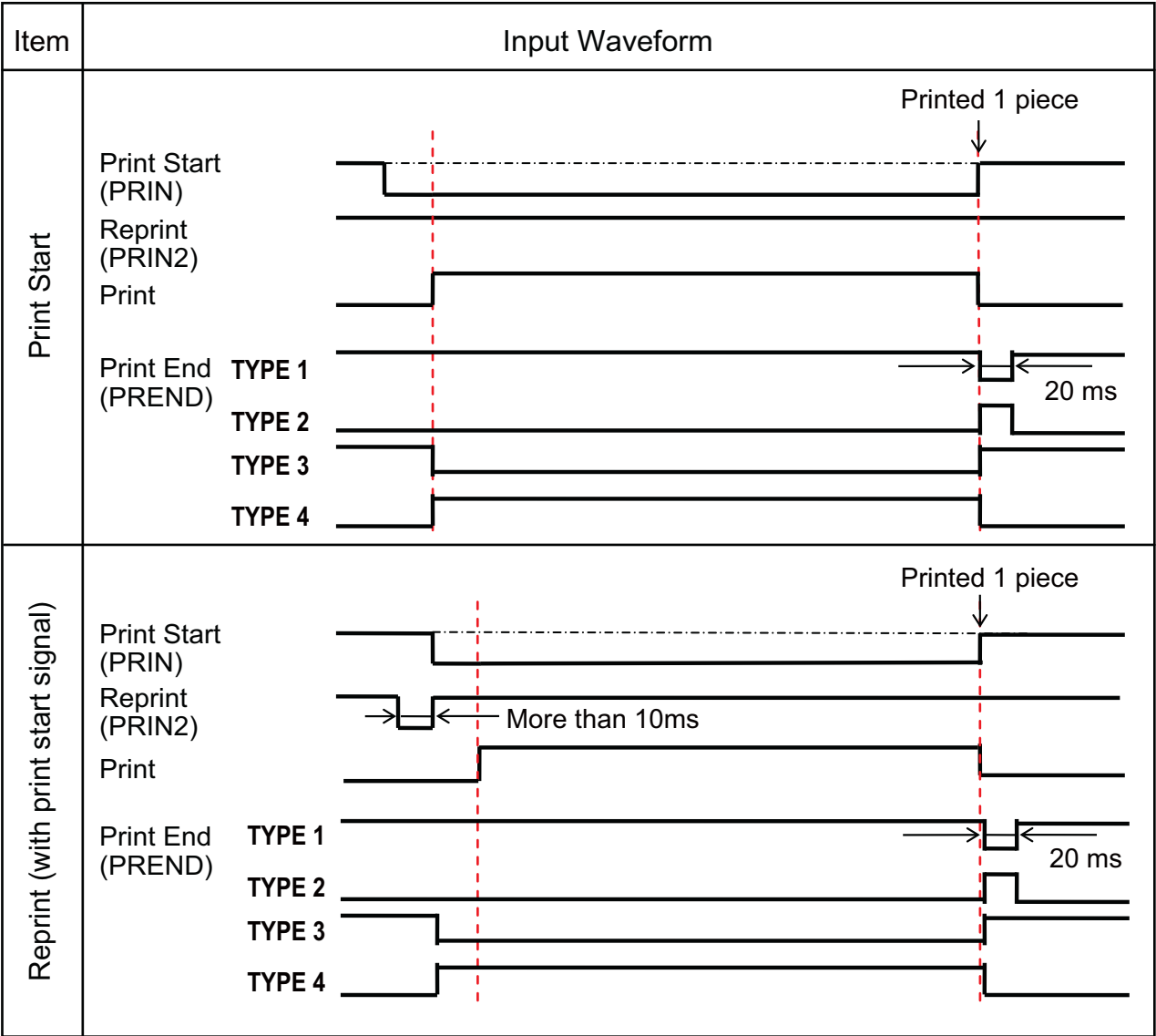
When the output from the user is PNP transistor output

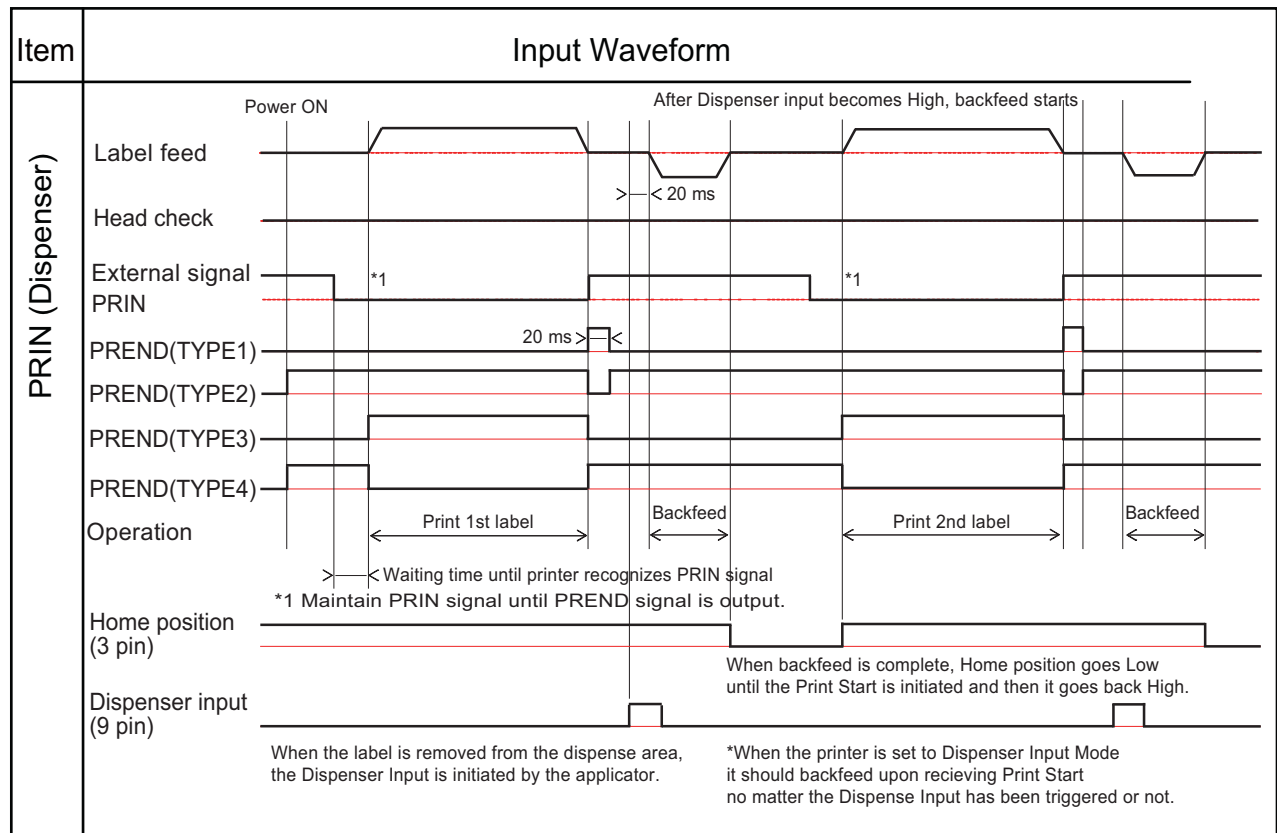


Input/Output circuit diagram of 14-pin external signal interface (Amphenol 14 pins, female connector)



Timing Chart of the EXT Input Signal

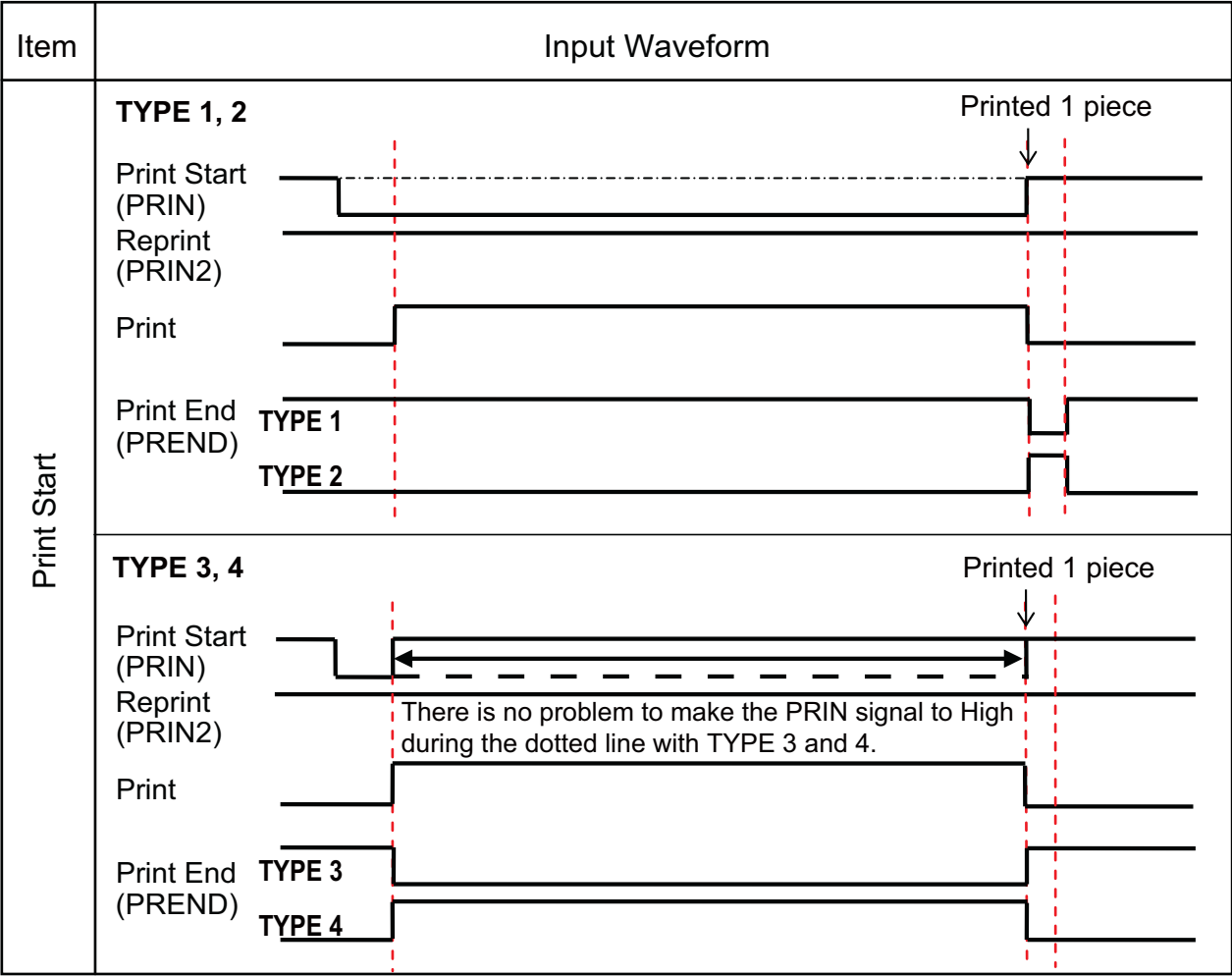


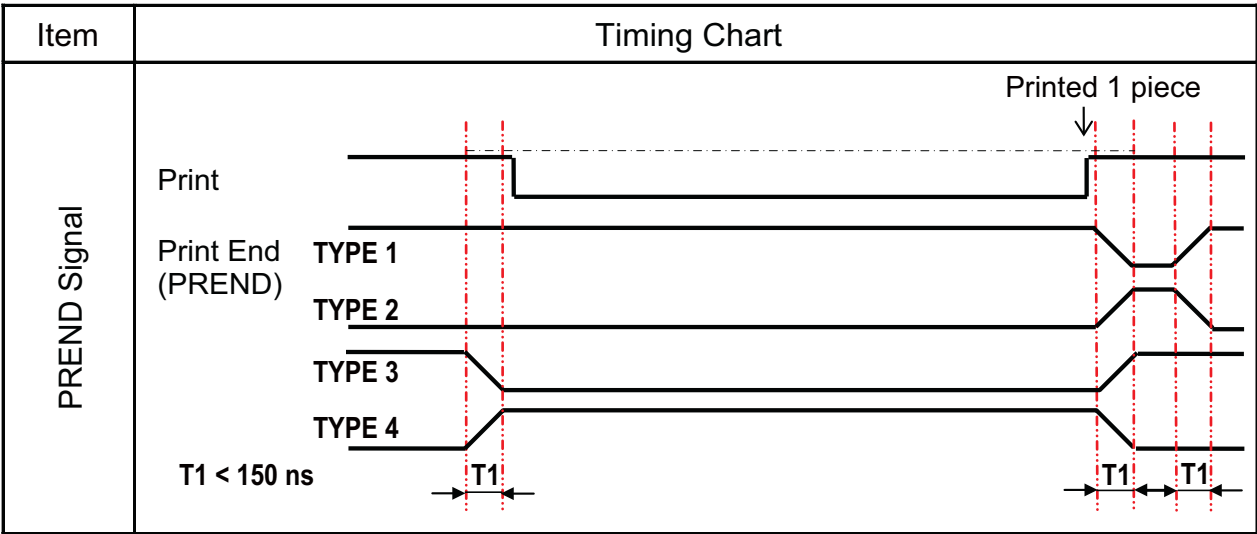


Supplementary explanation

- Keep the print start signal (PRIN) to “Low” until print end signal (PREND) is output. Refer to the below [Maintaining the Print Start Signal \(PRIN\)](#) timing chart.
- Keep the output reprint signal (PRIN2) for more than 10 ms. When signal is output for shorter than 10 ms, and reprint signal is not acknowledged, the printer does not perform reprinting.

Maintaining the Print Start Signal (PRIN)

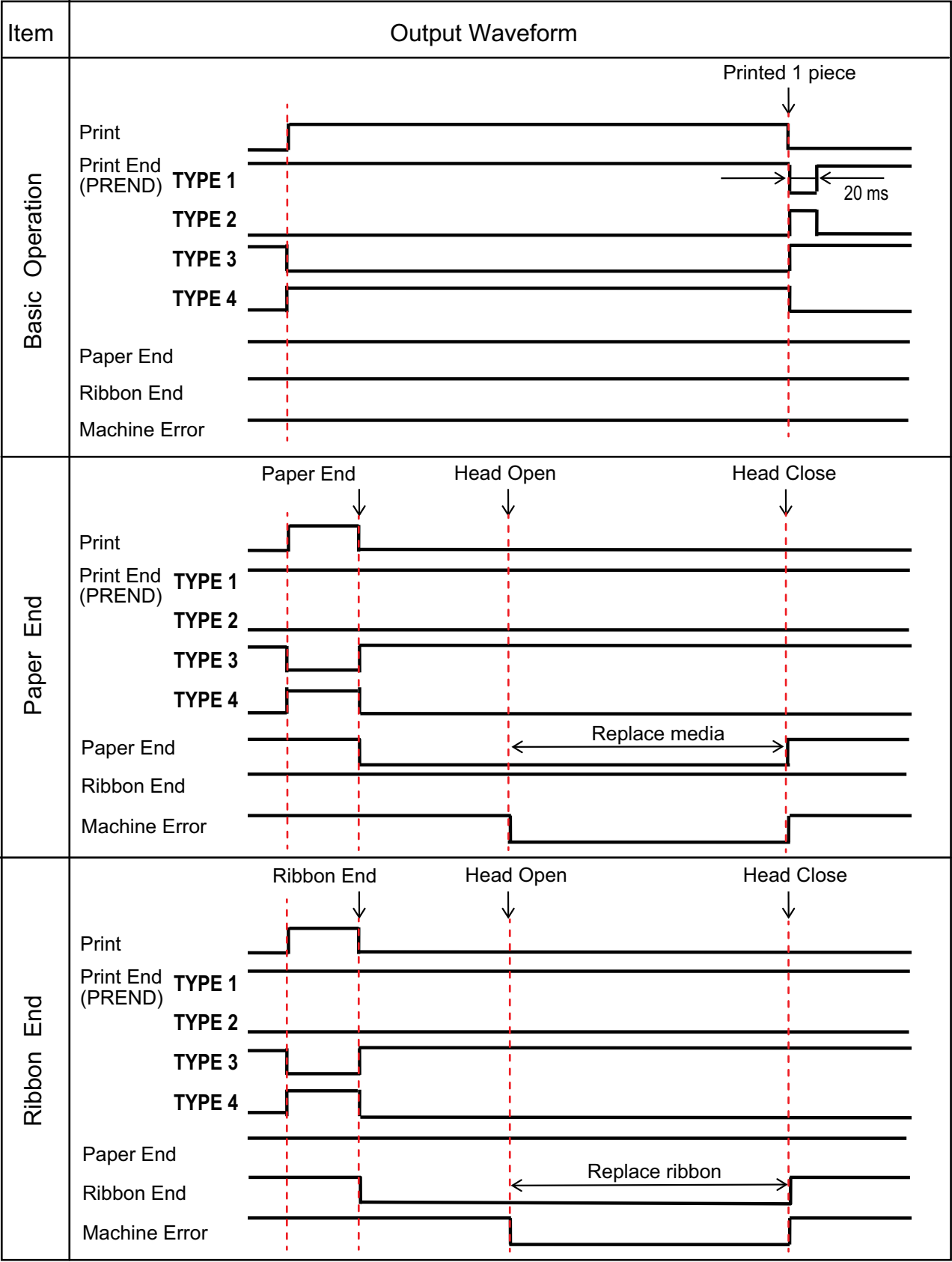


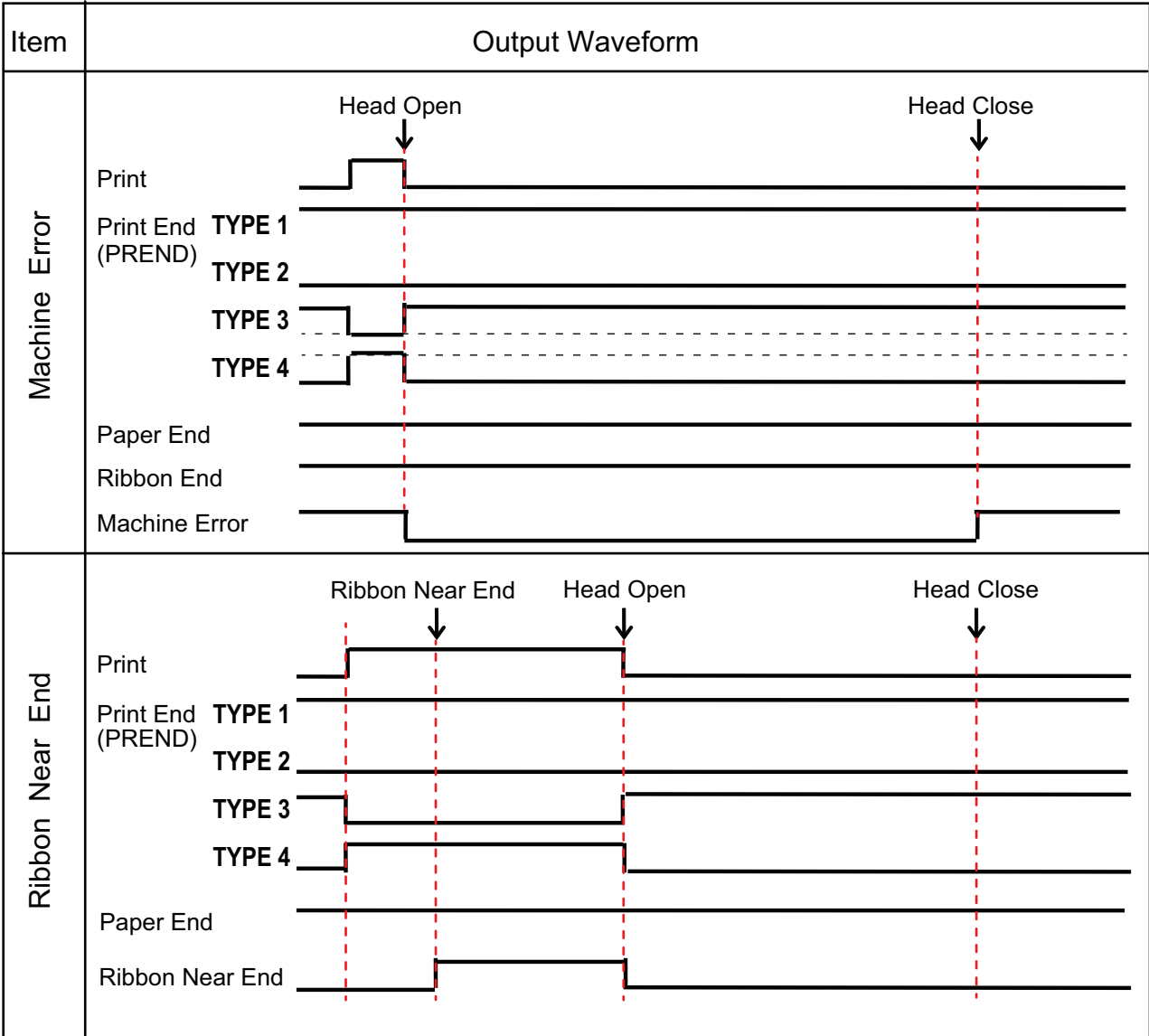


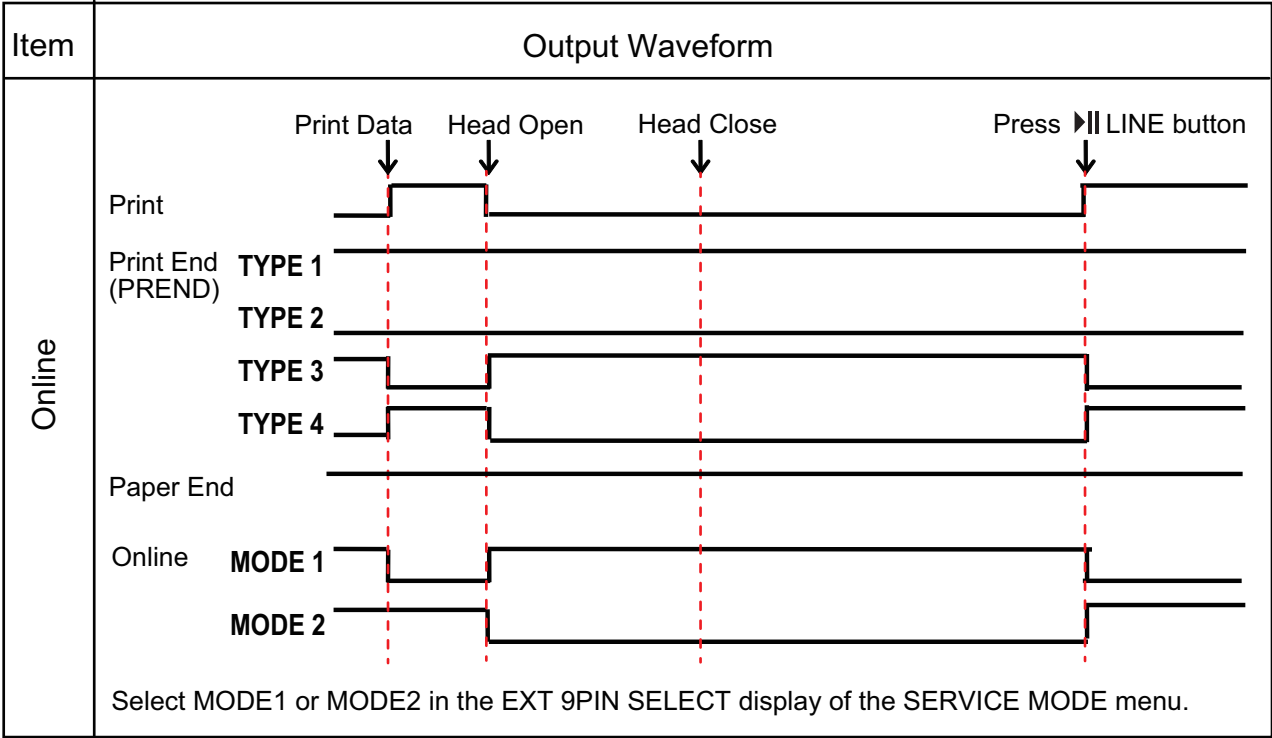
Rise or fall time (T1) of PREND signal is less than 150 ns. You have to consider the time when outputting the signal from the connected devices.

- When the print start signal and reprint signal are output simultaneously, the print start signal is enabled and the printer does not perform reprinting.
- The reprint signal is valid only from the time of the print operation end (QTY=0) until the next print data reception. Other than that, the printer does not perform reprinting.

Timing Chart of the EXT Output Signal







8.13.6 Bluetooth Interface

This interface complies with the Bluetooth Ver. 2.0+EDR standard.

Basic Specifications	
Signal Level	Class 2
Communication Distance	5 m (16.4 feet)
Profile	Serial Port Profile
Security Level	Level 1 No authentication (default) Level 2-1 PIN code authentication, service level Level 2-2 PIN code authentication, service level Level 3 PIN code authentication, link level
PIN Code	1 to 16 characters consisting of ASCII code (20H, 21H, 23H to 7EH)
Disconnect Timeout (LMP layer)	60 seconds

8.13.7 Wireless LAN Interface

This interface complies with the IEEE802.11b/g/n standard.

CAUTION

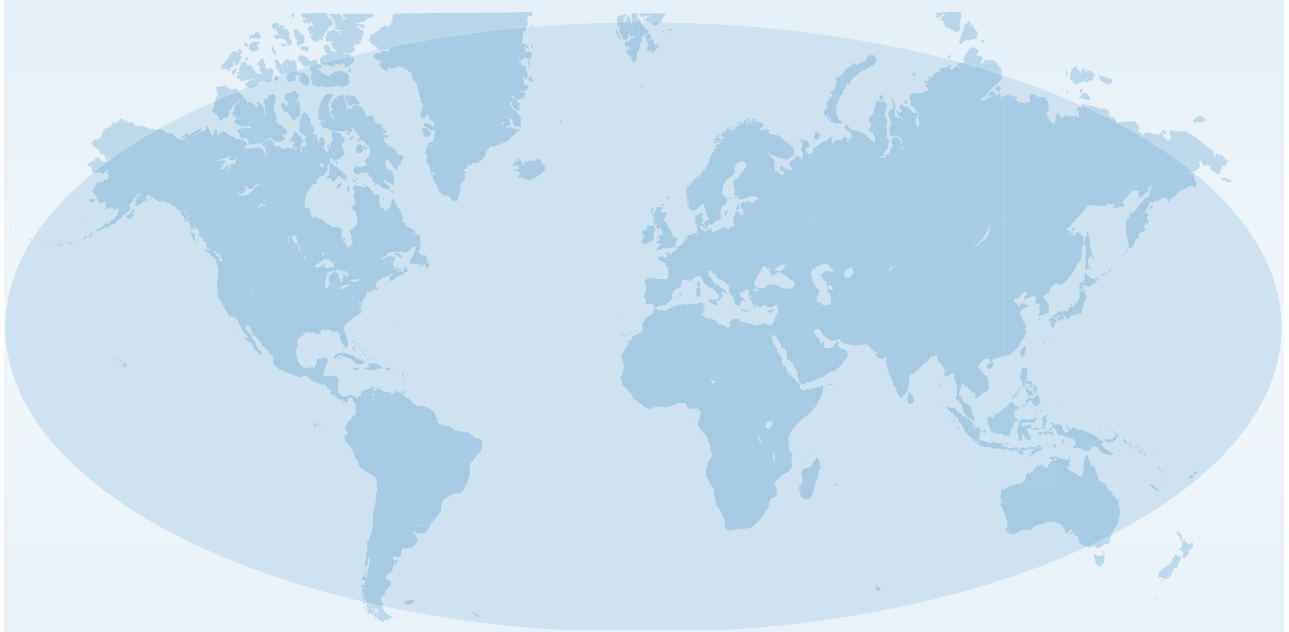
Before using wireless LAN near medical devices and facilities, consult your system administrator.

Basic Specifications	
Protocol	Status3, Status4, Status5
IP version	IPv4
IP Address	IPv4: 0.0.0.0 - 255.255.255.255 Initial: 192.168.1.1
Subnet Mask	IPv4: 0.0.0.0 - 255.255.255.255 Initial: 255.255.255.0
Gateway Address	IPv4: 0.0.0.0 - 255.255.255.255 Initial: 192.168.1.2
Data Transfer Method	802.11n: max 135 Mbps 802.11b: max 11 Mbps 802.11g: max 54 Mbps Note These are the logical values based on the wireless LAN specifications and are not the actual data transfer speeds.
Communication Distance	Indoor: max 100 m Outdoor: max 240 m Communication distance depends on environment.
Frequency Band	2.4 GHz (2.412 to 2.485 GHz)
Communication Channel	The number of channels you can set varies depending on the region where you use the printer.
SSID	Any alphanumeric character (maximum 32) Default: SATO_PRINTER
Authentication	Open System Shared Key WPA/WPA2 Perform the RADIUS server authentication using 802.1x (EAP-TLS, LEAP, EAP-TTLS, EAP-PEAP, EAP-FAST protocol)
Encryption	None WEP (64 bits/128 bits) TKIP (WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK, WPA-802.1x/WPA2-802.1x authentication) AES (WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK, WPA-802.1x/WPA2-802.1x authentication)

Basic Specifications	
Communication Mode	Infrastructure Ad Hoc *In IEEE802.11n, only Infrastructure mode is available.

Software Specifications	
Supported Protocol	TCP/IP
Network Layer	ARP, IP, ICMP
Session Layer	TCP, UDP
Application Layer	LPD, FTP, BOOTP, DHCP, HTTP

This page is intentionally left blank.



Extensive contact information for worldwide
SATO operations can be found on the Internet at
www.satoworldwide.com

SATO